



STAR-ORION SOUTH DIAMOND PROJECT
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT

APPENDIX 5.4.2-A

Review of Traditional Land Use and Occupancy Information

The Fort a la Corne Forest Area: a Survey of the Historical Documents

*Prepared For
Shore Gold*

*Prepared By
Dale Russell*

Western Heritage Services, Inc

*322 Duchess Street
Saskatoon, SK S7K 0R1
tel: 306-975-3860 ext.304
fax: 306-934-2572*



August 2007



CREDITS

Project Manager:	Jim Finnigan
Report Author:	Dale Russell
Editor:	Amanda Boechler Dale Russell
Graphics:	Amanda Boechler Dale Russell



Table of Contents

1.0 Introduction.....	1
2.0 Aboriginal Groups.....	2
3.0 Place names in the La Corne area.....	4
3.1 Cree names in the immediate area.....	4
3.1.1 Nipawiwinihk	4
3.1.2 Pehonan	5
3.1.3 Nihtawikihcikanis.....	6
3.2 Other Geographical Features.....	7
3.2.1 Torch or Sturgeon River	7
3.2.2 Candle Lake	7
3.2.3 Whitefox or Sucker River.....	8
3.2.4 English Creek	9
3.2.5 Pine Creek	9
4.0 Fur Trade Posts (1751 - 1817)	10
4.1 Background	10
4.2 Fur Trade Posts in the La Corne Area	10
4.3 Cluster One: The traditional “La Corne” site.....	11
4.3.1 Fort La Jonquiere (1751).....	11
4.3.2 Fort St Louis I (1753-57).....	12
4.3.2.1 Anthony Henday’s visit (1755).....	12
4.3.2.2 Joseph Smith’s visit (1764)	13
4.3.2.3 William Pink’s visits (1767-69)	13
4.3.2.4 Matthew Cocking’s visits (1772).....	13
4.3.2.5 Alexander Henry the Younger’s visit (1808)	14
4.3.3 The location of Fort St. Louis I	16
4.4. Cluster Two: the Three Pedlars’, Carlton I, Grant’s Post,	17
4.4.1 The Three Pedlars’ Posts (1774?-1776?).....	17
4.4.2 Carlton House I, HBC (1795-1801)	18
4.4.3 Upper Nipawin, XY Co (1798-99?)	18
4.5 Fort St. Louis II, NWC (1795-1801)	19
4.6 Fort Batoche, NWC / Upper Nippoe, Nippewin (Fort Nipawi), HBC (1816-17) .	19
4.7 Fort Maranquin /Mosquito (1816/17)	21
4.8 Isaac’s House/Fort aux Trembles, (1773-77)	22
4.9 Summary	23



5.0 The first travelers on the Saskatchewan (1741-1773)	23
5.1 The first Europeans	23
5.1.1 Henry Kelsey (1690-92).....	23
5.1.2 The French Traders (1741 - 57).....	23
5.2 The HBC wintering inland	24
5.2.1 Anthony Henday (1754-55).....	24
5.2.2 Joseph Smith (1763-64)	24
5.2.3 William Pink (1766-69).....	25
5.2.4 Matthew Cocking (1772-73)	26
5.3 Summary	27
6.0 The Saskatchewan: explorers, travelers, surveyors	27
6.1 The Fur Trade Maps (1773-1815)	27
6.1.1 Andrew Graham and Matthew Cocking (1773)	28
6.1.2 Peter Pond (1776-78, 1780s).....	28
6.1.3 David Thompson (1789-1814)	28
6.1.4 Peter Fidler (1790s).....	29
6.1.5 James Bird (1815)	31
6.1.6 Gabriel Franchère (1814)	32
6.2 Exploratory Expeditions (1820-1860).....	32
6.2.1 Sir John Franklin (1819-22, 1825-27).....	32
6.2.2 Sir John Palliser (1857-60).....	33
6.2.3 Henry Youle Hind (1857-58).....	34
6.3 Other Travellers (1827-1844)	34
6.3.1 David Douglas (1827)	34
6.3.2 Thomas Drummond (1827).....	35
6.3.3 Edward Ermatinger (1827-28).....	35
6.3.4 George T. Allan (1841).....	36
6.3.5 Sir John Henry Lefroy (1844).....	36
6.4 Government Surveys (1870-1921).....	37
6.4.1 Sir William Francis Butler (1870-71, 1872-73)	37
6.4.2 Alfred C. Selwyn, (1873)	37
6.4.3 Otto J. Klotz (1884).....	38
6.4.5 William McInnes (1907, 1913)	38
6.4.6 L. R. Voligny (1910-15)	38
6.5 Dominion Land Surveys (1883-1918)	39
7.0 George Sutherland: the earliest settler (fl. 1812-1855)	39
7.1 Introduction	39
7.2 Biographical Sketch	40
7.3 Sutherland's House.....	42



7.4 Sutherland's garden	43
8.0 Nepowewin Mission (1852- ca1879).....	44
8.1 Historical Summary.....	44
8.2 Establishing the Mission	46
8.3 Neighbouring Cree groups	47
8.4 Summary	48
9.0 Fort a la Corne I and II (1850-1886; 1886-1932)	48
9.1 Background	48
9.2 The nature of the Fort a la Corne journals	49
9.3 The Candle Lake Fishery (1851-1884)	50
9.4 The HBC's Candle Lake Outpost.....	51
9.5 Birchbark Lake Fishery.....	52
9.6 Steamboats	53
10.0 Cree camps in the La Corne area	53
10.1 Background	53
10.2 Hunting on the north side.....	54
10.3 Sucker [Whitefox] River	54
10.4 Sturgeon [Torch] River.....	55
11.0 The Dominion Land Survey Records (1883 - 1918).....	55
11.1 Background	55
11.2 Types of documentation	56
11.2.1 Sessional papers.....	56
11.2.2 Field books and field diaries.....	56
11.2.3 Individual DLS surveyors files, SAB	57
11.2.4 Township maps	57
11.2.5 Sectional Maps	57
11.3 Limitations of the DLS documents	58
11.4 Traditional use within the Forest reserve	58
12.0 The Settlement Period (1906-1941)	58
12.1 Background	58
12.2 History of Settlement (1906-1930)	59
12.2.1 Before the Forest Reserve	59
12.2.2. After the Forest Reserve was established	60
12.3 Metis Petitions (1935-1941).....	61
13.0 The Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve (1913 - 1940s).....	63



13.1 Introduction	63
13.2 Documentation	63
13.2.1 Saskatchewan Archives Board	63
13.2.2 Sessional Papers	64
13.2.3 Curt Hartwell Report	64
13.2.4 Local Histories	64
13.3 History of the Forest Reserve.....	64
13.3.1 Structural features.....	66
13.3.2 English Cabin site.....	66
13.4 Provincial Game Preserve	67
13.5 Other Features	67
13.5.1 Picnic grounds	67
13.5.2 Corrections Branch Work Camp.....	67
14.0 Traditional Trails in the Forest Reserve	67
14.1 Introduction	67
14.2 Department of the Interior Maps	68
14.3 Forestry Maps	69
14.4 Major travel routes	69
14.4.1 North shore to Prince Albert	69
14.4.2 Candle Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail	70
14.4.3 Torch River - Fort a la Corne Trail	71
14.4.4 Fishing Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail	71
14.4.5 Division Road Trail	72
15.0 Summary	73

APPENDIX 1: FIGURES AND MAPS

Figure 1: The Fort a la Corne Provincial Forest, 1966 (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa)..... 1

Figure 2: Core areas of Aboriginal Groups in the fur trade period (from Meyer and Russell 2006: 307). 2

Figure 3: Cree place names in the La Corne area. Ingathering centres are marked in red. (Map courtesy of David Meyer, from Thomas Whitehead and others).....	3
Figure 4: Fur trade posts on the Saskatchewan River, 1768 - 1850 (from Klimko 1982: 121, Fig. 6).....	4
Figure 5: A S Morton’s sketch map of trading posts in the La Corne area (SAB A 32 A.I.VIII: 203).....	5
Figure 6: J. B. Tyrrell’s sketch map of trading posts in the La Corne area, ca. 1933 (Tyrrell 1934: endmaps).....	6
Figure 7: Skethes of Nepowewin Mission and Fort a La Corne by Hind, August 1858 & of Nepowewin Mission by Smith, October 1865 (Hind 1971 Vol 1:399; Church Missionary Intelligencer. n.s. Vol III May 1867:105).1865.....	7
Figure 8: Butler at Forks - Butler’s sketches of the Forks in 1871 and of his winter cabin in 1872/3 (Butler 1968a:329, 1968b:43).....	8
Figure 9: Sample entries from the HBC’s Fort a la Corne journals.....	9
Figure 10: Forest Service workers in Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve used a truck and car in their work, ca 1920 (SAB R-A9670).....	10
Map 1773: “A plan of part of Hudson’s Bay and rivers communicationg with the principal settlements.” Andrew Graham. 1768-1770 [1773] (Warkentin and Ruggles 1970:95).	11
Map 1786: Peter Pond’s three maps showing his post at Sturgeon River and the Forks area in the mid-1770s (Wagner 1955).	12
Map 1801: “A Map of North America ...” Sir Alexander Mackenzie’s map of his travels to the Arctic and Pacific in 1789 and 1793, to 1801 (Mackenzie 1971).....	13



Map 1814: David Thompson’s map of central Saskatchewan (Coues 1965: endmap).	14
Map 1815: “Sketch of Carlton District by Jas. Bird.” Undated [1815] (HBC Archives. G.1/27).	15
Map 1816: Peter Fidler’s map of Rupert’s Land, 1792-1816 (U. of Sask. Shortt Library: MSS C500/2/4.3)	16
Map 1820: “Route of the Expedition from York Factory to Cumberland House and the summer & winter tracks from thence to Isle a la Crosse in 1819 &1820” (Franklin 1970: End-map). Reprint ed, Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle.	17
Map 1824: The Forks area with the adjoining HBC fur trading districts. From the Arrow-smith map of 1824, corrected to 1833 (Simpson 1968: endmap).	18
Map 1858a: Palliser’s map of the west 1857-60 with his travel routes (Palliser 1968: end-map).	19
Map 1858b: Map to illustrate a narrative of the Canadian ... Assiniboine & Saskatchewan exploring expedition of 1858 (Hind 1970: 9).	20
Map 1873a: Sketch Survey of the Saskatchewan R. from Rocky Mountain House to Cumberland Lake to Illustrate the Report of Mr. Alfred R C Selwyn. 1873 (SAB B 70/1).....	21
Map 1873b: “Plan of the Hon. Hudson’s Bay Co.’s Reserve at Fort a la Corne” (Nov 25, 1873). W S Gore, DLS. Ottawa 1874 (SAB Regina A 468).	22
Map 1878: NWT. Sketch Map of Saskatchewan Valley Prince Albert to Fort a la Corne. A. L. Russell, DLS. 21 Oct. 1878 (SAB Regina A 463).	23
Map 1882: Map of Prince Albert District, undated [predates 1882]. H D . Ellis file, 1882/84 (SAB R 183.I.170).	24



Map 1883: Plan of Township No. 49, Range 20, West of Second Meridian. 1883. [East half of plan] (SAB A 12 #49). (trails emphasized).....	25
Map 1884: “Map of the Saskatchewan River from the Forks to Lake Winnipeg ... Otto Klotz, 1884” (Klotz 1885:21).	26
Map 1885: “Plan. Indian Reserve, Chief James Smith, at Fort a la Corne...” March 19th, 1885. (National Map Collection 1981:66). Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services Canada.....	27
Map 1888a: “Map Shewing Mounted Police Stations & Patrols 1888” (Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. 1973)	28
Map 1888b: Plan of Township No. 48, Range 20, West of Second Meridian.[NE portion] (SAB A 12 #48 1888).....	29
Map 1901: La Corne area pre-1901. Undated, untitled segment from a Dept of the Interior map. P. R. A. Belanger file (SAB R 183.I.025). [Trails emphasized. Note that the northern lakes are misplaced many miles to the east]	30
Map 1909a: Hudson’s Bay Company Reserve, Fort a la Corne. Thos Fawcett, DLS. “Copied by A. S.” Fort a la Corne Post Journal, August 1909 (HBCA B.2/a/10 fo 59).	31
Map 1909b: Numbers of vacant quarter sections. Prince Albert Land District.1909. Department of the Interior (SAB A 16/2). [trails emphasized].....	32
Map 1913: Nelson and Churchill rivers, Saskatchewan and Manitoba (McInness 1913: End-map). [trails emphasized].....	33
Map 1913/19: J A Cote’s Map of Summer and Winter Routes from Prince Albert to Beaver Lake Mining Area. n.d. (SAB A 26/83). [ca. 1913-19; Trails emphasized].....	34



Map 1915a: Saskatchewan. Map Showing Disposition of Lands to January 1st, 1915 (SAB B 12/4). 35

Map 1915b: The last great field mapping of the Saskatchewan River. A portion of Voligny’s survey, 1910-1915 (Voligny 1917)..... 36

Map 1923: Map of District Northeast of Prince Albert. Classification of lands by quarter-sections for settlement purposes 1923, corrected to 1922. Department of the Interior (SAB A 13/5). [trails emphasized]..... 37

Map 1939: The Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve. Fire Protection Map, Prince Albert District. Plan F 509. 1939 (SAB B 1/5). 38

APPENDIX 2: TOWNSHIPS

Tp. 48 Rg. 18 2

Tp. 48 Rg. 19 2

Tp. 48 Rg. 20 3

Tp. 48 Rg. 21 3

Tp. 49 Rg. 17 4

Tp. 49 Rg. 18 4

Tp. 49 Rg. 19 5

Tp. 49 Rg. 20 6

Tp. 49 Rg. 21 7

Tp. 49 Rg. 22 8



Tp. 50 Rg. 16 9

Tp. 50 Rg. 17 10

Tp. 50 Rg. 18 11

Tp. 50 Rg. 19 11

Tp. 50 Rg. 20 12

Tp. 50 Rg. 21 13

Tp. 50 Rg. 22 14

Tp. 51 Rg. 16 15

Tp. 51 Rg. 17 17

Tp. 51 Rg. 18 18

Tp. 51 Rg. 19 20

Tp. 51 Rg. 20 22

Tp. 51 Rg. 21 24

Tp. 51 Rg. 22 25

Tp. 52 Rg. 22 26

Appendix 2: Figure 1: Township Plans - Publication Dates of the Township Plans Within
The Forest Reserve. (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys,
Ottawa 1966)..... 1



APPENDIX 3 SECTION 1: TRAILS

Birchbark Trail..... 7

Candle Lake – Fort a la Corne Trail..... 7

Cumberland House – Fort a la Corne Trail..... 8

Division Road 9

Elk Creek Road..... 10

Elk Hay Trail..... 10

English Creek Trail 11

Gertrude Trail..... 11

Fishing Lake/Hudson Bay and Pacific Railway Trail..... 11

Lars Car Road 13

Pack Trail..... 13

Prince Albert – Whitefox River Trail..... 13

Torch River – Fort a la Corne Trail..... 14

White Fox Trail..... 15

Appendix 3, Figure 1: The 1918 Prince Albert North Sheet, Sectional Map #319. (SAB A11/8) [Forest Reserve boundaries and trails highlighted]. 1

Appendix 3, Figure 2: Trails from the 1918 Sectional Sheet (red) superimposed on the trails from the 1996 NTS sheet (yellow). (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa) & (SAB A11/8 Sheet 319, 1918) 2



Appendix 3, Figure 3: The 1906 Prince Albert North Sheet, Sectional Map #319.
(SAB Micro 6.6) [no trails on the map]..... 3

Appendix 3, Figure 4: The 1908 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319
(SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted]. 4

Appendix 3, Figure 5: The 1911 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Mi-
cro 6.6). [trails highlighted]. 5

Appendix 3, Figure 6: The 1914 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Mi-
cro 6.6). [trails highlighted]. 6

APPENDIX 3 SECTION 2: CABINS

Barnetts Mill 1

Beaver House: Original Site 1

Beaver House: Second Site..... 2

Elk House..... 2

Elk House Tower..... 3

English Cabin: Original Site 3

English Cabin: Second Site..... 3

English Cabin Tower..... 4

Fort House Cabin and Tower Site 5

Game Guardian Cabins 5

Jail Camp 6

Lars Headquarters Cabin and Tower..... 6



Lars Tower	7
Melfort Ferry, Old, Gronlid	8
Poplar Creek Cabin	9
River House: Original Site.....	9
River House: Second Site	10
Stable Site, Old	11
Torch River Cabin.....	11
Twin Lakes Cabin	12
Wapiti Cabin	12
Wapiti Campsite.....	13
White Fox Cabin	13



1.0 Introduction

Archaeologists have realized that locales along the Saskatchewan River that were attractive to Euro-Canadians throughout the historic period have been equally attractive to aboriginal groups for hundreds or even thousands of years (e.g. Meyer and Thistle 1995). Archaeological surveys carried out for the forestry industry find the same pattern in the bush: pre-contact sites are consistently found at trapper's cabins, old bridge crossings, and even fire tower look-outs. Thus, the following report examines the historic documents for evidence regarding the use of the Fort a la Corne Forest area by all groups, rather than simply focusing on specific references to the Cree and Métis.

The portion of the Fort a la Corne Provincial Forest between the Saskatchewan and Whitefox Rivers is about 25 km wide and 66 km long (Appendix 1: Figure 1). The 16 km stretch of the Saskatchewan River in Township 48 Range 20 has the richest concentration and variety of heritage sites in central, if not all of, Saskatchewan. Initially, it was an ingathering spot for local aboriginal groups, one of only three known sites on the main Saskatchewan River between the Forks and The Pas. It was also the site of the first documented French post up-river from The Pas, and it is one of the few locales consistently mentioned in the journals of men who were sent from York Factory to winter inland between 1754 and 1773. After 1768, posts were rapidly extended up the Saskatchewan, reaching Edmonton in 1795 but by-passing La Corne. However, in 1794 following the destruction of the South Branch posts, on the South Saskatchewan River near Batoche, the trading concerns retreated to La Corne until 1801. Short-lived posts were again built in the area in the mid-1810s during the intense trading competition between the Hudson's Bay Company [HBC] and the North West Company [NWC]. The two companies were amalgamated in 1821.

The HBC returned to the La Corne area in 1850 to establish Fort a la Corne which lasted until 1932. In 1852, the Anglican Church Missionary Society [CMS] sent Rev. Henry Budd, the first ordained aboriginal Anglican minister, to establish Nepowewin Mission, the first mission above The Pas. Chief James Smith, of the Cree at La Corne, signed Treaty Six at Carlton House in 1876. I.R. Reserve #100, at La Corne, was not surveyed until July 1884. Surveyors with the Dominion Land Survey [DLS] of the Department of the Interior began an intensive program of marking out townships north of the river in the early 1900s. Finally, in 1913, the Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve [the Forest Reserve] was established by the federal government.

Throughout these years, the Saskatchewan River served as the major access route to the west and was used by all the major travelers and explorers. Travel along the overland route from Red River, known as the Carlton Trail, became significant after the 1850s but was superseded by the construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway in 1882. However, local steamboats were still used on the river up to the early 1900s.



It is surprising that despite the amount of activity in the La Corne area, the area north of the river remained undocumented until the 1890s. However, it was well-used by the local Cree, while both the HBC and the Mission at La Corne travelled across it to reach their winter fisheries at Birchbark and Candle Lakes. Nevertheless, until the appearance of a few Dominion Land Surveyors in the late 1800s, the only known first-hand description of the area is a very brief diary kept by Rev John Badger who made a short pastoral trip from Fort a la Corne to Montreal Lake in 1887.

The HBC journals from Cumberland House, Carlton House, as well as Fort a la Corne are important for understanding the La Corne area. For example, the Cree from La Corne are often mentioned coming in to trade at Cumberland House. However, there is only one surviving Cumberland House journal between 1839 and 1877. The Carlton House III journals mention people coming from Birch Hills and the Forks, but there are no Carlton journals after 1838. There are journals from the HBC's Fort a la Corne post which were written between 1851 and the late 1890s, but most are from only several years in the 1860s and 1870s. Similarly, there are few daily journals from the Nepowewin Mission after Budd's journals of the 1850s and 1860s.

Despite this lack of first-hand historical observations within the area now known as the Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve, there is much indirect information that gives an indication of its utilization in the historic period. The following survey of the historic literature outlines what has been recorded for the area, as well as indicating the gaps in that documentation.

2.0 Aboriginal Groups

Trading posts were established in the York Factory area on Hudson's Bay in 1682. Almost immediately, large flotillas of canoes arrived from inland to trade, numbering over 300 by 1695 (Russell 1991:178). However, the Europeans knew little of the inland country although they recognized tribal differences.

In the early fur trade period, the general La Corne area was occupied by Cree (Russell 1991). To the immediate south and west were various Assiniboine (Nakota) groups (Appendix 1: Figure 2) who were closely allied with the Cree. Until the very late 1700s, another allied group, the Fall or Rapid Indians (Atsina), lived further to the southwest, but groups sometimes came north as far as the Branches of the Saskatchewan River. In the early 1800s, small families of Saulteaux began moving up the Saskatchewan who often lived alongside the Cree. In the mid-1800s, Métis from the Red River started settling at Moose Woods and later moved into the Batoche area. However, there were always several locally born Métis and "freemen" (those who had left the employe of the trading companies) who traded at the post or were part-time employees.



After the 1720s, specific Cree bands, including those from the Saskatchewan River, were often identified in the York Factory journals (Russell 1991:141-151). The La Corne area was at the intersection of two Cree bands (Appendix 1: Figure 2). The Basquia Cree utilized the area from Candle Lake east to the north end of the Basquia Hills, while the Pegogamaw were found from La Corne west to the Eagle Hills (Meyer and Russell 2004, 2006). In tough winters, however, the Basquia Cree would go into the adjacent parkland in search of bison. Similarly, the Pegogamaw Cree sometimes sought refuge in the forest to escape attacks by other plains groups. It was the Pegogamaw who guided the HBC men who wintered inland and have left us the earliest descriptions of daily life on the northern plains: Henday, Smith, Pink and Cocking (Russell 1991:103-108). However, following the devastation of the smallpox epidemic of 1781-82, neither of these two Cree groups is mentioned again. Tomison, in charge of Cumberland and Hudson House on the North Saskatchewan, reported to York Factory: “of the several Tribes of Assinee Poet Pegogomew and others bordering on Saskachiwan River he realy believed not one in fifty have survived” (Rich 1952:298).

Although these named bands disappear after 1781, the survivors continued to utilize the same territories, clustered in family groups under various leaders or headmen. Through the early 1800s, the HBC Cumberland journals often mention the same hunters between Candle Lake and Basquia Hills, especially at the “Neppowins” (HBCA B.49/a/32b - B.49/a/53, 1806 - 1845). Unfortunately, for our purposes, the later HBC Carlton House III journals, on the North Saskatchewan, focused on groups lying to the west who were responsible for bringing in the crucial supplies of bison meat. Cree from the east, between the Branches, are seldom named and their locations are only vaguely given: “from the Woods”, from “South Branch”, or, more rarely, from “Birch Hill” (HBCA B.27/a/4 - 23, 1814-1839).

The situation is different at Fort a la Corne which was established in 1850 (HBCA B.2/a/1-10, 1851-96). There are numerous references in the post journals to individual Cree coming to trade at Fort a la Corne from their winter camps. Most often, they are identified by their leader’s names. However, their geographic locations are rarely stated - it is never clear how far away they are living, if they are to the east or west, or even if they are from the north side of the river.

It was only with the signing of Treaty Number Six, at Carlton House in 1875 that the various Cree bands were formalized under named chiefs. The Cree who had utilized the upper Saskatchewan were initially granted various reserves in the area: James Smith (IR #100) (Appendix 1: Map 1885a) and Cumberland (IR #100A) at La Corne; Pas Mountain/Flute River (later extinguished) and Red Earth (IR #29A), both on the north side of the Pasquia Hills; Muscoday (IR #99) and Chekastaypaysim (later extinguished) on the South Saskatchewan; and William Twatt (later Sturgeon Lake #IR 101) northwest of Prince Albert (Appendix 1: Map 1882, 1888a).

William Twatt, the founder of the Sturgeon Lake Reserve 90 km northwest of La Corne, reflects the movement of people in the area. He was the grandson of an HBC employee who died at Cumberland in 1801. Both his father, Mahnsuck, and his uncle Willock were noted leaders first at Lower Nipowen and later, in the mid-1800s, at La Corne (e.g. Thistle 1986). William, himself, was known at both the HBC post and Mission at La Corne in the mid-1800s.

3.0 Place names in the La Corne area

3.1 Cree names in the immediate area

The Cree used three names for the La Corne area: ‘nipawiwinihk’, ‘pehonan’ and ‘nihtawikihcikanis’ (e.g. Appendix 1: Figure 3). These place names, as they are written in historic documents, can be very confusing. Non-Cree speakers had great difficulty in transcribing Cree names into English, often spellings varied on the same page. Further, the first two Cree names listed above both refer to “waiting”. Lastly, ‘nipawiwinihk’, the most common name, was also used for an equally well-known locale some 60 km downriver while a similar name was also used for the later Carlton House III, on the North Saskatchewan River.

3.1.1 Nipawiwinihk

The anglicized word Nipawin, the name of the modern town 50 km east, is from the Cree “nipawiwinihk, ‘at the standing place’, in reference to looking out over the valley” (Wolvengrey 2001a: 458). Its variations in historic documents are endless: Nepawi, Neppewan, Nepowewin, Nipawi, Nippewan, Nippeway, Nippoe, Nippoewin, and Nippowee.

There are many references to the La Corne area in the HBC’s Cumberland House journals since it lay on the western border of the Cumberland District (Appendix 1: Map 1824). La Corne was known as the “Upper Nepowin”, while “Lower Nepowin” was the historic locale, six km up-river from modern Nipawin, adjacent to the Francois-Finlay fur trade post complex (Appendix 1: Map 1820, 1824). However, since both sites were over 160 km from Cumberland House, they were most often simply grouped together as “the Nepowins”. Consequently, if a Cree group was said to be staying at “the Nepowins”, it is not possible to know which of the two locales was meant.

A variation, Nepowewin, was the official name given to the Anglican Church Missionary Society [CMS] mission established on the north side of the river by Henry Budd in 1852:

It is called the Nepowewin, or standing place, from its elevated situation, “the Indians making it,” says the Rev. J. Hunter “a ‘Standing place,’ or ‘Look out,’ to watch the arrival of the Kisiskahchewun boats in their annual passage up and down the river” (CMS Vol 5 1854:92).



Henry Youle Hind (1971 Vol 1:399), who visited on August 1858, gave a nearly identical explanation:

The name Nepowewin [the CMS Mission] is derived from an Indian expression signifying 'the standing place', where the natives are accustomed to await the arrival of the Hudson's Bay Company's boats, as they are tracked up the north side of the river.

Here, Hind seems to suggest that the waiting place might be on the point on the north side of the river, where the mission was built, since most racking was done along the north shore. This spot on the north shore was known as La Corne's Point and, as we shall see, was a well-known traditional campground.

3.1.2 Pehonan

The Cree also knew La Corne as "pehonan 'waiting place'" (Wolvengrey 2001b: 366). This has survived in the name Peonan Creek, about 6.5 km overland from the original French post. According to J. B. Tyrrell (1934:15), the famous geologist/fur trade editor who visited La Corne in 1896 and 1933,

The place where the Indians were accustomed to "wait for their friends" ascending the river is still very well known. It is the top of the bank just south of the mouth of Peonan creek. The name Peonan is said to mean "Waiting-place for those coming in canoes." Here the prairie comes to the edge of the valley, and from the open space thus formed an extensive view may be had up and down the magnificent valley..."

However, there is an older account which places Peonan inland, several miles from the river (Meyer and Russell 2004:248 fn 12). In 1865, Rev. T. Smith, of the CMS, briefly visited La Corne. On November 9, he rode out on horseback, southwest of the HBC post:

After passing the belt of pine, our course lay southwest over an undulating country, well wooded and watered for about five miles; then we came out upon the Paoonan, a beautiful elevated plain, about two miles long, as flat as a bowling green, covered with rich short grass. From this point the country was much broken ...(CMS n.s. Vol III 1867:141).

This appears to be the area where the first few homesteads were built. A. L. Russell (1878:15), a Dominion Land Surveyor [DLS], who was recording trails in the West, visited Fort a la Corne in 1877: "The Indians as well as a few English and half-breed settlers, about 1/2 dozen families, are scattered from three to ten miles west [from the HBC post] along the cart trail."

3.1.3 Nihtawikihcikanis

There was a third, lesser-known Cree name for the area, “nihtawikihcikanis ‘little garden’” (Wolvengrey 2001b: 372). In the early 1900s, J. B. Tyrrell was told that:

The flat on which the old [HBC La Corne] fort was located is called by the Indians Nitagrochgigan, meaning “Where something is grown”, such as a field or garden. (Tyrrell 1934:15)

A. S. Morton tried to confirm Tyrrell’s statement. He wrote Rev. Edward Ahenakew, then at La Corne, who replied December 29, 1941 that the “Cree word is not Nitagrochegegan but Ni’ ta’ wikichikan, ‘the place where grows wheat or oats or vegetables’ (SAB A32 A.1 Vol. VII: 285ff).

There was a much older tradition regarding this “garden”. Henry Budd made a brief exploratory trip to La Corne a year before he established his Nepowewin Mission. His entry of August 21, 1851 reads:

We started this morning [from Lower Nepowin] in the hope that we shall reach the place we are going this day and see the [Inds?]. Accordingly, we reached the Companies post Corne’s Point, called by the Indians The Small Garden from its being the place where there was formerly a garden made by one Sutherland. We reached the Post at noon, and found the people quite well (CMS Reel 83. Journal. Christ Church, 1851. Henry Budd).

When Henry Budd’s first Nepowewin journal of 1852 was published in the Church Missionary magazine in 1854, the editor wrote a lengthy introduction, apparently based on information from J. Hunter who, at that time, was based at The Pas, but who apparently had not been at the site:

It is called the Nepowewin, or standing place, from its elevated situation, “the Indians making it,” says the Rev. J. Hunter, “a ‘Standing place,’ or ‘Look out,’ to watch the arrival of the Kisiskahchewun boats in their annual passage up and down the river. It is also called the, ‘Netahwekechekunis,’ or ‘Little Garden’, some potatoes having been planted, near the position Mr. Budd has taken up, by George Sutherland in former years. Near here is also another spot called the ‘Pahoonahn,’ or Waiting place,’ having reference again to the arrival of the boats, the Indians waiting here to see them pass... (CMS Vol 5 1854:92)

There is an ambiguity in these accounts regarding the name Corne’s or La Corne’s Point. Both the original French Fort St. Louis and the HBC post, Fort a la Corne I, were clearly not on a point, but in the bend of the river (e.g. Appendix 1: Figures 5, 6; Map 1873b). However, Budd’s Mission, Nepowewin was on a point, the old campgrounds mentioned by the HBC travelers almost 100 years earlier (see Section 5.2 below). The only other known use of this name is much earlier. The Carlton House journal entry of Sept 3, 1832 reported that although the various Chief Traders had arrived, they had left the rest of boat brigade



“at La Corns point” (HBCA B.27/a/19). As we will see, there are references to the Cree and traders camping on this point.

There is no doubt about the location of Sutherland’s garden. It was not at the old trading post site on the south side of the river. Instead, it was across the river, right where Budd built his Mission:

[George Sutherland] was formerly the inhabitant of this place, and on this same point had lived with his family in a little house, and had tried to cultivate the soil by growing some potatoes, which he said grew to a large size. Some traces of his garden, &c. are still to be found within a few yards of our house (CMS Vol 5 1854:94).

Further, early HBC records show that the “garden” does not have anything to do with the fur traders. Instead, it dates back to at least the late 1820s and George Sutherland may well be Saskatchewan’s first “settler” (see Section 7.0 below).

3.2 Other Geographical Features

3.2.1 Torch or Sturgeon River

The Torch River was known as the Sturgeon River throughout the 1800s. It was well known to the traders, although it was not shown on maps until 1885 (Appendix 1: Map 1884, 1901). The name causes confusion when reading the early documents since an old channel at the present Cut-off or New Channel, above Cumberland Lake, was also known as the Sturgeon River.

Cree are known to have been in the Torch River area as early as 1801 when the Cumberland House journal reported that the Cree “up the Sturgeon river begged hard to have a house built up that river which was promised to them” (HBCA B.49/a/31. Oct. 17, 1801). No doubt this was a result of the closing of Carlton House I at La Corne that summer, which indicates these Cree were on the upper, rather than the lower, Torch River.

3.2.2 Candle Lake

There are many references to Candle Lake in both the Fort a la Corne and Nepowewin mission journals since both groups maintained winter fisheries there. Candle Lake was the more common term, although it was also known as Torch Lake (CMS Reel A-84. Letter. Nepowewin. January 16, 1864. Henry Budd Jr.).

The Cree name for Candle Lake does not appear in either these or the earlier Cumberland House records. The Cree word, ‘wasakotenikan’, also ‘wasiskotenikan, waskotenikan’ means ‘lamp, light, lantern’ (Wolvengrey 2001a: 236). It survives in the name Waskateena Beach, a resort area on the south side of the lake, near the site of the former HBC outpost. Again, Cree are documented in the area in the early Cumberland journals:



Sept 9, 1819: many Cree are “way up Sturgeon River towards the Cande [Candle] Lake”

Jan 19, 1820: two men are sent to look for Cree “in the direction of the Candle Lake” (HBCA B.42/a/35)

3.2.3 Whitefox or Sucker River

The Whitefox River does not appear on maps until the early 20th century while the name has not been found in any of the pre-1900 written documents. Supposedly the name comes sightings of white foxes in the area. David Meyer was recently told by the late Thomas Whitehead, an Elder at the James Smith Cree Nation, that the Cree name for the Whitefox meant a sort of fish, like a pickerel. However, the Cree name that Whitehead gave Meyer, “wapakesiw sipiy” (Butala 2005:36) actually does translate as ‘white fox’ (Wolvengrey 2001b: 367).

The first portrayal of the Whitefox River, on the Prince Albert Sectional Map of 1906, shows only its lowermost portion which is labeled the “Nameki River” (SAB Micro 6.6). On the next edition of the map, in 1908, the river has been renamed the Whitefox. The word “Nameki” seems to be a misprint since it has no apparent Cree counterpart. However, it is very similar to the Cree word, ‘namepiy’, a variant of ‘namepin’ or sucker (Wolvengrey 2001b: 554). This is similar to the explanation that Whitehead had given Meyer.

Throughout the 1800s there are references in the written documents to a “Sucker River” which is obviously the Whitefox River. This is apparent from the Fort a la Corne journals which mention people stopping at Sucker River on their way to and from the fisheries at Candle and Birchbark Lakes. Sucker River must refer to the Whitefox since it is the only major drainage on the route. For example, men hauling fish from Candle Lake had to leave part of their load at “Succer Creek” (HBCA B.2/a/6. January 12, 1872). Later, men took flour to “Sucker River” where a man was to meet them and take it on to Candle Lake (HBCA B.2/a/9. February 10, 1885).

Cree are documented in the upper Whitefox / Sucker River area at an early date. In the late winter of 1807, a Cumberland House employee who had been sent to winter with the Cree near the abandoned Carlton House I, at La Corne, was reported to be “about 2 days journey North of Carlton House they have starved much all winter.” Clearly, the group was on the upper Whitefox, since when they returned to Cumberland in the spring, “They have been 4 Days in coming down the Carp [i.e. Sucker] & Sturgeon river.” (HBCA B.42/a/32b. January 27, May 9, 1807).

The severe winter of 1825-26 drove the Cree out onto the plains in search of bison. Other Cree, however, remained in the La Corne area where they had been seen “on the North Side of the Saskatchewan River ... they were on the Banks of the carp [Sucker] river, opposite the upper Neppawin, dogs greatly reduced owing to bad roads and a rough country” (HBCA B.42/a/41. January 29, 1826).

3.2.4 English Creek

No references could be found to an English Creek in any of the historic documents from the La Corne area. It first appears, as English River, on Selwyn’s map of the Saskatchewan River following his survey of 1873 (Appendix 1: Map 1873a), but it is not mentioned in either of his published accounts (Selwyn 1874a: 43; 1874b). It is also shown on Klotz’s rather confused map of 1884 (Appendix 1: Map 1885b) where both Birchbark and Candle Lakes are displaced to the east of it. Klotz does not mention the creek in his unpublished fieldbook or his published journal (Klotz 1884: May 28-31, 1884; 1885: 14-15).

Coues, who edited Alexander Henry the Younger’s journals in 1897, describes it as “a considerable stream called Englishman r.” but it is not known where he got this information (Coues 1965 Vol.II: 483 fn 45). David Meyer was told by the late Thomas Whitehead, an Elder at James Smith, that the Cree word for the creek was ‘akayasiw sipisis’ (Appendix 1: Figure 3). This phrase translates as “Englishman Creek” (Wolvengrey 2001b: 346), the same name as Coues had used.

R. H. Montgomery surveyed Tp 49-Rg 19 in 1907 and described the creek: “English creek enters from the north crossing section 34, it is about ten feet wide, two feet deep and flows three miles an hour” (Montgomery 1909:251).

3.2.5 Pine Creek

There is single reference to a “Pine Creek”, north of La Corne. Rev. John Badger kept a brief journal of his visit from La Corne to Candle Lake. On his first night out, on December 12, 1887, they “camped at Pine Creek, about 6 miles out” (CMS Reel A-115 Journal. Rev. John Badger, 1887). It is unlikely this was the well-known crossing of English River, at later English Cabin. This locale is on the main Torch River Trail and was about 9.5 miles from La Corne. Badger would have been heading northwest. More likely Pine Creek was the upper tributary of the unnamed creek northwest of La Corne and on the west branch of the Candle Lake Trail (e.g. Appendix 3: Figure 2).

4.0 Fur Trade Posts (1751 - 1817)

4.1 Background

Posts were established on western Hudson Bay in the 1680s with control changing between the French and English. After 1714, the HBC kept their monopoly, with their base at York Factory. To the south, French traders were quickly moving west through the Great Lakes and southern Manitoba. They reached the lower Saskatchewan River in 1739, going upstream as far as La Corne by 1753.

As a result of the Seven Years War, the French retreated from the west in 1758 but traders from Montreal quickly returned. With the help of the previous French employees, they were able to quickly establish themselves and built posts in the Nipawin area in 1768, moving up the North Saskatchewan to the Prince Albert area by 1776, and west as far as Edmonton by 1795.

Posts were also established on the South Saskatchewan upriver from St. Louis. Following the destruction of both the HBC and NWC South Branch posts by the Fall (Atsina) in 1794, the traders retreated to Nipawin but then moved upriver and built at La Corne in 1795 where they remained until 1801.

Following a period of intense competition in the 1810s, the NWC was amalgamated with the HBC in 1821. The resultant monopoly was short-lived. Free or independent traders, often Métis, began to move into the Saskatchewan area from the Red River in the 1850s.

Through this period the major HBC posts along the northern edge of the plains were Fort Ellice near the mouth of the Qu'Appelle River, Fort Pelly on the upper Assiniboine River, and Carlton House III and Fort Pitt on the North Saskatchewan River. The focus of these posts was to obtain sufficient supplies of bison meat to support the extensive boat brigade transport system. The 1850 HBC post at La Corne depended upon the furs from the neighbouring forest. However, it was also involved with the bison provision trade and had temporary outposts at Moose Woods, 200 km southwest on the South Saskatchewan, until the late 1860s.

4.2 Fur Trade Posts in the La Corne Area

West of the Manitoba border, there were two major concentrations of historic sites on the Saskatchewan River dating back to the earliest fur traders. These were in the Nipawin area and in the La Corne area (Appendix 1: Figure 4). While the Nipawin area was apparently abandoned after 1816, the HBC returned to La Corne in the mid 1800s.

The sites at la Corne can be placed into four groups extending 13 km along the river, although only half this distance across-country (Appendix 1: Figure 5).

- Cluster One: Traveling upstream, the first cluster consists of Fort St. Louis, the original French post; the 1850 HBC Fort a la Corne I; and, directly across the river, Nepowewin, the Anglican Mission of 1852. In 1886, the HBC post was relocated 3 km southwest. This locale was probably the original Cree Nipawiwinihk.
- Cluster Two: The next cluster lies 9 km upstream on the north side of the river. These consist of at least three sites, including the HBC Carlton House I (1795-1801).
- Cluster Three: Two km upstream, on the south shore near the mouth Pine Creek was Ft St. Louis II, the NWC opposition to Carlton House I. Apparently this was Pehonan, the second look-out site, 0.5 km south of the mouth of Peonan Creek. .
- Cluster Four: Two opposing posts, the HBC “Upper Neppoe” and the NWC “Fort Batoche” (1816) were on the north side of the river, 3.5 km further upstream from Ft St. Louis II.

Of these eight posts, only the locations of the NWC’s Fort St. Louis II (1795-1801) and of the HBC’s Fort a la Corne I (1850-1886) are known for certain. Archaeologists have done little work in the area. Instead, the locations have been identified by historians, mostly by A S Morton, who worked through historical documents and visited the south side of the river, in the 1930s. A summary of the archaeological work is found in Meyer and Klimko (1986) while Morton has documented his research in his massive fifteen volume research manuscript, “Historic Geography of the Canadian West, 1928-45” (SAB A32 A.1).

4.3 Cluster One: The traditional “La Corne” site

4.3.1 Fort La Jonquiere (1751)

The exact location of Fort La Jonquiere, the first French post up the Saskatchewan, remains unknown. Certainly, it was not at Calgary, as Prud’homme advocated in 1906 (Smythe 1968:187). The only information about the post comes third-hand from Legardeur de Saint-Pierre’s memoir of the West. He said that following his orders, in May 1751 Joseph Boucher de Niverville, based at The Pas, sent 10 men in two canoes “three hundred leagues above ... Paskoya [The Pas] ... as far as the Rocky Mountains where they made a good fort which I named Fort Lajonquiere” (Legardeur de Saint-Pierre 1886: clxii). Niverville was prevented by illness by going himself and nothing more is known of the post, nor how long it was in operation. Fort La Jonquiere may have been located at Francois-Finlay but more likely it was at the site of Fort Saint Louis of 1753. Only several years later, on his trip down-river in 1755, Anthony Henday records only two posts: one at La Corne and the other at The Pas (Belyea 2000, Burpee 1907).

4.3.2 Fort St Louis I (1753-57)

The furthest-most French post in the West was Fort Saint Louis I, established by Louis de la Corne in 1753, but abandoned in 1758 when the French retreated from the West (Smythe 1968: 185; Russ 1974:331-32). Louis has often been confused with his more famous brother, Luc, who is often mistakenly said to have built the post. It was abandoned in 1757 or 1758. There are no records from this post, which was simply an outpost from The Pas. However, many later travelers on the Saskatchewan noted the site, indicating its regional importance for the local Cree, as well as Europeans. Consequently, it is one of the most often documented sites in the West. As we shall see, it was located on the south side of the bend of the river where the HBC built Fort a la Corne I in 1850, and opposite the Nepowewin Mission of 1852 (Appendix One: Figure 6). This post should not be confused with Fort St. Louis II, which the NWC built in 1795 seven miles (11 km) upstream near the mouth of Peonan Creek.

4.3.2.1 Anthony Henday's visit (1755)

Anthony Henday has written the only first-hand account of the French traders. He spent May 23-25, 1755 at Fort St Louis I on his way downriver to York Factory with a large flotilla of canoes. Henday did not mention La Corne on his way inland in the previous summer since he had left his canoes at Carrot River and walked overland to the south of La Corne. The following is selected from two of the four versions of Henday's journal, each of which vary slightly in details (Belyea 2000: 185-87):

23 May 1775: Friday. Wind SE. and pleasant regular weather: Paddled 20 miles NE, then came to a French Trading House where were 6 Men: the Master invited me to supper, but we had no bread until we were done; then He presented me with half a biscuit and a dram of French Brandy and told me that this House was subordinate to Basquea [The Pas] and they heard of my passing by last Autumn. (HBCA E.2/11, Belyea 2000:186)

24&25 May 1775: Saturday and Sunday wind S.E. and rain at times the master gave the natives 10 gallons of adulterated brandy and has traded from them above 1000 of the finest skins, refusing wolves bears & dressed beaver skins in coat, as also skins that are in any manner damaged or are not in season; I cannot get them to proceed, it's surprizing to observe what great influence the French hath over the natives. (HBCA E.2/4, Belyea 2000:186)

4.3.2.2 Joseph Smith's visit (1764)

The next HBC man sent to winter inland was Joseph Smith (see Section 5.2.2). His journal is very difficult to read and understand. He does not seem to make any reference to La Corne when he and some Pegogamaw Cree passed westward by canoe in September 1763. However, when he came down by the canoe the next spring, they stopped for several days at the old burned ruins: "whe Cam to wher the freansh hous was but the Indens had bornt it" (HBCA B.239/a/52 May 16, 1764).

4.3.2.3 William Pink's visits (1767-69)

Pink's four journals describe his wintering on the northern plains in 1766, 1767, 1768 and 1769 (see Section 5.2.3 for more details). Pink makes many references to the abandoned French post of Fort St. Louis since his Cree group regularly camped either there or immediately across the river:

1766 - 1767

Autumn, 1766: no identifiable mention of La Corne

May 16, 1767 ... this day we piched on the NW Side of this River Over A gainst wich I saw the Ruens of an old French House the Indains Say that a bout Teen Yeares a gow they a bode heare (HBCA B.239/a/56)

1767 - 1768

August 6, 1767 ... this day we piched on the N Side of this River Opposite to the Ruiens of the uper French house

May 22, 1768 ... this Day we pitched Opisite the Ruine of the upper French house (HBCA B.239/a/58)

1768 - 1769

August 1, 1768 ... this Day we Came to our Familyes in Land Tenting Oppesite the Ruens of the upper French House. (HBCA B.239 /a/61)

1769 - 1770

July 31, 1769 ... Came to the Famelyes in Land on the South Side of the maine River at the upper house (HBCA B.239/a/63)

4.3.2.4 Matthew Cocking's visits (1772)

The last of the HBC's inland travellers was Matthew Cocking who wintered in central Saskatchewan 1772-73 (see Section 5.2.4). Surprisingly, there is a map of his route (Appendix 1: Map 1773). Cocking's group of Cree met their families on the south side of the Saskatchewan River right at the site of the old French post



11th August 1772 Wind SW ... In the afternoon came to the Families. seven tents of them ... Here the Indians always wait for the arrival of their Friends. ... They tell me a French House formerly stood here possessed by the Pedler Franceway, but no remains of it appears... (HBCA B.239/a/69)

Cocking makes no mention of La Corne on his return trip downriver the following spring.

4.3.2.5 Alexander Henry the Younger's visit (1808)

Henry the Younger was an employee of the NWC. He passed by La Corne going upriver in 1808, many years later than the preceding HBC men. Henry's description of his travel along the Saskatchewan River is more detailed than any other account. His journal is quoted extensively to show the information he gives of the men tracking the boats along shore, the geography of the river valley, the descriptions and locations of both Fort St. Louis I and II, Cree and Sauteux camps, and even the casual mention of the wives accompanying the brigade. These following journal entries begin when he was at Birch Island, downstream from Nipawin:

Monday [August] 29

... Both Paddle and Pole are now laid aside, and the towing line only is made use of for several days. All hands ... began to march on a round trot, through Mud and Mire, and over loose stones, where every moment I was afraid some of them would break their Necks ...

Tuesday [August] 30

... the Bowman and Steersman, having nothing to do but keep her straight against the current ... Those at the Line endure the greatest toil. The Line is from forty to sixty fathoms long, and frequently gets entangled among the large Stones or drift wood, which added much to their labour and trouble. The Banks or range of high land on each side ... confines the view on both sides ... On the tops and sides of some of those Hills are to be seen spots of open ground, free from wood, but they [the trees] but small ...
At 12 O'clock we passed the Old Establishment at the Nepawee [Lower Nipawin], which stands on the South side. Here I am told the Plains are at no great distance from the River, indeed we now more frequently see barren and open spots on that side ... At Sunset we encamped at an Indian Tent. The Family had gone out for the Meat of a Moose Deer, with which they soon after arrived ...

Wednesday [August] 31

At 4 O'clock in the morning we were upon our march ... we now frequently met with strong rippling points which requires the greatest exertion of the men at the line, and the two in the canoe with their poles to ascend ...
At 12 O'clock we met a Canoe going down with a Sauteux and his family on board ...



At 6 OClock we encamped at the spot where the French formerly had an Establishment called Fort St Louis, built by St. Luc de la Corne. It stands in a low bottom [on the] South Side; at this place some years ago were still to be seen agricultural instruments and remains of Carriage Wheels. Their road to the open plains are still to be seen winding up a valley on the South side. The banks of the river are now of a considerable height and in many places destitute of verdure. The soil having slid away or washed down by the rain ... Moose, Red Deer, Cabbrie and Bear tracks are numerous along the Beach ... The plains here on the South side approaches so near the river as the tops of Banks but it cannot be called an open Country, as the spots- of wood are frequent. The Buffalo are here in abundance in the Winter season, when the cold weather obliges them to leave the open plains, and seek shelter among the Hammocks of Wood, where they find plenty of good long Grass.

Thursday [September] 1st.

At 4 OClock we were again upon the water and at Nine OClock we arrived at an Old Establishment of our own which has been abandon'd since 1805 called Fort St Louis from its proximity to the Old French Fort below. Here we found a band of Saulteaux waiting our arrival to get their necessaries, and a Freeman and his family also. They had just killed two Red Deer, which the woman had gone for with their horses. Here we thought proper to put ashore and unload for the purpose of making out the Outfit for the South Branch, which is now near at hand, and those Indians [were] anxious to take their debts and proceed on the North side to make their hunts. At twelve OClock the Indians arrived with the meat which they gave to me

...

At three OClock our business was completely settled, when the Canoes were loaded and sent on ... We came on about two leagues and camped. I find that the higher we proceed, the more plenty we find fruit of various kinds, Choak Cherries, Panbina &c &c and as the women generally proceed on by land, during the whole course of [the use of] the Line they are continually employed gathering Fruit [and this] alleviates and revives the Spirits of the men...

Friday [September] 2nd

At Five OClock we set off, and at Nine OClock arrived at the Forks, where we put ashore to gum [our canoes] on the North side, facing the entrance of the South Branch, which comes in here from the South West and appears to me to be the principal branch of the Saskatchewan ... [Henry the Younger 1992 Vol 2:348-50).

4.3.3 The location of Fort St. Louis I

In the early 1900s, historians disagreed as to just where Fort St. Louis I was located. J. B. Tyrrell visited the area in 1896 and 1933 (1934: 19). He found ruins at the mouth of Pine Creek, just south of Peonan Creek. Since he had been told that Peonan meant “waiting place”, he identified this site as being Fort St. Louis I (Appendix One: Figure 6). However, he had also been given information about old ruins in the area by Philip Turnor, who was raised at the HBC’s Fort a la Corne I and was briefly in charge of the post. Turnor told Tyrrell that the 1850 HBC’s post had been built on the ruins of a former post. Because Tyrrell thought the old French post was at Pine Creek, he decided that the HBC must have built on an old site of some Pedlars who were thought to have been in the area in 1774 (see Section 4.45.1). Turner’s comments to Tyrrell are as follows:

Fort a la Corne: I remember faintly when it was re-established some time near about 1846 & 47. The names of the men who came up from Cumberland were George Ballendine, Baptiste Sahyer and Charlie Fiddler, sent up by the H.B. Co. to put up some buildings. The following year a clerk by the name of Edward McGillivray was sent up with a York Boat of goods to take charge of the trade. When the above-mentioned men put up the buildings, they located them on the same spot where old Fort a la Corne was located. The potatoe patch [the] fort a la Corne people had, the drill or ridges were quite visible and so were which the old the old [sic] cellars, and the marks of the foundations could be traced. After the re-establishment of Fort a la Corne they planted some potatoes, and in hoeing them they found some bits of old cutting of iron, and iron wrought ring, and on the shelter of bank or rising ground could be seen quite plain the levelled beds of their large canoes, where I fancy they laid them up for the winter. Of course you are aware that while I was in charge at Fort a la Corne in 1887 and 1888 the buildings were again removed about three miles southwest to their present position. (Tyrrell 1934: 19).

A. S. Morton visited the La Corne area several times: in 1929, in 1934 with W M Stewart, and again in 1941. Morton was one of the first historians to have access to the HBC archives. Despite the indications from Turner that the French post was probably at the well-known HBC’s Fort a la Corne I, Morton and Stewart (Stewart 1936: 297) decided the French post must have been about two miles further west. This was based on Cocking’s comment that he had met the Cree families about three miles above a rapids which Morton identified as being only three-quarters of a mile downstream from Fort a la Corne I. Therefore he looked further upstream and found two sites a mile west of the HBC post. One appeared oblong in shape which Morton identified as being the old French post since he considered the HBC posts were square-shaped. Thus he located Fort St. Louis I to the west.

However, Morton was wrong. Tony Ranere, an archaeologist, examined this site in 1967 but found only early 20th century artifacts (Meyer and Klimko 1986: 98). Given Turnor's memory of the construction of the HBC post, there is no reason to doubt that the French post, Fort St. Louis I, was at the original 'nipawiwinihk' at the same site of the later HBC's Fort a la Corne I (Section 9.0). This is supported by the many references to the camp-ground, "opposite the French ruins", which was directly across the river, on the point where the Anglican mission was built (Section 8.0).

4.4. Cluster Two: the Three Pedlars', Carlton I, Grant's Post,

Little is known of several remains which Morton found along a one km stretch on the west (north) side of the river, about 9 km upstream from Fort a la Corne I (Appendix 1: Figures 5, 6). Hugh MacKie apparently visited the sites in 1970 (The Kinistino Post. Sept. 2, 1970: pp. 1, 2) but the manuscript report of his field activities is now lost (Meyer and Klimko 1986:12). Both Tyrrell and Morton visited the site in the 1930s but they reached differing conclusions about the specific identification of the remains: Morton commenting privately that "Tyrrell is all wrong here" (SAB A32 A.1 Vol VIII: 250).

In 1910, Philip Turner told Tyrrell he knew of a site which he called "Fort Batoche" on the north side of the river (Tyrrell 1934: 18). In 1933, Tyrrell found remains downriver from Peonan Creek, on the north side near a small creek. He concluded these must be "Fort Batoche", which Turnor had described, although Turner had said the site was upriver, not downriver (1934:20-21). Since Tyrrell was unaware of a mention of a Batoche connected with any posts in the area, he identified the remains as being either the NWC's Fort St. Louis II, or the HBC's Carlton House I, both of which he placed along this river stretch (Appendix 1: Figure 6).

4.4.1 The Three Pedlars' Posts (1774?-1776?)

Morton and Stewart visited this same stretch of the river in 1934. They thought they could determine the remains of five posts within some 900 m (Appendix 1: Figure 5). Morton identified a northern group of three small posts as being a set of Pedlars' posts dating to about 1774-76, before the traders moved to the Prince Albert area (Stewart 1936:298). However, the documentary references to these Pedlars being in the La Corne area are vague; the features may, or may not, be a set of Pedlars' posts.

The site complex has no official name and is variously referred to as the "The Three Settlements" (SAB A32 A.1 Vol. 8: 204f) or the "Upper Nipawin Posts" (Smythe 1968: 187). Since the site has never been professionally examined, and there is no clear documentation, it is not clear who the occupants were.



4.4.2 Carlton House I, HBC (1795-1801)

Morton identified the middle set of ruins in the same stretch of shoreline as being the HBC's Carlton House I. According to Morton, this post was built in 1795 and then was relocated to the South Saskatchewan River in 1805. However, the post was actually abandoned in 1801 because the NWC decided to leave their Fort St. Louis I at Pine/Peonan Creek (Johnson 1967: lxxxiii). Morton's identification of the site as the HBC's Carlton House was on the basis of Peter Fidler's mileage courses of September 18, 1792. Fidler noted an abrupt change in direction from NW to SE in this stretch of the river: "NNW 2/3 - SbE 1 - Carlton House built here in 1795 - on North side - NW 1/3" (HBCA E.3/1).

Confusingly, there were two other HBC Carlton Houses at the time: one on the upper Assiniboine River and one on the Churchill River. Further, there were three consecutive Carlton Houses on the Saskatchewan: Carlton House I at La Corne (1795-1801), Carlton House II, also known as South Branch II (ca1804-ca1810) near St. Laurent on the South Saskatchewan River, and Carlton House III (1810-1885) at the reconstructed Parks Canada site on the North Saskatchewan.

Since Carlton I existed for 6 years, there are passing references to it in other documents. There are actually three daily journals which were kept at the post in the winters of 1795/96, 96/97 and 97/98 (HBCA B.27/a/1-3). However, the next surviving Carlton journal is from much later, in 1814, when the post was located on the North Saskatchewan River. These first three journals were all kept by James Bird. Unfortunately, his daily entries are very brief and he does not record any information about his surroundings - although he describes many details regarding the on-going construction of the post. He faithfully records the arrival of each Cree and the occasional Assiniboine [Nakota]. However, these individuals are never named. Furthermore, Bird does not give any hint as to where their winter camps were. About all that we learn from the journals is that bison were wintering within a day's journey south of the post.

4.4.3 Upper Nipawin, XY Co (1798-99?)

Morton knew from the HBC journals that on September 18, 1798, two canoes of the newly established XY Company had arrived at Carlton I. They "began building a House about half a Mile higher up the River" (HBCA B.197/a/1). Having found what he considered to be the Carlton I post, Morton decided to walk upriver. He found a small site "within the half mile" (SAB A32 A.1 Vol. 8: 204h). Seemingly, this was the XY post. Nothing more is known of this post since James Bird, who described the arrival of the XY men, left for Setting [Sturgeon] River in October where the rest of his journal was written.

4.5 Fort St. Louis II, NWC (1795-1801)

On traveling upriver, in August 31, 1808, Henry the Younger, of the NWC, camped “at the spot where the French formerly had an Establishment called Fort St Louis, built by St. Luc de la Corne.” (Section 4.3.2.5). Continuing on the next day, they arrived, on the south side, “at an Old Establishment of our own which has been abandon’d since 1805, called Fort St Louis from its proximity to the Old French Fort below” (Henry the Younger 1965 Vol II: 482-84). Coues, who edited the journal in 1897, located this NWC post “near a little stream coming from the S. now called Pine cr” (ibid).

The site is just south of the mouth of Pine Creek and about 0.5 km south of Peonan Creek. Philip Turner, in 1910, was aware of the site but had not been there himself (Tyrrell 1934:19). Tyrrell visited the site in 1933 but he identified it as being the old French post of Fort St. Louis and perhaps also the site of Fort La Jonquiere (Appendix 1: Figure 6). Oddly, Tyrrell makes no reference to Henry’s specific comments that the two posts he observed were some distance apart. Furthermore, Tyrrell quotes David Thompson’s log of July 7, 1808 which also indicates the two St. Louis posts were also some distance apart: “at 2 1/2 P.M. at the Forks, 5 1/2 P.M. Fort St. Louis, 6 1/4 P.M. Fort la Corne.” (Tyrrell 1934:25). As mentioned, Tyrrell considered the NWC’s Fort St. Louis I post to be at the Carlton I locale.

A. S. Morton was also at the Pine/Peonan Creeks site. He was in no doubt that it was the NWC’s Fort St. Louis site (Stewart 1936:298; Appendix 1: Figure 5), just as Henry the Younger and Thompson had indicated. Archaeologists, who have worked at the site, have supported Morton’s identification although they have not carried out intensive excavations.

There are no journals from this NWC post. Despite the degree of competition between the companies, the Carlton journals make almost no mention of it. Probably, Fort St. Louis II and Carlton House I, together, are the “post” marked on the James Bird map of 1815 (Appendix 1: Map 1815), as discussed below.

4.6 Fort Batoche, NWC / Upper Nippoe, Nippewin (Fort Nipawi), HBC (1816-17)

There is little documentary evidence specifying the locations of these two posts (Appendix 1: Figure 4, 5). Furthermore, neither Fort Batoche nor Upper Nippoe has been visited by historians or archaeologists. However, there are records of two posts of this date in this general area.

When Philip Turner sent Tyrrell his descriptions of the old posts along the Saskatchewan, he started off with Fort Mosquito (now called Fort Maranquin) just below the Forks. He continued:



Fort Batoche: 15 or 16 miles below Fort Mosquito on the north side of the river, inside the James Smith Reserve. The cellars and marks of the foundations were visible when I saw them last.

Fort St. Louis: Two miles below Fort Batoche on the south side of the river, within the James Smith Reserve. This one I have not seen myself, but the Indians which told me, who saw the indications of the old buildings, also told me where they were (Tyrrell 1934:18-19)

Tyrrell thought that there were no posts in the La Corne area between the years 1805 and 1850 (Tyrrell 1934:21). Perhaps for this reason, he thought that Turner was confused about Fort Batoche, and that Turner must be referring to the ruins at the Carlton House I complex, two miles below Fort St. Louis II.

However, Turner 's information about events back in 1816 was correct: the information is documented in a long-forgotten journal in the HBC archives. Travelers in the early 1800s also mention posts somewhere between the old French post at St. Louis I and the Forks. According to Morton, Governor James Douglas in going upriver in August 1835 mentioned seeing "Fort la Corne" [the old French post at Fort a la Corne] and then, 4 hours later, passing "Batoche's Fort". Morton calculated Douglas would have been about two miles above St. Louis II, just where Turner had placed his Fort Batoche (Appendix 1: Figure 5). Morton was also told there were supposed to be ruins in this area on the north shore above St. Louis II. He returned in 1941 to visit the site but found both his informants had died and he had no means by which to cross the river to examine the ruins (SAB A32 A.1 Vol. 8:204i-j, 285a,f). No one has visited the area to see if there are actually any remains there.

Posts in this area are mentioned in the HBC archives. In the spring of 1816, the NWC became afraid of possible attacks by Plains groups. They abandoned their post on the North Saskatchewan, near Carlton House III, and retreated to the Forks where they built a post, Fort Maranquin. In order to compete with them, on May 26, 1816, James Bird left two HBC men "to build a small house and trade with some Indians who are living in the neighbourhood of Nippoe, or old Carlton House, which is about eighteen miles below the Forks of the River" (HBCA B.60/a/15). The HBC probably selected this location because of its proximity to the traditional locale at La Corne. In retaliation, the NWC then built a second post, immediately adjacent to the HBC, which we know as Fort Batoche.

This HBC outpost from Carlton continued to operate through 1816-17. It was known as the "Upper Nippoe", as opposed to the outpost from Cumberland, downriver, called the "Lower Nippoe". Surprisingly, Turner's information, given to Tyrrell almost 100 years later, was correct. James Bird has left an account of the several days he spent at this post on his way upriver in 1816 (HBCA B.27/a/6). The master of the opposing NWC post, with whom the HBC had several disputes, was indeed called "Battoch", and his son had been recently killed at Red River. There is no further information about the posts. Unfortunately, the Carlton journal of 1817-18 is missing and there is no mention of these posts in the Carlton 1818-19 journal. They had been abandoned, perhaps in 1817.

Members of John Franklin's Arctic expedition wintered at Cumberland house in 1819-1820. In January, he and George Back left for the north by way of the Saskatchewan River to Carlton House. He first passed the "remains of an old establishment, called the Lower Nippeween [Nipawin]" (Franklin 1970:101). Two days later, on January 26, 1820, he wrote that:

After a fatiguing march of seventeen miles, we put up at the upper Nippeween, a deserted establishment [and] "agreed the next morning to encamp, in the future, in the open air, as preferable to the imperfect shelter of a deserted house without doors or windows" (Franklin 1970:101).

George Back, who was accompanying Franklin, also recorded this overnight stay. Furthermore, Back mentions the adjacent abandoned NWC post: "some hours after dusk and at last got to an empty establishment, called upper Nippewin - there was also one belonging to the NW company" (Back 1994: 33).

Franklin's map [Appendix 1: Map 1820) shows the post(s) as being just below the mouth of "Beaver" [Peonan?] creek, in other words at the site of the old NWC post of 1795-1801. However, he and Back were at the Upper Nippoe and Batoche posts, above Peonan Creek, which had been abandoned only several years earlier.

4.7 Fort Maranquin /Mosquito (1816/17)

Fort Maranquin, also called Fort Mosquito, is the only post within the La Corne Forest boundary. David Meyer and William Ferris were directed to the site during an archaeological survey of the Forks area in 1980 (Wilson 1982). They found two separate clusters of features, about 14 paces apart, 2 miles (3.5 km) below the Forks. The western cluster was of five small chimney heaps and several pits; the eastern one was of two large heaps and two deep pits. It is not clear if the two sites are cotemporaneous.

Meyer pointed out (Wilson 1982:774) that while the Cree word for 'mosquito' is 'sukimao', the word for grassland or prairie is 'muskootawin'. This is probably the explanation for the name Fort Mosquito. On a sketch map Morton (SAB A32 A.1 Vol. 9:287) places the post about three miles below the Forks, on the north side of the river. Morton's authority for this location is, apparently, Philip Turner who was quite explicit in his description in 1910:

Fort Mosquito was situated about three miles below the junction of the two rivers. The stone chimneys were still up, the cellars and foundations of the buildings were still visible. It was situated on the north side of the river (Tyrrell 1934:18).

Neither Morton nor Tyrrell visited the site, although Tyrrell learned that remains were still visible in 1933 (Tyrrell 1934:19). Stewart and Morton simply paraphrase, without credit, Turner's 1910 account in their 1936 article (Stewart 1936:299).



As we have seen, in his “Historical Geography”, Morton quotes James Douglas who traveled up river in August 23, 1835. Four hours after passing old Fort la Corne he came to Batoche’s Fort and later camped for the night “3 miles below Fort Maranquin” (SAB A32 A.1 Vol. 8). Douglas then passed the Forks early the next morning.

James Bird is the only person who actually saw the post in operation. As we have seen, on his way upriver in 1816, he had stayed for several days at the HBC’s Upper Nippoe. His stay may have been because his son was there. However, he was also trying to resolve some the serious disputes with the neighbouring NWC men. When he arrived at the post, he was told that:

Mr John George McTavish the Northwest Proprietor who is in charge of this district, (but who was in the Columbia last winter) visited this place a few days ago ... expressing a hope that I would call at his House (which is situated about a mile below the forks of this River) on my way to Carlton (HBCA B.27/a/6 December 13, 1816.).

However, Bird was very aggravated with the NWC. When he left to travel up the Saskatchewan, he passed McTavish’s Maranquin post without any comment.

4.8 Isaac’s House/Fort aux Trembles, (1773-77)

This small cluster of buildings was built by a group of Pedlars in 1773. This site lies on the south side of the Saskatchewan just across from the head of Thomson Island, west of the Hwy #6 crossing (Appendix 1: Figure 4). The Pedlars knew it as Fort aux Trembles or Fort des Prairies while the HBC referred to it by the name of a former employee, Isaac Batt, who had deserted to the Pedlars. Its location has never been in doubt and an archaeological survey has been carried out at the site (Wilson et al. 1979).

The “post” was briefly visited by Alexander Henry the Elder (1969) in 1776. However, he spent most of his time visiting several large camps of Nakota (Assiniboine) to the south, probably near modern Humboldt. Henry’s account is confused perhaps because he wrote his memoir in his old age, although he seems to have used a journal of sorts.

It has been suggested that the post that Henry visited was actually in the La Corne area, or that he has conflated the locations of two different posts: the one at Thomson Island and another at La Corne (Stewart 1936:297, Tyrrell 1934:17-18). In other words, at some point, he was actually at the site of the “Three Pedlar’s Posts” that Morton had identified north of Carlton I. Since the “Three Pedlars” site has been professionally evaluated, the question is moot.

4.9 Summary

The oldest post at La Corne was the French Fort St. Louis I on the south side of the river, at the traditional campground. It has been suggested that in the mid-1770s, several Pedlars built three small temporary posts about 5.5 miles (8.7 km) upriver. In 1795-1801, both the HBC and the NWC had a post in the area. The NWC's Fort St. Louis was on the south side of the river, at Pine Creek, just south of Peonan Creek. The HBC's Carlton House I was just over a mile (2 km) downriver, on the north side near the Three Pedlars' Posts. The XY Company also had a short-lived post next to Carlton I in 1795. Both the NWC and the HBC closed their posts in 1801. The NWC and the HBC returned in 1816-17 and built adjacent posts on the north side of the river about two miles (3 km) above Peonan Creek: the NWC had Fort Batoche while the HBC had Upper Nippoe. At the same time, the NWC also had a post just below the Forks, Fort Maranquin. All three were closed in 1817 or 1818. The HBC returned again, in 1850, and built Fort a la Corne I on the old French site of Fort St. Louis I (see Section 9.0).

5.0 The first travelers on the Saskatchewan (1741-1773)

5.1 The first Europeans

5.1.1 Henry Kelsey (1690-92)

There are no first-hand descriptions of traveling on the Saskatchewan River until 1755, although it has been suggested that Henry Kelsey's 1690 journal described his journey along the route. Until the 1990s, the 1928 published edition of Kelsey's papers was scarce (e.g. Kelsey 1929, 1994; Epp 1993). The only readily available account of his travels was the popularized book written by James Whillans who claimed that Kelsey traveled along the Saskatchewan River, passing through the La Corne area in July 26-19, 1690 (Whillans (1955: 82-87). However, Whillans was in error. Although it is agreed that Kelsey was probably at The Pas, he never travelled upriver. Instead, he went up the Carrot River to the present Shoal Lake First Nation Reserve where his party abandoned their canoes, walked overland south over the Basquia Hills to the Red Deer River valley, and continued through the Porcupine Hills onto the plains (Ronaghan 1984, 1993; Meyer and Russell in press).

5.1.2 The French Traders (1741 - 57)

Members of the Les Verendrye family reached Cedar Lake on the lower Saskatchewan River in 1739 (Champagne 1971: 42-45). Some of their maps show the Saskatchewan River but these were based on vague, second-hand information and are too generalized to offer information about the La Corne area (La Verendrye 1927). Seemingly, the French did not establish a post at The Pas until 1751 (Champagne 1971: 51-53). Legardeur de

Saint- Pierre, who supervised the French posts in the west, had ordered Niverville to move upriver. Apparently, Niverville successfully sent several men from The Pas to establish the post “300 leagues” upriver, although Niverville, himself, was unable to go there (Legardeur de Saint Pierre 1887: clxi-clxiii). Louis de la Corne succeeded Saint-Pierre and in 1753 was responsible for the post known as Fort St. Louis I in the La Corne area (Champagne 1971:54-57). It is not known if this was simply another name for the earlier post built by Niverville’s men. There are no journals from any of these early French posts on the lower Saskatchewan or from La Corne’s post which was abandoned about 1757.

5.2 The HBC wintering inland

Between 1754 and 1773, the HBC sent men inland to winter with the Cree in order to persuade them to bypass the French and Pedlars’ posts on the Saskatchewan and bring their furs down to York Factory. Several journals survive of these journeys, although some writers were barely literate (Russell 1991). Almost all of the journals concerning travel on the Saskatchewan mention La Corne, either on the way west in late summer or on the return to York Factory in the spring. They present convincing evidence that the “traditional” La Corne area was an important locale for the Cree, even when the posts in the area had been abandoned.

5.2.1 Anthony Henday (1754-55)

Anthony Henday did not pass by La Corne on his way inland to southern Alberta in 1754-55. His group of Cree had left their canoes near modern Red Earth, on the Carrot River, and walked west, but remained south of La Corne. His journal entries made during his canoe journey return down the Saskatchewan River in the spring of 1755 give few geographical details (Belyea 2000). As we have seen (Section 4.3.2.1), he was the first to describe Fort St. Louis when he stopped there in May 1755. However, he comments only on the French traders, with no mention of either his fellow Cree or a traditional campground.

5.2.2 Joseph Smith (1763-64)

The next inland journal was kept by Joseph Smith who was almost illiterate: some words are indecipherable. He makes no mention of passing La Corne when he came upriver by canoe in September 1763. However, on his return downriver in 1764, he wrote that the French House had been burned, but his reference to burned woods suggests it may well have been the result of a forest-fire. Smith’s group stayed there for several days, holding ceremonies at a grave:

May 16, 1764 whe padelad and the rever rongs the seam ther whe Cam
to wher the freansh hous was but the Indens had bornt it
[May] 17 Whe Lea by for the one of indens died the [funer?] as the
want up the rever ther the had a word of Tobaker and ther the Indens darnes
all day and night ther the woods bornt wind nw
[May] 18 whe Lea by the indens darnes in all that day wind the Seam
(HBCA B.239/a/52).

5.2.3 William Pink (1766-69)

Four journals survive from William Pink's journeys inland in 1766, 1767, 1768 and 1769. His group of Cree met their families at La Corne and then walked overland. In some years they went southwest to the Eagle Hills area, in others they went along the North Saskatchewan into eastern Alberta.

His first journal, like Smith's, is difficult to understand but the later ones show much improvement. From Pink's journal we learn that La Corne was, in fact, where many families awaited the return of the men from York Factory in late summer. It was also an important camping site for the flotillas going down to the Bay in the spring. Clearly, both sides of the river were used. Further, Smith used a well-established trail along the north side of the river leading west to the lower Sturgeon River at modern Prince Albert.

1766 - 67

Autumn, 1766: [no identifiable mention of La Corne]

May 16, 1767 ... this day we piched on the NW Side of this River Over A
gainst wich I saw the Ruens of an old French House the Indains Say that
a bout Teen Yeares a gow they a bode heare (HBCA B.239/a/56)

1767 - 68

August 6, 1767... this day we piched on the N Side of this River Opposite
to the Ruiens of the uper French house, here I found Tenting Twelve Tents
of Indains seven ware of Sinnapoits a bout Forty horses this Eving we
threw a way our Canews

August 7, 1767 this day we proseeded on our journey by Land a Longe
the North Side of this River not being Yet Come to our Familyes this Day
was a bad day with me for I had Got me a horse to Cary my thinges ...
as he was Crossing a Crick whare the Bankes ware Steep so the horse ...
Sliped down in to the Crick and thare Lye So Longe that all my thinges
ware wet

May 22, 1768 ... this Day we pitched Opisite the Ruine of the upper
French house (HBCA B.239/a/58)



1768 - 69

August 1, 1768 ... this Day we Came to our Familyes in Land Tenting Opposite the Ruens of the upper French House Consisting of Fifty Tents and a Little below this on the Opposite Sid I hare ware Tenting Thourtey Tents whare to more English men Came with Thare Indaines to thare Fammelyes

August 2, 3, 4, 5, 1768 stayed at camp

August 6, 1768 ... we prowseeded on Our Journey by Land [along the north shore] and Mooved a way Towardses the plase whare we Came to our Fammelyes Last Yeare

May 1769: [no reference to the La Corne on his return] (HBCA B.239/a/61)

1769 - 1770

July 31, 1769 ... Came to the Famelyes in Land on the South Side of the maine River at the upper house

August 2, 1769 stayed

August 3, 1769 ... Moved to the South West

May 1771 [no mention of La Corne on his way return] (HBCA B.239/a/63)

5.2.4 Matthew Cocking (1772-73)

The last of the inland travelers was Matthew Cocking who wintered inland in 1772-73 (Burpee 1908a; HBCA B.239/a/69). Cocking and his Cree partners met their families on the south side of the river at La Corne and, again, they were at the site of the old French post. Cocking does not refer to La Corne on his return in the spring: he only mentions passing by the Forks and then the Francois-Finlay post at Nipawin. On his return to York Factory, Andrew Graham mapped Cocking's travels (Appendix 1: Map 1773) which show him leaving his canoes at La Corne, west of "Sasway's House" or the Francois-Finlay post at Nipawin. The unpublished, longer version of his journal inland reads:

August 11, 1772 Wind SW cloudy weather with thunder and a heavy rain at times. In the afternoon came to the Families. seven tents of them. This day passed several Falls and in general tracking against a very heavy Current. - Here the Indians always wait for the arrival of their Friends. Plenty of Horses and Dogs with them. Here we threw away our Canoes. They tell me a French House formerly stood here possessed by the Pedler Franceway, but no remains of it appears..

August 12, 1772 12 Wind and Weather variable. We did not proceed. I am informed that there are 18 tents of Indians a short distance off...

August 13, 1772 Wind West part cloudy with rain afterwards clear. We are preparing to proceed tomorrow. An Indian Child died this day. I laid up a reserve of Tobacco and Balls for Summer Use in my passage back to the Fort.



August 14, 1772 Wind S.W. clear weather: We proceeded at eight in the morning and put up at three in the afternoon. Young men hunting as we go. The Country within about a mile of the river (where small wood chiefly Spruce grows) hilly producing short Grass in general except in the Vallies about a foot high; low Willows and Ponds in places, abundance of vermin Holes; the Soils a fine black Mould. (HBCA B.239/a/69).

5.3 Summary

From these journals we learn that La Corne deserved its Cree name, Nipawiwinihk, “the standing place”, where the 18th century trading groups met their families on their return from Hudson’s Bay. La Corne was also an important camping site for the flotillas going down to the Bay in the spring. The traditional campgrounds were on both sides of the river, directly opposite each other - although Pink mentions the north side more often. Many years later, the locations were still favoured. In 1850 the HBC built Fort a la Corne I on the south side at old Fort St. Lois I. In 1852, the CMS established Nepowewin Mission, on the north side, where Pink’s groups most often camped. Oddly, none of the journals mention Pehonan, some 11 km further upstream.

6.0 The Saskatchewan: explorers, travelers, surveyors

6.1 The Fur Trade Maps (1773-1815)

The Saskatchewan River was the main European route into the west from the French arrival in the 1750s until the construction of the CPR in 1882. Unfortunately, since relatively good maps of the river were published early on, few travellers attempted to record geographical details. At the most, they might record their daily travel times. As a result, maps published in the 1850s continued to show posts that had been abandoned decades before while failing to show newer ones.

There is no cartographic history of Saskatchewan as there is for Manitoba (Warkentin and Ruggles 1970). Briefly, the “official” maps of North America, especially the Canadian west, were printed by the world-renowned Arrowsmith firm in England. Their first map of the west was published in 1792 and went through many editions until the Canadian government began their own maps in the 1870s.

The Arrowsmith maps of “British North America” show little change in the La Corne area from the 1802 edition (Warkentin and Ruggles 1970: 140) through to the map showing Palliser’s expeditions in the late 1850s (Appendix 1: Map 1824, Map 1858a). Ironically, these Arrowsmith maps were based on the very old, but detailed, surveys made in the 1790s by two fur traders: Peter Fidler and David Thompson. Alexander Mackenzie’s map of the northwest, published in 1801, was also well-known but he has few details of the Saskatchewan River since he was never upriver from Cumberland House (Appendix 1: Map 1801).

6.1.1 Andrew Graham and Matthew Cocking (1773)

In 1773, Andrew Graham, at York Factory, made a map of the interior based on information he obtained from HBC employees who had been sent inland (Appendix 1: Map 1773). On it, we see just where Cocking met his families at La Corne, his overland route to the Eagle Hills, one of the first depictions of a bison pound, and Cocking’s embarkation south of modern Red Deer Hill. Unfortunately, the map was never published nor were several other HBC maps of the time. An abridged version of Cocking’s 1772-73 journal of his wintering with the Cree was printed in 1908 (Burpee 1908a) which, as we have seen (Section 5.2.4), includes the first geographical description of the La Corne area.

6.1.2 Peter Pond (1776-78, 1780s)

Peter Pond, the Pedlar with the poor reputation, lived at many posts throughout the Northwest between 1775 and 1788 (Wagner 1955). In the mid-1780s, he drew maps which were copied by people intending to send them to several governments ranging from the U. S. Congress to the Empress of Russia. These three surviving maps show his two years at Sturgeon River Post from 1776-78 although he did not leave a written account of these years (Appendix 1: Map 1786). The maps clearly show a travel route from the Sturgeon River north to Lac la Ronge. As we shall see from other sources, there was probably another further east, giving access to the La Corne area. Further, Pond marks a locale on the Saskatchewan: “This is the highest Post the French Traders Possess’d” (Appendix 1: Map 1786). This is clearly La Corne but, oddly, it is on the north side of the river. Either this is simply a copyist’s error, or Pond is indicating the early importance of Nepowewin, the important campground across from the original French post.

6.1.3 David Thompson (1789-1814)

In 1778, the HBC hired their first surveyor, Philip Turner. In 1789-90, while at Cumberland House, he was responsible for training Peter Fidler and David Thompson. The two men then carried out a series of mapping feats throughout the Northwest that were never repeated: river courses (i.e. distance and compass direction from point to point) were mapped even down to the quarter-mile. Thompson later left the HBC for the NWC but the two men often mapped identical river systems, covering the breadth of Saskatchewan (Russell 1991:31-32).

David Thompson is renowned for his great map of the Northwest which he drew for the NWC in 1814, after he had retired to the east. Although now almost illegible, a copy was made in the late 1890s which has often been published (e.g. Coues 1965 [original 1897]; Thompson 1968 [original 1916]). He also drew a similar map for the British government (London PRO FO 925/4622) which has never been reproduced in full.

Thompson's map, which covers the West, does not give details of the La Corne area except to show the 1794 NWC post downriver at "Nepoin" (Appendix 1: Map 1814). Many of his field notebooks are now in the Archives of Ontario and several historians have used these fieldbooks to discuss the La Corne area (Coues 1965, Tyrrell 1934, Stewart 1936, Morton SAB A32 A.1). Judging from their comments, Thompson did not describe the La Corne area despite several journeys on the Saskatchewan.

In the 1850s, when he was old and sick, Thompson wrote a narrative of his life in the west. The manuscript was later obtained by Tyrrell who published it 1916. The later discovery of a chapter dealing with his first years on the Saskatchewan resulted in a second edition in 1962. Thompson was with the HBC men who left Cumberland House to establish South Branch House in 1786. He does not describe the river except to say that after four days, they reached the Forks of the "Bow River", now called the South Saskatchewan. His Narrative gives a good description of life at a small post at that time, but has nothing directly relevant to La Corne.

6.1.4 Peter Fidler (1790s)

Peter Fidler died working at a small HBC post near Dauphin, Manitoba in 1822, not having the chance to sum up his experiences as Thompson did. There is a large map of the Northwest which is attributed to him, only a portion of which has been published (Burpee 1908b: 176). Seemingly, the map is based on his notes written up to about 1816 but was drawn several years after his death. Perhaps for this reason, it shows hardly any places along the Saskatchewan (Appendix 1: Map 1816).

Fidler's major surveys were carried out before 1810. He kept detailed journals during his travels, often including small sketch maps (e.g. Tyrrell 1934). He also obtained sketch maps from local aboriginal people. He often recopied his journals at a later date when he would insert events that happened several years after the original journey. Many of the various short-lived posts throughout the west are known only from his comments and sketch maps.

Fidler was the first to describe the important portage from the Saskatchewan River across to the Torch River, on modern Tobin Lake. This was important to the Cree who utilized the Nepowins and the lower Whitefox and Sturgeon Rivers. Fidler felt it was sufficiently important that he even drew a small sketch map of it, one of the very few sketches he made along the generally straight-forward Saskatchewan River. He described it as:



... a carrying place about 3 miles long from this river on the N side into another Sturgeon [Torch] river that falls into Cumberland House Lake (HBCA E.3/1 Sept. 14, 1792 fo 88d).

The same portage continued to be used into the early 1900s since it is shown on McInnes's map of northeastern Saskatchewan (Appendix 1: Map 1913). Judging from present maps, the portage would only be a mile long and was about 20 km (12 miles) above the Campbell Dam and on the west side of Tobin Lake.

Although Fidler does not give a general description of the La Corne area, the record of his courses have been used to locate several posts in the area. The following are his complete entries as he moved upriver from Isaac's House (Fort aux Trembles), past old Fort St. Louis I, and on past HBC Carlton House I. He makes no comment about the opposition's Fort St. Louis II:

[September 17th, 1792] - At 5 AM got underway went W 1/2 - SSW1 a poplar Island on the South side, WSW1 1/4 - WNW 1/2 - SWbW1 1/4 - SbW 2/3 - WbS 2/3 - S 1/2 - WNW 2/3 - SEbS 2/3 a poplar Island on the South side & at the head of it on the South shore, was formerly a Canadian House, & called by our people Isaacs, on account of Isaac Batt formerly in the Hudsons Bay service, absconding & remaining I believe two years at this place; when he returned back to his former employ - this man was inhumanly massacred by some Black Feet in the Summer of 1791 on his way into the barren ground to kill Buffalo in company with John Thompson - who they suffered to escape unhurt - Isaac speaking a little of the Blackfeet language - & generally having a small assortment of medicines he used to frighten the Indian so much by them that at last they Short him on that account - large presents were offered to that Nation to any person who would deliver up the person that committed that atrocious deed, but none would pay the least attention to the offer. SWbW1 - NWbN 2/3 - WbS 2/3 - SSW 2/3 - WbS1 1/4 - SWbS1 - WSW 1/3 & put up at 4 3/4 PM - Light breezes at West cloudy, cool weather - Strong current yesterday & this Day.



[September, 18th 1792] - at 5 3/4 AM got underway - went NNW 2/3 - WbS 2/3 - S 2/3 - WbS 2/3 - WbN 2/3 - SbE 2/3 - SWbW 3/4 - a stoney bad, low projecting, point on the North side & rapidy - called Folsters point - SbW 2/3 - SE 1/2 - the uppermost French Kings post in the interior parts, built by Colonel St. Luc La Corne in 1756 in the French service - they remained here until & [sic] order came for him to return to Quebec, to assist defending that fortress as it was expected to be attacked by the English - a Scite of which is a true level low grassy place on the South side - being surrounded by a small hill all round except the front next the river - It is said that a deal of silver plate, & many other Goods was buried under the Ground, when they left the place, expecting to return here again - which they never did - some years after a Canadian who lived with La Corne at the time the thing was hid made search for it but could not find any part off it - the Grass & young trees having sprung up in the interval, that compleatly obliterated every mark they had made for its discovery - SWbW1 1/4 - The Canoes that went a head killed a Buck red Deer here - they stopped here about an hour and again got underway - SE 1/2 - SSW 1/3 - NNW 2/3 - SbE 1 - Carlton House built here in 1795 - on North side - NW 1/3 - W 2/3 - NWbN 2/3 - W 3/4 - NW1 - NE 1/2 - NWbN1 - & put up at 5 PM. Fresh breezes at S, morning clear, better part cloudy & rather cold - Donald Mowatt disabled in his Feet that he cannot Track. (HBCA E.3/1 fos. 89d-90)

Here we find the beginning of the rumours of buried treasure at La Corne. The post was built by Louis, not Luc, de la Corne. It is not clear who the master was in the last years of the post - Louis had apparently gone back to Quebec in 1755 (Russ 1974:331-32). It is very doubtful if Louis or any post masters of the day had any valuables to speak of - according to both Henday and Cocking, the posts they visited seem to have been poorly furnished.

It has been recognized that both Thompson's and Fidler's courses must be used with great care. (e.g. Meyer and Klimko 1986:98-100; Stewart 1936: 289-290). Their compass readings are generally good, at least they can be used to accurately trace shifts in courses. However, their estimated mileages were often incorrect, not surprisingly for they often had to help track or haul the boats along the shore.

6.1.5 James Bird (1815)

In the HBC archives, there is a map hand-drawn by James Bird in 1815 (Map 1815 Bird). Hitherto, all the maps had focused on the features directly on the Saskatchewan. The Bird map is the first attempt to show the geographical features across central Saskatchewan, especially the "hills" where the Cree and Nakota (Assiniboine) often camped in the winter.

Bird, who was then at Carlton House III, focused on the region to the south and west, the sources of his crucial bison provisions. There are few details of the country to the east and north. However, he does indicate the La Corne area to the east. Peonan Creek was apparently called Sweating Lake creek, a name that is not known from any other documents. Bird must have known it well, since he was in charge of Carlton House I for over three years. Several years later it appears as Beaver Creek on the Franklin map (Appendix 1: Map 1820). Bird shows a “post” just below the creek. This probably marks the Carlton I/ Fort St. Louis I posts of 1795-1801, especially since Bird was the man who established Carlton I (the nearby Fort Batoche/Upper Nippoe posts were not established until 1816). Bird does not indicate any features in the country to the north of La Corne. The region is simply called “Wood Country” an expression that occurs often in the Carlton journals.

6.1.6 Gabriel Franchère (1814)

Franchère was not a map-maker. He is mentioned here because of the journal he kept of his travels in the far North West between 1811 and 1814, which he published in 1820. The book later attracted much attention since it was one of the first accounts of Fort Astoria, on the Pacific coast. As well, it was one of the few published descriptions of the Canadian west in the 1810s. Franchère recorded his journey down the Saskatchewan in 1814, giving the first description of the NWC post near Carlton House III. However, he says little of the trip down to Cumberland except to mention La Corne, which he passed June 19, 1814:

During this day we passed two old posts, one of which had been built by the French before the Conquest and our guide told me also that this was the furthest point to which the French had penetrated (Franchère 1969: 173).

6.2 Exploratory Expeditions (1820-1860)

The British, and later Canadian, governments were under increasing pressure to evaluate the resources of the northwest, especially in the later period as the United States began developing its frontier. The published accounts of three major expeditions attracted a wide readership, especially among those who had a professional interest in the west. There was an increased public interest in the west because of the various Franklin searching expeditions of the mid-1800s.

6.2.1 Sir John Franklin (1819-22, 1825-27)

The first John Franklin arctic expedition was based at Cumberland House for the winter of 1819-20. The members of the expedition made a great effort to describe fully the various geographic, naturalist, and anthropological items which would be of interest to the leading English “scientists” of the day. Franklin’s narrative, first published in 1823, includes John Richardson’s account of his visit to Carlton House in the spring and Robert Hood’s journey into the Basquia Hills, south of Cumberland (Franklin 1970). However, they do not men-

tion La Corne in their accounts in Franklin's book nor in their recently published journals (Hood 1974, Richardson 1984).

In January 1820 Franklin and George Back left Cumberland for the north, by way of Carlton House. Franklin (1970: 94-119) describes his journey up the Saskatchewan River and his sojourn at Carlton III. However, he says little of the geography; instead he dwells mostly on the hardships of winter's travel on the ice. Because of these difficulties, there was no time for his assistant "to note the bearings of the points and delineate the course of the river" (Franklin 1970:100). Franklin left this for John Richardson to do in the spring. Unfortunately, Richardson's diaries of this journey have not survived. However, the resultant map is a very beautifully drawn, annotated map of the Saskatchewan (Appendix 1: Map 1820). Interestingly, the map shows Franklin's campspots, not those of Richardson who was responsible for mapping the river. This may explain why the map locates the Upper Nippeween post as being below Beaver [Peonan] Creek, at the site of the old NWC St. Louis post, rather than at the Upper Nippoe/Batoche complex, which, as discussed earlier, better fits Franklin's description (Section 4.6).

Back, who accompanied Franklin, also kept a journal. His account does not give much additional information about La Corne. Like Franklin, he mentions the overnight stay at the abandoned HBC post which he named "upper Nippewin". However, he adds an important detail: "there was also one belonging to the NW company" (Back 1994:33). This was Fort Batoche, at the same location.

Franklin returned to the Arctic in 1825-27. Neither his published account and maps, nor the recently published journals and correspondence from both of the Arctic expeditions, make reference to La Corne (Franklin 1971, 1995, 1998).

Years later, in 1848, when it became apparent that Franklin's 1845 Arctic expedition was long overdue, Sir John Richardson made an overland journey to the Arctic in search of him. However, he went by way of Cumberland House, Frog Portage, and the Churchill River: there is no mention of La Corne (Richardson 1851).

6.2.2 Sir John Palliser (1857-60)

The Palliser Expedition, which was sponsored by the British government, spent several years on the northern plains. The official accounts were published as four Parliamentary Papers between 1859 and 1865 and his great map was published in 1863. The daily journals of both Palliser and other members were recently edited by Irene Spry (Palliser 1968).

The expedition travelled overland from Red River. Although the expedition spent much time at Carlton House, no one went east to Fort a la Corne. Consequently, that portion of Palliser's famous map which includes the Saskatchewan River is based on earlier maps. Thomas Blakiston, joined the expedition at Carlton House in October 1857, having come inland from York Factory. After a misunderstanding, he later left the expedition at Edmonton and returned east by way of the Saskatchewan River, passing Fort a la Corne on January 22, 1859. He later submitted a detailed report on the west but he makes only passing references to Fort a la Corne (Palliser 1968 Appendix V: 542-581).

6.2.3 Henry Youle Hind (1857-58)

The Hind expedition of 1857-1858, supported by the Province of Canada, was on a much smaller scale than that of Palliser. Hind visited Fort a la Corne in August 1858. He scarcely mentions the post, although he has left one of the two known illustrations of Nepowewin Mission (Hind 1971 Vol I: 397-406; Appendix 1: Figure 7). On August 11, 1858, Hind left the post and returned south, along the trail bordering Peonan Creek. Hind's is the first description of this route after that of Matthew Cocking in 1772.

On August 9, 1858 Hind's subordinate, John Fleming, left Fort a la Corne for the Red River by way of the Saskatchewan River, arriving at Cumberland House on August 11. Neither Fleming's account of this trip, nor the expedition's map of the Saskatchewan River, give any useful details of the river, or the La Corne region. (Hind 1971 Vol I: 441-46; Appendix 1: Map 1858b).

6.3 Other Travellers (1827-1844)

Few people took the effort, or perhaps felt sufficiently qualified, to describe their travel on the Saskatchewan River after Franklin's published map and account of his first Arctic expedition in 1823. For example, Paul Kane, the renowned artist says nothing of his journey down the river from Fort Carlton in June 1848 (Kane 1968). As one traveller explained: "The route from Carlton to Cumberland is so well known from the description of the Arctic voyageurs that anything from my pen is unnecessary" (Douglas 1914:272). However, there are several accounts which, from their title or subject matter, would seem likely to include a description of the La Corne area. Upon examination, it was found that only one had useful information, which proved to be important in documenting George Sutherland's presence at La Corne (Section 7.0).

6.3.1 David Douglas (1827)

Douglas became well-known after making several expeditions to North America for the Horticultural Society of London. In July 1824, he went to Fort Vancouver where he spent several years, then returned to York Factory in the spring of 1827 with the HBC's annual brigade.

Douglas arrived at Carlton House on June 3, 1827, where he met Thomas Drummond, a fellow naturalist who was attached to the second Franklin expedition. Douglas does not give any details of the several field trips they made in the vicinity before leaving for Cumberland from June 5th to 9th. It was Douglas who made the comment, quoted earlier, that the river had already been well-described. His single comment of the journey to Cumberland was to describe a campground “Eighty miles below Carlton at a high bank on the left-hand side of the river called ‘The Women’s Encampment’” (Douglas 1914:272). Seemingly, this would have been near Tobin’s Rapids.

6.3.2 Thomas Drummond (1827)

Drummond came west as a naturalist with the second Franklin Arctic expedition. Instead of going to the Arctic with Franklin, he was sent to the Columbia in August 1825, where he carried out fieldwork. He returned east in 1827, arriving by dog sled at Carlton House at the end of March where he remained for several months making occasional short fieldtrips. He and another man left downriver in a skin canoe on July 14th, arriving at Cumberland on July 19th. Despite his background as a naturalist, he makes no comment concerning this part of his journey (Drummond 1830: 209-215).

6.3.3 Edward Ermatinger (1827-28)

Ermatinger was a HBC trader who spent several years in the Columbia district. He kept a brief journal of the trips he made with the HBC Brigades to and from York Factory in 1827 and on his final trip east, in the spring of 1828.

His journal entries in the spring of 1827 concerning the portion of the Saskatchewan River below the Forks are vague: he may have camped near La Corne and he may have seen Cree in the general area:

June 6th, 1827: [the party left Carlton at 2 a.m.] “stop to supper a little below the South Branch” [the Forks]

June 7th, 1827: “See more Indians this morning from whom we get some skins ... Stop to cook [supper] below Thorbun’s Rapids. Drift all night. (Ermatinger 1912:89).

However, on his return journey later that summer, he specifically names La Corne and Fort Batoche as well as several other landmarks west to modern Prince Albert:

August 18th, 1827: At noon came to point La Corne and breakfasted. Saw G. Sutherland freeman from whom traded a little dried meat &c ... Encamped 2 points above Fort a Batosh.

August 19th, 1827: Started at 1/2 past 4 a.m. Breakfasted at 11 opposite the South Branch. Saw an Indian here from whom we traded 270 [skins] swans. Encamped ... below the 7th of the Cole’s Rapids



August 20th, 1827: A Point below Campment des femmes - find a man from Carlton with the meat of 2 Buffaloes ... Encamped one point above Rapide Croche

August 21th, 1827: Encamped a point above Sturgeon River (Ermatinger 1912:100).

His final journal with the HBC's Express down to York Factory the following spring does not give any details of the La Corne area. He simply says that about halfway between Carlton and Cumberland "See Indians: trade several pactons [90 lb packs] Rats" (Ermatinger 1912:121).

Ermatinger's mention of seeing George Sutherland is important, and is discussed in Section 7.0. It is also noteworthy that bison were seen as far east along the river as Prince Albert. Further, he makes frequent mention of meeting various groups along the river.

6.3.4 George T. Allan (1841)

Allan was a fur trader and merchant on the Oregon country, originally with the HBC. Several libraries on the west coast have a typewritten transcript of his "Journal of a voyage from Fort Vancouver, Columbia to York Factory, Hudson's Bay, 1841" (Allan 1841). The manuscript is important since there are few accounts of travel on the Saskatchewan in the 1830s and 1840s. Allan fully describes his travel with the HBC Express down the Saskatchewan as far as Carlton House in May 1841. However, he did not continue down the main Saskatchewan from Carlton. Instead, the group rode on horseback overland to Red River and from there they continued north by boat to York Factory, where his narrative ends.

6.3.5 Sir John Henry Lefroy (1844)

Lefroy spent from May 1843 to November 1844 on what became a well-known expedition to the Mackenzie River in order to establish the location of the magnetic north pole. He returned by way of the Athabasca River and Fort Edmonton. He stopped at Carlton House for a day before resuming his journey on August 26th, arriving at Cumberland House on August 29th, 1844. Lefroy wrote a detailed description of the far north. Yet, he made no comment about his journey down the Saskatchewan except to describe, in detail, a fright he received from an attempted attack in the night shortly after leaving Carlton (Lefroy 1938: 94-95). Lefroy, who came to be considered an expert on the west, published one of the first estimates of the aboriginal population of Canada. He gives estimates for many individual trading posts, including "300 souls" at Cumberland, but he does not include the Carlton area (Lefroy 1853:195).

6.4 Government Surveys (1870-1921)

6.4.1 Sir William Francis Butler (1870-71, 1872-73)

Butler made two journeys through the west. The first, in 1870-71, was to evaluate conditions for the Canadian government. He returned in 1872-73, where he wintered for several months in a cabin at the Forks, before continuing north. Butler wrote two books of his experiences that became best-sellers (Butler 1968a, 1968b). However, he is a somewhat florid writer. Most of his writings are digressions on whatever topic takes his fancy with very few concrete details of his experiences.

Butler returned from his 1870-71 trip to the Rockies by way of the Saskatchewan River. He has two pages of his stay at Fort a la Corne from January 21 to 23, 1871, but manages to say nothing of either the HBC post or the Mission (Butler 1968a: 332-33).

In 1872-73, Butler returned to the west, sending two companions ahead to build a cabin on the tongue of land forming the Forks (the “Butler Settlement” of homestead days was south of the Forks). He arrived at the cabin at the end of October then immediately left on a bison hunt to the plains. He returned to the Forks where he remained from December 2, 1872 to February 3, 1873. He wrote two chapters, supposedly describing his life there (Butler 1868b: 68-82), but all we learn is that two Cree families camped briefly across the river and, because his horses were starving, he had to take them to Fort a la Corne, twenty miles downriver. Despite his lack of details, his drawing of his cabin at the Forks is probably an accurate picture of such buildings of the day (Appendix 1: Figure 8).

6.4.2 Alfred C. Selwyn, (1873)

Because of the growing interest in the geology of the west and the construction of the CPR, Selwyn was sent by the Canadian Geological Survey to report on the region. He returned by way of the Saskatchewan River in October 1873. When he returned, he published an official report (1874a); a map of the Saskatchewan River (Appendix 1: Map 1873a); and presented an address to the Canadian Naturalist Society describing the west (Selwyn 1874b).

Perhaps because he thought the river was already well-described, Selwyn says little about the Saskatchewan, apart from saying that they stopped for lunch at Butler’s “deserted establishment” at the Forks. They remained overnight at La Corne on October 6th, left the next day, and reached Cumberland on the 9th (Selwyn 1874a: 43). There are no details about La Corne in his accounts although he does insert a paragraph describing the shoreline on his map (Appendix 1: Map 1873a). He was also the first to show, and name, English River [Creek].

6.4.3 Otto J. Klotz (1884)

In 1884, the Canadian government sent Klotz to survey the Saskatchewan River from the Swift Current area down to Norway House in order to evaluate its potential for water transport (Klotz 1884). He began the detailed portion of the survey at the Forks on May 23, 1884. He reached Fort La Corne on May 27th and left the next day. By June 6th, he had reached a point 90 miles downriver. His published report includes one of the only descriptions of the physical layout of Fort a la Corne (see Section 9.1). However, he does not make any mention of the abandoned Mission or life at the post.

Klotz made a detailed survey of the river, even using a rodman. However, there are no published details of this fieldwork, apart from his published report which is rather general. The only map that could be located, which resulted from his survey, is the small 4"x7" map he included in his published report (Appendix 1: Map 1884). His fieldbooks have been deposited in the National Archives. However, the portion of his fieldbook dealing with the La Corne area has even less geographical details than the report, apart from the descriptions of difficulties caused by fires, bears, and mud-slides (Klotz 1884).

Klotz's map shows Candle Lake, Birchbark Lake and the Big Sturgeon [Torch] and English Rivers (Appendix 1: Map 1884). However, the two lakes are displaced far to the east, with the result that English Creek is shown extending west of Birchbark Lake. The Department of the Interior repeated this error on maps into the early 1900s.

6.4.5 William McInnes (1907, 1913)

McInnes, who worked for the Geological Survey of Canada, carried out explorations in northeastern Saskatchewan between 1907 and 1910. He covered much of the country from Carrot River north to Reindeer Lake, including the first survey of Wapawekka Lake. His fieldwork on the Carrot River included only its lower portions, east of Red Earth. He does not mention the La Corne area in his report on the Carrot River (McInnes 1908), or in the monograph summing up his fieldwork throughout the region (McInnis 1913).

McInnes's monograph includes a large map showing a compilation of all that was known of the area between the Saskatchewan and Churchill Rivers, north of La Corne (Appendix 1: Map 1913). The large blank shows how little both the Geological Survey and the Department of the Interior knew of the region between the Whitefox River and Wapawekka Lake even in the early 1900s.

6.4.6 L. R. Voligny (1910-15)

Between 1910 and 1915, L R Voligny (1917) carried out the last great mapping of the Saskatchewan River, covering the river between Edmonton and Lake Winnipeg. His focus was entirely on the river valley, beneath the valley crests - his maps show nothing beyond this. However, his large folio-sized sheets, each showing about an eight mile stretch of river, show a surprising amount of detail, even down to small sandbars (Appendix 1: Map 1915b).

6.5 Dominion Land Surveys (1883-1918)

The work of the Dominion Land Survey is described in Section 11. One of the primary purposes was to evaluate and subdivide the land in anticipation of the arrival of homesteaders. In the 1880s, several townships were surveyed to the immediate north and west of Fort a la Corne (Appendix 2: Figure 1). However, further work was not done north of the river until the early 1900s. The results were a series of township plans. Information from the surveyors was collated and published as “6 miles to the inch” Sectional Maps, the precursors to the later 1: 250,000 National Topographic Series. The results of their surveys were also published as brief reports in the annual Canadian Parliamentary Sessional Papers. The information from these surveyors for each of the townships within the Forest Reserve area has been collated in Appendix Two.

7.0 George Sutherland: the earliest settler (fl. 1812-1855)

7.1 Introduction

One of the Cree names for La Corne was the “Garden” (see section 3.1.3). Henry the Younger, in 1808, suggested that the French had a garden at Fort St. Louis I fifty years before he passed by. However, his second-hand information seems very dubious: “at this place some years ago were still to be seen agricultural instruments and remains of Carriage Wheels” (1992 Vol.II: 349). There is little doubt that George Sutherland, with his small potato patch, was responsible for the name. Further, he may well be Saskatchewan’s first settler, since his isolated “house” was several years earlier than the small Métis family group who tried farming at “Red Deer River”, near modern Hudson Bay, between 1826 and 1829 (Russell 1997: 44-46).

There has been much confusion about George Sutherland’s identity and his early years still remain unclear. He first came to public attention when he was mentioned in David Mandelbaum’s famous study of the Plains Cree. Mandelbaum, while carrying out fieldwork at Duck Lake in 1934-35, was told by Father Jules Le Chevallier:

that practically all of the individuals in the band were descendants of a Scotch trader, one George Sutherland, who came from Scotland in 1790. He took a Cree wife and left the employ of the Hudson’s Bay Company to live on the prairie as a native. He subsequently took two more wives and begot twenty-seven children who grew to adulthood and raised families (Mandelbaum 1979:10).

According to the recent Encyclopedia of Saskatchewan, George Sutherland, whose rough dates are from 1744-99, was born in Scotland, arrived at Fort Albany in 1793, and was chief officer at South Branch House in 1800. He had three Cree wives, fathered 23 children, and “died suddenly while hunting near present-day Hague” (Cottrell 2005:917).

However, these accounts have mistaken Sutherland for a very different George Sutherland, who was well-placed in the HBC. This other Sutherland was born in Scotland, came to Fort Albany (on James Bay) in 1774, and was at York Factory in 1794, at Cumberland House in 1795, at Edmonton House in 1796, and Manchester House in 1797. However, upon receiving an inheritance, he retired to England in 1798. His son John, briefly a HBC apprentice, joined him in England in 1799 while a daughter drowned at York Factory that same year (Brown 1979: 726-27).

There is added confusion in trying to sort out George Sutherland's life because of a third, and perhaps even a fourth, George Sutherland at Cumberland House in the early 1800s. One, at least, was transferred from Cumberland to the Athabasca District in 1821 (HBCA Search File. George Sutherland).

7.2 Biographical Sketch

The George Sutherland under study was not born in Scotland, and he lived in the Forks area long after the first Sutherland had retired to England in 1799. This Sutherland was a Métis: the numerous references to him over many years, mostly in the Carlton House III journals, invariably identify him as "Indian", "Half-breed", "Native" or, less often, as "freeman". However, he had a curious relationship with the HBC, different from any other person trading at Carlton House. Despite being always listed as an Indian or Native, he, alone, was the only person, other than HBC employees, who often has an individual account in the Carlton House III Account Books. He almost looks to have been treated with a degree of respect. Yet he seems to have almost avoided the post. He came in only once or twice a year to trade. Further, he never took out a supply of goods to trade on his own, or tried to seek part-time work with the post.

Sutherland can be tracked through the records because of a hunting accident. When the first Franklin Arctic Expedition was at Cumberland House, in the spring of 1820, Sir John Richardson described:

A half-breed, whose arm I amputated, declared, that tattooing was not only the most painful operation of the two ... " (Franklin 1970:71).

Robert Hood, another member of the expedition, reported the same operation:

The guns trafficked with the Indians by the Companies, are of a very bad quality, and occasion accidents every year. A poor man whose hand had been dreadfully shattered by the bursting of his gun, the year before our arrival, was brought from Carlton House to Dr. Richardson, who amputated it above the wrist and restored the use of his arm. He bore the operation with an unchanging countenance.... (Hood 1974:77).



This unnamed man was actually George Sutherland, as the Carlton House III journal shows:

April 18, 1820: “George Sutherland a Indian who had the Misfortune some Months ago to blow off his hand comes in in order to go in the boat to Cumberland House to consult Dr Richardson one of the Gentlemen attached to the Expedition under Capt Franklin”

May 10, 1820: [Dr. Richardson arrives from Cumberland] “also George Sutherland whose arm Dr Richardson had amputated” (HBCA B.27/a/9).

George Sutherland is mentioned often in the Carlton Journals and the few surviving Account Books. Unfortunately, the accounts and journals are often from different years, so it is difficult to correlate information between the two. Sutherland was often accompanied by Long Legs who was probably a near relative, probably a brother or brother-in-law. The first known record of the two are in 1812/13 when they appear in the first surviving list of “Indian Debts” at Carlton (HBCA B.27/d/4). Sutherland and Long Legs are listed in most of the remaining nine Account Books, from various years between 1814-1837. There are no Carlton accounts or journals after 1839.

Much later, in the early 1850s, Sutherland visited both the Mission and the HBC post at La Corne. Henry Budd has left a detailed description of him:

The party belongs to an old man named George Sutherland, called by the Indians, ‘Ahkahyahseu,’ ‘Englishman.’ He is the headman or chief of this party. He is the son of a Mr. Sutherland, formerly a gentleman in the Hudson’s-Bay Company’s service. The old man has only one hand, the other having been blown off by the bursting of a gun while hunting the moose deer. He has a large family of his own – eight sons and eight daughters ... and all living ... with numerous families. He was formerly the inhabitant of this place, and on this same point had lived with his family in a little house, and had tried to cultivate the soil by growing some potatoes, which he said grew to a large size. Some traces of his garden, &c. are still to be found within a few yards of our house” (CMS Vol 5 1854:111).

Here, George Sutherland is clearly the same Sutherland who had been treated by Dr. Richardson. Further, he is the same Sutherland, who often traded at Carlton. His cabin and garden must have been built some years before the HBC arrived at Fort a la Corne in 1850, since by that time they were in ruins.

In March 1853, Sutherland was reported to be in good health: “a band of Indians come in, some of George Sutherland’s sons... The old man, I hear, is very well.” (CMS Vol 5 1854: 116). However, his situation had changed in the last known reference to him, in the fragmentary 1855 Fort a la Corne journal:

a Party of plain Indians (say 10 Men) came in brought Buffalo leather & assorted furs... Those Indians are from Sutherland’s Camp reported of the old Man to be very unwell being ruptur’d. [HBCA B.2/a/2 June 2, 1855]



It is possible that George Sutherland's father was the same Sutherland who retired to England in 1798. The older Sutherland was known to be at posts on the Saskatchewan River system in the 1790s. Yet the younger Sutherland was already trading at Carlton in 1812, which means he was already a young man. However, this parentage might explain the rather special treatment Sutherland received.

7.3 Sutherland's House

Until the mid-1800s, and the arrival of the Métis bison-hunters from Red River, people either lived within the confines of a trading post, or they lived out on the land in tents. George Sutherland is the first known individual in Saskatchewan who built himself a cabin, many miles from the nearest post.

The Carlton journals begin by simply recording that Sutherland was regularly coming in to trade once or twice a year. Then, without any explanation, on January 8, 1822 a journal entry records that an employee had returned with birch sled-boards "from George Sutherland's House" (HBCA B.27.a/11). Over the following years there are numerous references to "George Sutherland's House", all without any expression of explanation of his living in such a situation. The house, or cabin, was said to be somewhere on the South Saskatchewan River, seemingly about a day and a half travel away:

Geo Sutherland a half breed settler on the South branch River arrived with him came some Indians and Mr Prudens son (HBCA B.27/a/14. January 24, 1825)

Although the house was said to be on the South Branch, there is some puzzling information which indicates it may well have been at the Forks. The information is puzzling because it would have been expected that the journals would specify if Sutherland was at the Forks or at La Corne rather than at South Branch, since both were well-known locales.

First, on one occasion, Sutherland brought in letters that had been forwarded from Cumberland (HBCA B.27/a/11, March 31, 1822). Since the winter travel route was up the Saskatchewan and North Saskatchewan Rivers, this suggests Sutherland was along this route, not up the South Saskatchewan.

The second incident is more obscure. Two Cree had been sent with letters to Fort Pelly, on the upper Assiniboine River. One returned saying the other, named Bad Meat, had refused to go further than Sutherland's House. The latter returned some days later, apparently from Sutherland's House. He told the trader that:

this is the fifth day since two men bearers of the York Packet had passed the Forks - They were then starving had ate two of their Dogs ... The bad meat himself did not see them he being hunting otherwise he would have brought them straight to the Fort by a beaten track there is across land (HBCA B.27/a/14 1824. February 21, 1825)

It turned out the HBC men arrived at Carlton shortly afterwards. They explained that they had not been actually starving “but in passing the Indian camp they represented themselves much more in need than they really were” (ibid) so that the people would be more likely to help them. Again, this suggests that Sutherland’s House was at, or below, the Forks on the winter trail from Cumberland.

7.4 Sutherland’s garden

The last mention of Sutherland’s House in the Carlton journals is in the spring of 1825. Although Sutherland continued to trade at Carlton, often accompanied by Long Legs, there is no indication as to where he lived during these years. However, there are several surprising entries in the Cumberland House journal in the spring of 1827:

- Macheanis and a Son of Geo. Sutherlands (Native) arrived from Neppawins ... with a letter from Mr Pruden [at Carlton] requesting some potatoes and Barley for seed to George Sutherland &c which he had promised him. [Mansock and William Twatt with 5 other men also came from “Neppowin”] (HBCA B.49/a/43 May 10, 1828)
- gave Macheaniss 3 Bushels of Potatoes which was all he wished to carry up to Sutherlands. Mansaack Twatt carried up one Bushel to Sutherland and also sent by him 1/2 Bushel for Mr Pruden which he is also to deliver to Geo. Sutherland. (HBCA B.49/a/43 May 12, 1828)

Unfortunately, Pruden, in his Carlton journal for this period, makes no mention of the request. Instead, the journal simply records that “Geo Sutherland & Long Legs get their Summers Supplies and returned to their tents which are on the South Branch River opposite this place” (HBCA B.27/a/16 March 24, 1828).

It could be argued that Sutherland tent was then at a spring muskrat hunting camp, and he would have moved downriver, further into the bush for the summer. Sutherland had been seen at La Corne the previous summer. In August 1827, Edward Ermatinger was returning west with the York Factory Express:

August 18/27: “At noon came to point La Corne and breakfasted. Saw G. Sutherland freeman from whom we traded a little dried meat &c. ... Encamped 2 points above Fort a Batosh. (Ermatinger 1912: 100)

Ermatinger accompanied the annual Express trips from Fort Vancouver to York Factory and back, by way of the Main and North Saskatchewan Rivers. His casual mention of Sutherland would suggest he knew him, which would not have been possible if Sutherland was habitually on the South Branch. Further, it was suggested earlier (Section 3.1.3) that Point La Corne was in fact Nepowewin, on the north shore. It seems quite likely that Sutherland's cabin and garden date to these years. Whether this was also the location of his "House" in earlier years cannot be determined. Nonetheless, Nepowewin is not only the site of the first Mission up the Saskatchewan, it is the location of at least one of the homes of the earliest settler.

8.0 Nepowewin Mission (1852- ca1879)

The Nepowewin Mission was established in 1852 by the Anglican Church Mission Society [CMS] across the river from Fort a la Corne I. Several journals, letters, and annual reports are in the CMS archives, now located at the University of Birmingham. The journals do not cover every year and often only several months of a year are recorded. The "in-house" magazine of the CMS, the Church Missionary Intelligencer, published Budd's early journals as well as several communications from later ministers. However, there is little documentation from Nepowewin after the 1860s. Budd's journals that he kept at The Pas from 1870 until his death in 1875 have been published (Budd 1974). He mentions his occasional, brief pastoral visits to Nepowewin but he does not give much information about the people.

8.1 Historical Summary

Rev. Henry Budd, the first ordained Cree Anglican minister, was born in northern Manitoba around 1812, educated at Red River, and died in 1875 at his Mission at The Pas which he had established in 1840. New evidence shows that Budd was the great-grandson of Matthew Cocking, who was so important to our understanding of the La Corne area (Beaumont 1992). It is ironic that Budd's Nepowewin Mission was directly opposite the old French site, which Cocking had described. However, it is doubtful if Budd was aware of the coincidence since Cocking had retired to England in 1782, long before he was born.

The CMS's scant resources supported missionary efforts around the world. Thus, Nepowewin received only minimal funding. Much of the daily efforts of the missionaries were spent in obtaining sufficient food. As well, they were caught in a bind because they were anxious to have children board at the Mission so they could be schooled. This meant the missionary-teacher had to stay at home and could not go out visiting the Cree in their bush camps since none of whom were yet settled at La Corne.

After a brief reconnaissance to the Forks in 1851, Budd returned to build Nepowewin Mission in 1852, across from the HBC's Fort a la Corne I. He was transferred back to The Pas in 1854, but continued to make brief visits to the Mission. He returned back to Nepowewin

in 1858 until his final transfer to The Pas in September 1867. He was succeeded by Rev. John Sinclair and later by Rev Luke Caldwell. After the death of Caldwell, apparently in 1875, services at the Mission were held by the local catechist, John Umpherville. Few, if any Cree ever settled at the Mission and it seems that Umpherville's home, south of the river, became the centre of activities, especially after the early attempts to establish the James Smith Reserve.

By 1876 the Mission was falling into disrepair. Cree families were beginning to establish themselves south of the river in anticipation of a reserve. The CMS began to consider moving the Mission across the river (CMS New Series Reel 50. C C1 0 41/17. Letter. Prince Albert Mission. Feb 4, 1876. MacKay). In October 1877, A. L. Russell, of the Dept. of the Interior, visited La Corne. By then the Mission was little used and people were beginning to establish farmsteads west of the HBC post, in the old Peonan area:

On the opposite bank of the river is seen at present the untenanted 'Nepowewin' Church of England Mission buildings. The H.B. Co. reserve here is apparently of little value, the land being poor and light. The Indians as well as a few English and half-breed settlers, about 1/2 dozen families, are scattered from three to ten miles west along the cart trail. The Indians as well as others expressed a desire to have their lands laid out as early as possible (Russell 1878: 15).

However, the Mission seems not to have been abandoned until 1879, when a detailed inventory was taken and plans were made to use the remaining materials for a "new Mission Station", probably to the west of what was to be the James Smith Reserve (CMS n.s Reel 50. C C1 0 41/37. Letters. John MacKay. Battleford. March 12, 1879; Nepowewin September 1, 1879). Later, an entry in the Fort a la Corne journal reads "the Mission Building is Burned to the grownd and all the Country is in fire & will do a great deal of damage the fire is close to the fort" (HBCA B.2/a/9 April 26/84). This was probably the old Nepowewin Mission, but it may have been the new mission building on the south side.

Although the Nepowewin Mission had been abandoned by 1880, the Church maintained ownership of the property. In the late 1920s, the Church wanted to exchange the land for provincially-owned property at Emma Lake to develop as a children's summer camp. A letter from the Bishop Lloyd, Diocese of Saskatchewan, July 17, 1929 identified, for the first time, the exact location of the mission property at Nepowewin:

The Synod of the Diocese of Prince Albert holds the patent for Fractional North 1/2 of 25, and Fractional South 1/2 of 36. T 48. R 20. W of 2nd Meridian, an area of 324 acres within the Forestry Reserve of Fort la Corne (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g).



By then, the mission was overgrown. The Bishop, in a previous letter dated July 22, 1929, wrote “I have never been on these lands and have seen them only in passing in a canoe. I believe they are in their original wild state” (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g). Finally, on August 5, 1930, an Order-in-Council was passed by the federal Privy Council allowing the exchange of lands (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. P.C. 1762). It is not clear if the site still lies within the Forest Reserve.

8.2 Establishing the Mission

Budd had been planning on establishing a mission up-river from The Pas as early as 1845, long before the HBC post was built. He was told of the two Nepowins:

The upper Ne-pa-win seems to have more advantages than the lower - fine plain ground along the banks of the Saskatchewan high banks on each side of the River; nigher to the buffalo good soil for cultivation and not stony. (CMS Reel-83. Letter. Henry Budd, Rivier du Pas. January, 1845)

Budd made an exploratory trip to Fort a la Corne in 1851 to decide on a site for the mission - this is when he first mentioned the “Small Garden” - but he does not say that he had decided on a location (CMS Reel-83. Journal. Christ Church. Henry Budd. 1851). However, in 1852, just before Budd arrived to build the mission, Rev. Robert Hunt also made an exploratory trip, but to the Prince Albert area. Hunt described the HBC’s post, adding: “On the opposite side of the river is the ground selected by Mr Budd for the intended station” (CMS Reel-89. Journal of Revd. R Hunt. Church Mission Point, English River. 1852).

On his arrival, in September 1852, Budd writes that he quickly decided to build opposite the HBC post, where, as we have seen, George Sutherland formerly had his house and garden:

I and Joseph Turner went over to the other side of the river, on a point opposite the Fort. ... We found the point suit our purpose well. The soil is excellent: firewood plentiful at the spot, pine wood for house building, &c. [ms has “is plenty two miles off]. The whole site is nicely situated - a large level point, with large pieces of clear plain ground, and poplars here and there interspersed (CMS Vol 5 1854: 94, Sept 11/52).

We put up a dwelling house in the spring, previous to my going down to Cumberland 40 feet long by 24 wide, but we have not been able to finish it so as to live in it in the winter. I am living in my little house we put up last winter. We have another house that my two men is living in, besides a store, and Cattle house. CMS New Series Reel 33. C C1/012/6. Letter. Nepowewin. Jan 12, 1854. Henry Budd).

In the early 1860s, Budd began the construction of a school-chapel which was still unfinished in 1865 (CMS New Series Reel 50. C C1 0 41/17. Letter. Feb 4, 1876. MacKay).

This chapel was to play a heartbreaking role in Budd's life. For years he had looked forward to the time when his son, also named Henry, would be able to assist him at the Mission and thus free Budd to visit the outlying Cree camps. He sent Henry for schooling in England, and after being ordained at Red River, Henry returned to Nepowewin. He died after a series of harrowing hemorrhages. Then, a month later, Budd's wife, who had helped him through so many difficult years, also died. And finally, only six weeks after these deaths, his elder daughter died. Budd had both his son and his wife buried in a crypt in the chapel-school, while his daughter was buried in the graveyard, beside two other sisters who had predeceased her. Budd's family still lies buried there. (CMS Reel A-84. Journal. Nepowewin. Aug. 6 to Oct 23 1864).

8.3 Neighbouring Cree groups

The two known sketches of the Mission show that it was quite small, extending westward from the point (Appendix 1: Figure 7). The outlying buildings in the illustration all seem to belong to the Mission. There are no indications in the Mission journals that any Cree settled at the Mission. If there were any Cree homes, they were very few. Instead, until the mid-1870s, the Cree continued to live in small family groups in the bush or, when circumstances warranted, out on the edge of the plains towards modern Batoche. However, there is little information about the location of these local camps in the Nepowewin records since Budd did not visit these camps, despite his mandate as a missionary. He had decided his priorities lay in maintaining a school, which meant he had to stay at the Mission. He did, however, send his assistant out to get provisions, either from the bison-hunters on the plains or from the fisheries at Candle Lake. Later, he was able to make regular missionary visits, but these were all to the small, established communities at Prince Albert, Carlton House, and Moose Woods.

At the same time, Budd seems to have had few Cree visitors at the Mission. Most likely this was because in this period, many Cree distrusted Christianity. Consequently, the journals mention only the same few people. Despite Budd's Cree background, he records nothing of the daily activities of even these individuals. Instead, his journals describe his attempts to convert them.

Despite the lack of references in the Mission documents to the country to the north, people were regularly traversing it. Initially, Budd depended upon bison provisions obtained from Cree hunting camps towards Moose Woods. There is a several year gap in Budd's diaries and by the time they resume in 1858, he is sending his helper north to the winter fishery which both the Mission and the HBC maintained at Candle Lake (CMS Reel A-84. Journal. Nepowewin 1858, Sept 27, 1858, Jan 3, 1859, Sept 10, 1860; Letter. Nepowewin. January 16, 1864).

The Cree were also travelling regularly north through the Forest Reserve. In the later 1800s, there was a small quasi-permanent Cree settlement at Candle Lake. In July 1873, a visiting missionary to the northwest of Prince Albert was told of a camp of four or five families “living by fishing and hunting, and cultivating a few potatoes. Again at Candle Lake, about sixty miles from the Nepowewin station, six families are located in the same way “ (CMS n.s. Vol XI 1875: 59). Several years later, in December 1887, Rev John Badger visited five families living at Candle Lake, including the chief of the James Smith Reserve (CMS Reel A-115. Journal. 1887 Rev John Badger).

8.4 Summary

Clearly, Budd considered that there were sufficient Cree in the La Corne area to support a mission long before the HBC post was built. Furthermore, he must have thought there were sufficient people living to the north so as to justify locating the Mission on the north shore, where it was relatively inaccessible to people living to the south.

9.0 Fort a la Corne I and II (1850-1886; 1886-1932)

9.1 Background

After Fort Nippoe was abandoned in 1816, the traders did not return to the La Corne area until 1850 when the HBC build Fort a la Corne I. The reasons for the HBC moving into the area in 1850 after so many years absence is not known. There are no Cumberland House or Carlton House journals for these years which might have explained the move.

At first the post was named “Nepewan” after the traditional Cree name for the site. The post was probably established in 1850, although some have put it as early as 1846 with no supporting evidence (e.g. Smythe 1968: 184). The first surviving journal opens October 1, 1851, but shortly afterwards the trader refers to “my journal of last year” (HBCA B.2/a/1. November 22, 1851). In 1851 the post was quite new since they were just starting to build the stockades. Thus it seems likely it was built in 1850.

The only known illustration of the post is the partial view sketched by the Hind party in 1858 (Appendix 1: Figure 7). Klotz described the post as he saw it in May 1884:

It is situated on the south side, on a bench about 30 feet above the river to the rear the hill rises 260 feet. The post consists of four log buildings, enclosed by a stockade beside some Indian wigwams. The country around the post is wooded with poplar, spruce, tamarac and birch.... To the south-west of the fort there is some open country, with good farming land, where wheat grows well (Klotz 1885:14).



In the mid-1880s, the low-lying Fort a la Corne I was moved inland, 3 km (two miles) to the southwest and only 0.25 km from the James Smith First Nation, where the Cree were just beginning to settle. Before the move, in July 1884, the boundaries of IR #100 were being resurveyed, which meant the Cree would be living some distance from the post. A month later, the trader “went out to pick out a place for New La Corne I hop it will do as Well as old la Corne a New Broom Sweep Well” (HBCA B.2/a/9. Aug 25, 1884). However, the final move into the new post wasn’t completed until 1886.

All the maps indicate the HBC property was entirely south of the river (e.g. Appendix 1: Map 1888b, Map 1909a). However, the HBC also owned a portion of land, across the river, immediately west of the Nepowewin Mission property. In a Forestry departmental memo in 1937, the District Superintendent was notified:

The fractional portion of the NE 1/4 of section 26, lying north of the north bank of the Saskatchewan River and containing 103.0 acres was patented to the [HBC] on March 27th, 1886 (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. Memo January 20, 1937).

Nevertheless, a year later, in a memo discussing the possibility of the province taking over the HBC property at Fort a la Corne, the land is described as being “South of the river” (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo March 4, 1938). There are no further documents in the file concerning the eventual disposal of the HBC reserve.

9.2 The nature of the Fort a la Corne journals

There are twelve Fort a la Corne journals, covering various periods between 1851 and 1930, although there is little useful information after 1896. These add up to about 1000 handwritten pages, which can be very difficult to decipher (Appendix 1: Figure 9). The journals vary in length, for example one consists of a four page fragment covering only a week each from June and October in 1855 (HBCA B.2/a/2). At the other extreme is the 180 page volume that covers the years 1883-1888 (HBCA B.2/a/9). Unfortunately, there are no full journals between 1851 and 1858. These are the years when the Cree would have been adapting to the new post, and the trader might have explained where they were coming from. The best journal coverage is in the 1860s and 1880s, but by then the post was well-established and there was little need to explain the surrounding geography.

There are 81 Account Books which cover the years 1864-1917 (HBCA B.2/d/1-81). These were not examined because of time constraints. Generally, the Account Books consist of lists of the manufactured trade goods received; the kinds and numbers of furs and other goods traded; the expenditures at the post; and the accounts of individual employees. Judging from the Carlton House Account Books, some Account Books may also include a “List of Indian Debtors” and occasionally even have separate accounts for individual Cree, with the dates and amounts of the goods and furs that were exchanged.



There was a consistent style of the HBC journal entries which dates back to the earliest days at York Factory. The entries were brief and usually began with a comment about the weather, an account of the employees' activities, and finally a mention of any Cree who had come to trade (or their departure). Until around the 1820s, individuals were seldom named, neither the post employees nor the aboriginal traders. However, by the mid-1800s this had changed. Individuals, or at least the important men, were named in the Fort a la Corne journals, with the same names re-occurring through the years. Their followers were simply "So-and-so's Son" or his Second Son or his Son-in-law or even his Brother. Women were seldom mentioned, either European or Aboriginal.

It is obvious from the frequent occurrences of Cree names that the hunting camps were small and consisted of several related families: a leader and several of his sons; several brothers; or two brothers-in-law. This was in sharp contrast to the nearby plains where camps could consist of 40 or more tents, each with two or more families. Some 18th century camps, to the immediate south of La Corne, had about 200 tents: over 1000 people (Henry the Elder 1969:295).

Although the leading Cree were almost always identified by name when they came to trade, the journals very rarely mention where their camps were located. Most often, the reference simply mentions an individual's camp: for example, "I sent so-and-so out to White-caps camp". Less often, there might be a comment that the Cree had arrived to trade from across the river; that is, they were coming from the north. Sometimes the journal entry mentions that a person's camp is at a certain locale, for example the Sturgeon (Torch) or Sucker (Whitefox) Rivers. However, it is not clear if this means the upper or the lower portions of the rivers. Certainly, if they were coming to Fort a la Corne from the upper portions, they would be crossing the Forest Reserve. Otherwise, they might be coming up the Saskatchewan River valley, by shore or by water.

9.3 The Candle Lake Fishery (1851-1884)

As soon as Fort a la Corne was established, the HBC men were travelling north of the river to reach their fisheries. The first journal starts off with the mundane comment "George preparing to go to the fishery"; a round trip that is later said to take between four and five days (HBCA B.2/a/1. October 10, December 18, 1851).

The travel time indicates the fishery was at Candle Lake, about 50 miles [80 km] to the northwest, where it is specifically located in all the journals kept between 1859 and the 1880s. The casualness of the statement about George's departure strongly suggests the fishery must have been in operation the year before. More important, the HBC men must have been following a well-established Cree trail to enable them to haul fish in their first year of operation.

The various journals show that the fishery was consistently maintained at Candle Lake each fall and early winter. Although they may have been hauling the fish with dog-teams at first, they were probably using horses: certainly they were using both horses and oxen by the winter of 1864/65 (HBCA B.2/a.4, October 17, 1864; January 22, 1865). This suggests not only a well-developed trail, but, since the trip took several days, there must have been a traditional overnight stop along the way. A likely stopover would have been at the Whitefox River crossing, about 30 km from La Corne. In Section 3.2.3, there was mention of the men stopping at Sucker [Whitefox] River on their journeys to and from the fisheries. This was probably also a traditional Cree camping ground.

The last definite reference to a fishery at Candle Lake is in the fall of 1884 when Henry Smith, a Cree, and his son were sent to Candle Lake to fish and trade (HBCA B.a/9, October 9, 1884). Many years later, following his surveys of the Candle Lake area in 1916, William Christie, DLS [Dominion Land Survey], described a more recently abandoned recent fishery which was reached from Prince Albert:

Whitefish are plentiful and a few years ago fishing in this lake was rather an important industry. The Hudson's Bay company formerly operated a trading post at Candle lake but it was abandoned a number of years ago ... the [recent] fishing station is situated at the mouth of Fisher Creek in section 26, township 55, range 23.... For some reason [fishing] has been practically abandoned during the last few years [SAB R.183 1.114 June 25, 1916; January 27, 1917)

9.4 The HBC's Candle Lake Outpost

Throughout the period that the HBC and the Mission maintained their fisheries at Candle Lake, local Cree were also wintering in the area. In order to save them the trip to La Corne, the fishermen took a few basic goods with them to trade. This developed into an outpost, although it was never highly successful. In later years, the trade was sub-contracted out to a local Cree, usually to a man named Henry Smith. It is not known if the Cree from the Whitefox River would have gone to the Candle Lake Outpost for basic items, instead of to La Corne.

By the winter of 1863/64, the HBC fishermen were returning home with furs from the Cree in the Candle Lake area [HBCA B.2/a/4, Nov 30, 1863). Then, in January 1869, independent traders arrived at La Corne from Prince Albert on their way to Candle Lake. Immediately, the HBC outfitted two men and sent them in pursuit (HBCA B.2/a/5, January 13, 1869). A more substantial effort was made the next year when the same two men were again sent out: "I hope the little outpost will turn out well" (HBCA B.2/a/5, November 16, 1869). Unfortunately, game was scarce that winter and the local Cree in the Candle Lake



area were forced out to the plains in search of bison. The outpost was disbanded: “It will not pay to keep up that place any longer. I sent the horses to them all home bag baggage [sic]” (HBCA B.2/a/5. January 29, 1870).

However, this was a minor setback. The HBC quickly resumed trade with the local Cree. In 1873, John Umfreville, an employee, was again outfitted with goods and sent to Candle Lake along with the Company’s fisherman (HBCA B.2/a/7. September 22, 24 1870). Ten years later, employees were still accompanying the fishermen to trade with the Cree living in the Candle Lake area and in outlying camps (HBCA B.2/a/8. December 3, 1880; January 20, 1881). The HBC’s efforts were intensified with the continued presence of free traders (HBCA B.2/a/9, September 27, 1883; January 22, 1884). In a cost-cutting measure, the trade was sub-contracted to Henry Smith: “he takes the goods on his own hook & will receive for payment 33 1/3% on all Value he pays in Furs or Cash only for his Services in trading” (HBCA B.2/a/9. May 26, 1888).

There is no specific mention in the La Corne journals of the final closing of the Candle Lake Outpost. It is listed as an outpost from Fort a la Corne in the HBC’s District Reports from Prince Albert in the late 1880s, with Henry Smith being the supposed manager. Then, in 1891, because of the poor trade at the La Corne post, all its outposts were closed (HBCA B.332/e/1, 5, 8, 11. 1887-1891). No doubt part of the decrease in trade at Candle Lake was a result of other traders establishing posts at the south end of Montreal Lake about 1890. Nevertheless, the Candle Lake Outpost had been in existence long before its assumed establishment in 1887 (Candle Lake History Book Committee 1991:33).

9.5 Birchbark Lake Fishery

References to both the fishery and the outpost at Candle Lake disappear in the late 1880s. By then, the fishery had shifted to Birchbark Lake, some 17 miles (27 km) to the south. Birchbark Lake is not named until late in the journals. Initially, it appears as Birch Lake, “towards Candle Lake quarter”, where men were taking goods to trade with the local Cree (HBCA B.2/a/9. January 20, 1885; November 9, 1886). By 1887, fish were being brought from Birchbark Lake alone and there is no further mention of the fishery at Candle Lake (HBCA B.a/2/10. December 29, 1887). The fishery at Birchbark Lake continued to be mentioned in the journals until 1894 (HBCA B.2/a/10. January 26, 1894).

HBC men were also sent to trade with the local Cree known as the “Birch Lake Indians” (HBCA B.2/a/10. March 5, 1890). Rev. John Badger visited a Cree camp there on his way to Candle Lake in 1887:

Dec 14/87: left 10AM, “We reached another camp of Indians at Birch Lake. They also numbered three families...(CMS Reel A-115. Journal. 1887. Rev John Badger).



There is no mention of a fishery at Birchbark Lake in 1895, although the HBC did trade some furs from there (HBCA B.2/a/10. February 16, 1895). That year marks the final useful La Corne journal. Birchbark Lake then disappears from the records, and its historical significance is now forgotten.

9.6 Steamboats

Steamboats were used on the Saskatchewan from 1873 to 1896, although some local traffic continued until the early 1900s (Klimko 1982: 245-48). Fort a la Corne, the only settlement between Cumberland House and Prince Albert was a welcome stop. Men from La Corne were hired to by the HBC to cut and stockpile firewood at temporary camps along the river. One such locale was somewhere at the Forks (HBCA B.2/a/7 April 5, 1874). Most often, wood was cut downriver in the Nipawin area (HBCA B.2/a/8 November 25, 1880; February 24, 1882). However, there do not appear to be any other sites within the Forest Reserve area that would be associated with the steamboats.

10.0 Cree camps in the La Corne area

10.1 Background

The number of Cree trading at Fort a la Corne in the mid-1800s is not known. In 1884, the James Smith band consisted of 144 people (Indian Claims Commission 2007: 1). However the general HBC trading area would have also included members of the Chakastaypasin Band whose Reserve #98, on the South Saskatchewan, was extinguished following the events of 1885 (Appendix One: map 1888a). In 1896, 27 families of this band relocated to the Reserves at La Corne (Indian Claims Commission 2007: 33).

In the mid-1800s, the HBC compiled population figures from their various posts but for some reason none of the posts on the Saskatchewan were included (HBCA B.239/z/10). J H Lefroy published population estimates for aboriginal groups across Canada but his figures for the Saskatchewan concern only the Edmonton area (Lefroy 1853: 194-95). Shortly afterwards, the British Parliament published their report on the Hudson's Bay Company. Included in the report was an estimated census of the Indians at each HBC post as of 1856 (Great Britain 1857: 365). Fort a la Corne is listed with 300, Cumberland House has 350, while the Carlton House figure of 6000 was obviously an attempt to include the various Plains groups (Great Britain 1857:365).

It is clear from the HBC's La Corne journals that the Cree were utilizing the area to the north, including the La Corne Forest. However, despite the numerous entries identifying individual Cree as they came to trade, the location of their hunting camps is rarely, if ever, mentioned. Upon reading the journals, there is an impression that families stayed within

their own traditional areas. For example, it seems the same people were regularly going to the north, while others were going to the east. There is no clear documentation of this, although further analysis of the journals may well support this impression.

As we have seen, the Cumberland House journals from the 1810-20s mention Cree groups hunting on the upper Torch and Whitefox Rivers. They were also frequenting the Lower and Upper Nipawins. The HBC's Fort a la Corne journals show the same pattern.

10.2 Hunting on the north side

Part of the Cree trading at Fort a la Corne lived on the north side of the river. However, the journal entries seldom specify just where there hunting camps were:

Nov 17, 1864: [sends some men to look for Indians] "on the other side"
(HBCA B.2/a/4)

Oct 1, 1867: "All the Indians have left, most to the north side of the river"
(HBCA B.2/a/4)

July 14, 1884: Tiecoosew crossed the river to his hunting grounds (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Oct 19, 1885: "sent of James Walker & Jumick(?) Britain to Indians across"
[they return on the 26th (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Oct 22/86: "Peter Hourie and son start off across to trade with Indians"
(HBCA B.2/a/9)

Feb 13, 1890: "John Sabys ... returned from visiting Che-ko-siews camp
on the north side of the River away for four days..." (HBCA B.2/a/10)

May 22, 1893: "Indians pitching off for their spring hunts many have gone
North" (HBCA B.2/a/10)

10.3 Sucker [Whitefox] River

The journals indicate some Cree camps were along the Sucker [Whitefox] River. Although their exact locations are not known, people would have been crossing the Forest Reserve to get to their hunting grounds:

July 29, 1859: "Archy and Red Deer come from Sucker River" (HBCA B.2/a/3)

Jan 4, 1886: Peter Jourdain takes flour with 2 horses "to Sucer river"
(HBCA B.2/a/9)

March 13, 1886: [Jacob Mclean, Lazarus Louis and James Walker "come
in from Sucker river" for church (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Dec 27, 1886: Peter Hourie getting ready to go to Sucker River to continue
his trade there (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Dec 29, 1886: Peter Hourie starts for Harry Red Nails camp (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Dec 30, 1886: Hourie returns from Succer [Sucker] River (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Dec 1/87: sends William Sakys “to succor river” to see Jacob McLean (HBCA B.2/a/9)

Dec 19, 1887: Philip Turnor and Harry Ballendine go with a horse and dog team with flour and bacon “to Succor River to be left there for trade” (HBCA B.2/a/9)

10.4 Sturgeon [Torch] River

There are few references in the journals to Cree camps on the Sturgeon [Torch] River. No doubt this was because those on the upper Torch River, known as the “Candle Lake Indians”, would have traded at the Candle Lake Outpost and Fishery (Section 9.3). However, in one case, two women arrived who wanted the HBC to send horses to fetch furs from their camp on the Sturgeon River (HBCA B.2/a/4. November 8, 1867). Apparently, they were not near Candle Lake. This may be an early reference to the “Torch River Trail” that is marked on the later Sectional Maps.

Some Cree, who traded at La Corne, hunted on the Sturgeon River but crossed over to the Saskatchewan River further down-river, perhaps near modern Nipawin, or over the short portage below Birch Island that Peter Fidler had described in 1792 (Section 6.1.4). In the spring of 1852, the supply boat arrived from Cumberland. It had picked up a man who had come from Sturgeon River but was unable to canoe up the Saskatchewan because of the high water. However, he left the next day “for the upper part of that river to join his Son in Law” (HBCA B.2/a/1 May 15 1852). Seemingly, he was traveling overland to the Sturgeon/Torch River by an established trail.

Later, a man was sent with trade goods to pass the spring with the Indians “hunting about Sturgeon River” (HBCA B.2/a/4. April 9, 25 1867). However, he went downriver and several weeks later a canoe was sent to bring him up from Birch Island. This is just upstream from “Fidler’s” portage and, again, suggests that Cree from the lower Torch River were crossing over to the Saskatchewan in this area.

11.0 The Dominion Land Survey Records (1883 - 1918)

11.1 Background

The Dominion Land Surveys were carried out to establish the legal land divisions and to evaluate the agricultural potential of individual townships. Although several townships were surveyed in the southeast corner of the future Forest Reserve in 1883, almost all the remaining townships were done between 1906 and 1910 (Appendix Two: Figure 1).



As we have seen, there are no first-hand descriptions of the area north of the river in the documents from either the trading posts or the Mission, apart from the brief journal by Rev. Badger. Since the DLS surveys were carried out before the Forest Reserve was established, they offer the possibility of documenting the traditional use of the area, before the foresters modified it.

The Forest Reserve consists of 24 townships, 21 of which lie north of the river. Many surveyors carried out fieldwork in the area and have left a variety of records. The specific information for each township has been compiled in Appendix Two.

11.2 Types of documentation

The surveyors kept both a field book and a field diary during their surveys. At the end of the field season, they submitted a written report of their work. Many of these were published in the Sessional Papers, often in abbreviated form. From their notes, the Department of the Interior published maps of each township, which were revised as further work was done. In turn, this information was collated and published as Sectional Maps, at a scale of 6 miles to the inch.

11.2.1 Sessional papers

The annual reports of the Department of the Interior were published in the federal Sessional Papers. The DLS reports were of special interest since they offered information on agricultural potential when homesteading was at its maximum.

There are wide differences in the types of information in the surveyors' reports in the Sessional Papers. Sometimes, especially in the earlier years, rather complete reports were published. More often, the information for each township was condensed into a paragraph and published in a lengthy catalogue. Because of the great number of townships that were being surveyed, one set of descriptions was published as a separate book (Drummond 1886).

11.2.2 Field books and field diaries

Hundreds, if not thousands, of the DLS field books are filed with Information Services Corporation in Regina while many field diaries are held in the Regina office of Saskatchewan Archives Board (SAB). None of these were examined because of time constraints and because SAB now considers the field diaries to be too fragile to bring up to their Saskatoon office. The field books often simply record information regarding the legal description of each township, while the diaries are often only daily accounts of work activities.

11.2.3 Individual DLS surveyors files, SAB

The responsibility for natural resources was turned over to the provinces in 1930 and the federal Department of the Interior was abandoned. Most of the federal files were discarded, since the provinces had neither the space nor the staff to maintain them. However, SAB obtained many, but not all, of the individual surveyors files (SAB R 183.I). These folders vary widely in what they contain; many of the documents are simply contracts and correspondence about their work. Some files also contain field reports, although in most cases these were published in the Sessional Papers. A list of the relevant individual DLS files that are held in the Regina office of SAB are listed at the end of the bibliography.

11.2.4 Township maps

The published township sheets have been catalogued according to township and range with the dates of the various editions (Poulin and Cadieux 1974; Appendix Two, Figure 1). Most of these are available only in Ottawa. SAB has a copy of at least one of the editions of the townships adjoining the Saskatchewan River, but is missing most of the townships along and north of the Twp 51 row (the northern boundary of the Forest Reserve). The earlier township maps often included trails and sometimes even buildings, but this information was seldom included after 1900.

11.2.5 Sectional Maps

The results of the DLS were compiled onto “6 miles to the inch” maps, sometimes referred to as “sheets” which went through several editions (Dubriel 1988). The early maps are particularly important since they often indicate the major trails. However, the trails are omitted from later editions when they became replaced by roads. SAB has at least one edition of each sheet, up to the late 1910s (SAB A/11). Other editions held in Ottawa were micro-filmed many years ago (SAB Micro 6.6). However, it is often difficult to identify the trails on the microfilm since the maps were poorly photographed and the film is badly scratched. Relevant portions of these Sectional maps are reproduced in Appendix Three.

The Department of the Interior seriously misunderstood the location of both Candle and Birchbark Lakes. These were thought to lie northeast, rather than northwest, of the La Corne area. This mistake shows on the official maps until DLS work was done in the area in the early 1900s. Consequently, the early Prince Albert Sectional Maps do not include details to the areas east of these lakes. These areas were considered to lie in the next sheet to the east which was not published for some years, and after the mistake was corrected. However, the result is that there is little information on the trails leading northeast through the Forest Reserve.



11.3 Limitations of the DLS documents

As mentioned above, the kinds of information in the Sessional Papers varies. As the work of the DLS increased over the years, only minimal information was presented in the township summaries which focused on agricultural potential. There was less and less mention of the trails by which the surveyors reached the townships.

The surveyors themselves were restricted in what they could describe. Instead of spending a full season in a region and becoming acquainted with the area, they were often moved between several projects across the west. Thus, while some surveyors noted any major trails they crossed in running their lines, they often did not know where the trails began or ended. Other surveyors ignored the trails. Consequently, in the Sectional Maps, a trail may suddenly appear in one township, but not on the neighbouring ones which were done by different men.

11.4 Traditional use within the Forest reserve

The surveyors often describe coming across an existing trail, which later appears on the Sectional Maps. In the Forest Reserve area, these would usually indicate traditional use. However, the surveyors often had to cut their own trails and sometimes these also appear on the Sectional Maps. Luckily, for our purposes, they can often be separated from traditional trails, either because of their straight-edged nature, or because the surveyor tells us so.

There is almost no mention of meeting aboriginal people during the surveys. It is not clear why this was so. The surveyors' time spent in any one area was relatively brief. Further, they were running straight lines through the bush, often through very rough ground where people would not be camping. It could also be the lines were not run at the times of the year when people would be most likely to be hunting or trapping. Nevertheless, people were using the area, since almost every surveyor mentions using pre-existing trails, for at least a portion of his survey.

12.0 The Settlement Period (1906-1941)

12.1 Background

The small Peonan Settlement, dating to the 1870s, was one of the earlier settlements in central Saskatchewan. However, legally recognized homesteaders did not begin to arrive into the area until the late 1800s. These first settlers took out homesteads south of the river. By the time lands were more readily accessible to the north, in the 1910s, the Forest Reserve had already been established (Section 13). Consequently, it is doubtful if there were any pioneer homesteads within the Forest Reserve area.

The various DLS reports in the early 1900s, of the area that was to become the Forest Reserve, invariably mentioned the poor agricultural potential. Although there was a better land north of the Whitefox, there was no ready access to it. Thus the earliest homesteads were to the immediate west and east of the Forest Reserve.

12.2 History of Settlement (1906-1930)

12.2.1 Before the Forest Reserve

One of the earliest settlements, only several miles west of the Forest Reserve, was noted by R H Montgomery, DLS, in 1906 in Tp 50 Rg 23: “a large colony of Galicians was situated on section 1 [who] were unable to speak English” (Montgomery 1909:255). Several years later, E. W. Hubble, DLS, surveyed six townships in the northwest portion of the Forest Reserve, including the Whitefox River. He had great difficulty in reaching the blocks from Prince Albert because of the lack of trails since “There are no settlers or inhabitants in this section of the country” (SAB R.183 I.237). Because of the spring thaw, he was forced to return by way of Fort a la Corne, apparently by the old Candle Lake/Torch River Trails.

In the spring of 1909, Hubble left Prince Albert and crossed the area to survey townships northeast of the Forest Reserve. He left the main Prince Albert - Candle Lake Trail: From there to Lost River, we passed through a country which is fairly heavily timbered.... There are no trails in this section of the country except the one made by the surveyors, which enters these townships from the west, via Prince Albert, nor are there any settlers, but doubtless there soon will be as many fine homesteads are available. Lost river [sic], the nearest post-office, situated on the south side of Saskatchewan river ... has a weekly mail service from ‘Star City’ on the Canadian Northern railway [about 45 miles away] (Hubble 1911:94).

In 1910, Hubble returned to Lost River, about 20 km southwest of Nipawin, by way of Fort a la Corne:

During this trip we passed through some beautiful fertile country via Fort a la Corne.... There are but few settlers along this route.... However, in the Lost River country a great change has taken place in the past year; houses have sprung up in every direction... (Hubble 1912:96).

Although settlers were rapidly taking up land along the south of the river, the lack of access prevented settlement to the north, even before the Forest Reserve was established. A map showing the number of vacant quarter-sections in each township in 1908 shows the area of the future Forest Reserve, north of the river, was unoccupied (Appendix 1: Map 1909b). Another map, showing the disposition of lands in 1914, shortly after the Reserve was established, again shows there were no settlers anywhere near the northern edges of the Forest Reserve (Appendix 1: Map 1915a).

In the early winter of 1911, when the boundaries of the Forest Reserve were first determined, the Forester in charge was careful to avoid any land that had existing claims or had agricultural potential. A block of land bordering the south side of the Forks was avoided because of a few settlers. Some land east of the Forks was avoided as well:

Two other pieces of land, to the north of the river, have been left out of the reserve there for the same reasons, namely, that it is possibly an agricultural area and that there are existing claims upon some of the land. One piece, in townships 48 and 49, range 20, west of the second meridian, is an elevated scrubby plain, like that just described. Half a section there has been leased by the Church Missionary Society. The other block, in township 29 [sic. township 49?], ranges 17 and 18, is said (by hunters who passed through it, and were met just north of it) to be an excellent poplar flat, bounded on the north by marshes and broken poplar land. The northeast quarter of section 31, township 49, range 17, belongs to the Canadian Northern railway (McDougall 1913: 100).

The east boundary of the Reserve was drawn to avoid “a settlement already established on the north side of the river in range 15. Another settlement in ranges 22 and 23 marks the western limit of the reserve north of the river” (McDougall 1913: 100).

12.2.2. After the Forest Reserve was established

Further information about the settlement history of the area comes from M. D. McCloskey who carried out land classification studies north of Prince Albert in 1920, and northeast of the Forest Reserve in 1921. In describing the general area north of Nipawin, McCloskey reported that:

The first settlers of this district arrived on the land in 1915. The locality chosen was around the southwest corner of township 52 range 14 where successive forest fires had cleared an area covering about three sections [east of Love]. At that time it was necessary for the settlers to man-pack supplies from the Saskatchewan river, a distance of 6 1/2 miles. These pioneers were Scandinavian ... (SAB R 183.XIII.3. McCloskey 1922: 11).

McCloskey divided the area east of the Reserve into four districts. Districts “A” and “D” were to the east of the Forest Reserve. District “B” consisted of Twps 50 and 51, Rg 15, along the east edge of the Reserve and District “C” was along the northeast of the Reserve: Tp 51 Rg 16 and the east half of Rg 17.

In Area “B”, adjoining the east boundary of the Forest reserve:

Most of the land in this area has been filed on and some of the settlers have made marked progress toward converting their holdings into revenue-producing farms. ... but here as elsewhere, many of the men are not coming onto the land and commencing their improvements...

A road west of the ferry [at modern Nipawin] is urgently required to serve the northerly portion of this area (SAB R 183.XIII.3. McCloskey 1922: 13).

Area “C” adjoined the northeast boundary of the Reserve, including a strip several miles south along the Whitefox River:

Here settlement has followed the course of the old Cumberland trail, still used by the people located in ranges 15, 16 and 17 along the Whitefox river.... Settlement is also being retarded here, to a greater extent than in Area B, by reasons of non-resident holders. In township 51 range 16 south of Whitefox river in the easterly part of the township, fifteen excellent quarter-sections were noted, homesteaded mostly in 1919, with no sign of improvements (SAB R 183.XIII.3. McCloskey 1922: 13).

As McLoskey pointed out, even in 1921, settlement was very sparse this far west along the Whitefox River. A settler lived south of the river near the west edge of the township, in Sect 20 Tp 51 Rg 16, but his nearest neighbour was 4 1/2 miles to the east. However there was a complete change after 1930 when the CPR completed the bridge at Nipawin. Local history books have been published by communities in the region (see the Local History Book section in the bibliography). They describe the rapidity of settlement with the arrival of the railway. However, few deal with events before 1930.

12.3 Metis Petitions (1935-1941)

In the mid-1930s, the Metis at Glen Mary (the old Pehonan settlement) petitioned the province to grant them a block of land. They first approached the MLA of Birch Hills on May 30, 1935. Chief Forestry Inspector W. W. Whelan, who was sent to discuss the matter with them, submitted a report regarding the matter as well as an affidavit from Baptiste Umperville, their spokesman.

In their original request, the Métis requested ownership of the following land within the Reserve:

- Twp 48 - 20: that portion of sections 35 and 36 north of the river
- Twp 49 - 20: sections 1, 2, 11, 12, 13, 14
- Twp 49 - 19: “A strip of land ... immediately south of the river, about two miles wide and following the river in a north-easterly direction for a distance of approximately six miles”
- Twp 49 - 18: “... a strip of land ... approximately four miles north and south, being two miles on both sides of the river and the full distance across the township” (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. Affidavit. Baptiste Umperville, July 19, 1935).



According to Whelan, in regard to the land north of the river in Tp 48 and 49 Rg 20:

“Mr. Baptiste Umperville is laying claim to this land in particular, for he states it is the land of his ancestors; that his grandfathers lived there; and that there are several graves, the remains, he states, of the Ministers of his Church, the Church of England, who ministered amongst his race one hundred years ago. I am giving you this verbatim as Mr. Umperville gave it to me (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo. W. W. Whelan to R. T. Cook, July 24, 1935).

Whelan was very hesitant about having settlers north of the river where, among other concerns, there would be increased chances for forest fires. Further, there were no trails in Range 18 north of the river. After meeting with him, the group modified their request to include only the lands south of the river:

Twp 49 - Rg 18: sections 7, 17, 18, south of the river
Twp 49 - Rg 19: sections 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, fractional 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 15, lying south of the river, excluding that portion held by the Dept of Highways for farm purposes (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g Affidavit. Baptiste Umperville, July 19, 1935).

If the Métis were granted their request, Whelan strongly recommended that:

if at all possible ... to negotiate with the Hudson Bay Company to transfer the remaining land they now have left in Township 48 and 49, Ranges 19 and 20 (possibly not more than eight quarters). This spot is the natural ground of the half-breeds and their forefathers ... While Mr. Umperville states that upwards of thirty families would settle in these lands, I am of the opinion that not more than a dozen families would settle there (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo. W. W. Whelan to R. T. Cook, July 24, 1935).

The Deputy Minister rejected the petition following the recommendation of the Director of Forests who listed a number of concerns: it increased the danger of fires; it was an established game preserve; there was little agriculture potential; it would establish a precedent; and the Métis might dissipate their concession (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. Memo. Director of Forests to the Deputy Minister, July 26, 1935).

Apparently, the petition was revived in 1938 but was again rejected. A memo to the Deputy Minister refers to an inquiry from the local MLA regarding the petition. The memo recapitulates the correspondence outlined above and mentions that in 1937, Mr. Umperville had been notified that “no land could be withdrawn from the reserve or set aside for the purpose mentioned” (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. Superintendent Patterson to the Deputy Minister, March 4, 1938).

Umpherville was persistent. In June 1939, he was again rejected when he asked that “certain lands” be opened for settlement in Tp 49 Rg 18 W2nd. Setting his sights lower, in 1941 he simply asked for a 21 year ranching lease along the south side of the river on Sects 17, 18 Tp 49 Rg 18 W2nd. However, he was told that only haying leases were possible (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. Letters to Baptiste Umpherville June 19, 1939; January 27, 1941). There is no more correspondence in the file regarding the matter.

13.0 The Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve (1913 - 1940s)

13.1 Introduction

The Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve is stated to have been established in 1911 (Saskatchewan Environment 1999). In fact it was not created until 1913, when an amendment to the Dominion Forest Reserves and Parks Act was published in the Canada Gazette on June 21, 1913 (Canada 1913: 22-24). The confusion in dates is no doubt caused by the lack of historical documentation of the history of the Reserve.

Although the developmental history of the Forest Reserve is poorly understood, the locations of the various forestry cabins and fire-lookout towers are marked on several Forestry Maps. These features are catalogued individually in Appendix Three, together with the sparse information that could be located on their history. The major roads and trails are also described in Appendix Three.

13.2 Documentation

The Forest Reserve was originally administered by the Forestry Branch of the Department of the Interior. This federal department was disbanded in 1930, when the provinces were given the responsibility for natural resources. The Reserve was then administered by the Provincial Department of Resources.

13.2.1 Saskatchewan Archives Board

The Saskatchewan Archives Board has only a few files for the Reserve. Apparently, no files were forwarded to the province when the Department of the Interior was disbanded in 1930, while no relevant DNR forestry files have been archived. No files on the Forest Reserve could be found in the Prince Albert Forestry Centre library (Angeline Battiste, personal communication).

The major file on the La Corne Forestry Reserve in SAB includes memos and correspondence through the years 1928 - 1949 (SAB NR.5.2.B.3.g). Almost all these records involve questions concerning changes to the boundaries together with several applications and petitions for various leases within the Reserve.

SAB has three oversize maps of the Reserve published in 1928, 1931 and 1936 which show the fire-towers, cabins, roads and trails (SAB B.36/13; B.62; B.36/17). There is also a 1939 Fire Protection Map of northeastern Saskatchewan which shows the towers, cabins and major roads within the La Corne Forest (SAB B/15).

13.2.2 Sessional Papers

The only information about the early history of the La Corne Reserve is found in the annual reports of the Forestry Branch, Department of the Interior, published in the Canadian Sessional Papers. Occasionally, these mention that various structures that have been constructed that year, but their specific locations are not given. After 1923, the only references to the Reserve are in regard to several management surveys that were carried out.

13.2.3 Curt Hartwell Report

Curt Hartwell, a summer student with the Forest Ecosystems Branch, compiled a catalogue of 29 historic sites connected with the Forest Reserve (Hartwell 2001). With each site he includes a photograph; both the UTM and Latitude/Longitude locations; and a two or three line description. These descriptions, although brief, often include the only recorded history of that site. Relevant excerpts from his report are included in Appendix Three.

13.2.4 Local Histories

In the 1908s, the provincial government provided grants to communities to compile their local histories. Books were published by many communities surrounding the Forest Reserve. Most of these deal with events after the initial homestead period and almost none refer to the Reserve itself. A list of these local histories is included at the end of the bibliographic section.

Biographical sketches have been published of the various people who had worked for the DNR and SERM over many years. However, there are only a few passing mentions of patrol cabins in the Reserve (Department of Natural Resources History Book Committee 1994).

13.3 History of the Forest Reserve

During the early 1900s, the DLS examined townships within the Reserve. All were professional surveyors except one man, A. L. Robertson, who examined the townships in the northwest corner of the Reserve in 1906. Surprisingly, he is listed as a “Forest-ranger” (e.g. Sessional Papers 1908: 270, 272). Nothing could be found about him or why he as a forester was carrying out these township surveys. Seemingly, the Forestry Branch was not interested in the area until McDougall’s survey in 1911.



In 1911, E G McDougall, of the Forestry Branch, was instructed to determine the boundaries for a possible Forest Reserve in the La Corne area. He carried out his work north of the river from November 24th to December 13th, under adverse circumstances:

Owing to the unusual depth of snow, it was necessary to carry all the horse feed; so two flat sleighs and two assistants were required. For the most part we followed summer trails, making short side-trips where possible, to reach and determine the boundaries of the agricultural land. Under the circumstances, the location of the boundaries could not be very thorough; but in many cases, the types were so much intermixed along their edges that even after a much closer examination a straight and somewhat arbitrary boundary would probably be preferred (McDougall 1913: 101).

McDougall recommended that the Reserve consist of 512 square miles. His recommendations were followed: when the Reserve was established in 1913, it covered 513 square miles. As discussed in Section 12.2.1, McDougall was careful to exclude any lands that had a prior settlement claim.

The construction of various structures in the Fort a la Corne Reserve is mentioned in the various annual reports of the Forestry Branch, Department of the Interior in the Sessional Papers. However, there is no specific identification of the various cabins, towers and roads:

1913-14:

1 ranger in charge, 1 ranger. One ranger-house completed; one ranger-house nearly completed; two stables nearly completed; one well, 4 miles road 10 feet wide (Sessional Papers 1915: 43, 46).

1914-15:

Staff: 1 ranger in charge; 2 rangers. Additional staff required in 1915, 1 labourer

Improvements: Three ranger houses, three stables, and two wells. Several miles of road and trail have been cut out. Two small cabins for stopping places have been authorized. Two lookout towers have been ordered, and will be completed in the near future. Orders have been given to construct a wooden lookout tower at the River Cabin

[Five reserves in Saskatchewan, including La Corne] have all the ranger quarters constructed, all the lookout towers erected or ordered, and the other improvement work is well under way. All the ranger houses should be connected with a telephone line (Sessional Papers 1916: 43-45).

1915-16:

One ranger cabin and stable were constructed. Four other buildings were completed. Forty-four miles of road were cut and opened up along an old trail. Two eighty-foot steel towers were erected and one fifty-foot wooden tower. One well was dug and a pasture fence erected (Sessional Papers 1917:43).

1920-21:

Three houses have been built this year including “one at Fort a la Corne for the senior forest ranger” (Sessional Paper 1922: 21).

1921-22

Two 80-foot steel towers were erected, one on the Fort a la Corne forest reserve ... The new headquarters of the Fort a la Corne forest reserve were connected with the reserve system by the construction of ten miles of new line. The same headquarters were given connection with the Glenmary Rural Telephone Company’s system, so that the reserve can now be reached [from] the inspector’s office (Sessional Paper 1923: 155-56).

1922-23

Two 5-roomed dwellings were built, both replacing old buildings erected years ago (Sessional Paper 1924: 109-111).

After 1922, the reports no longer refer to any construction in any of the Provincial Forest Reserves. However, it appears that by 1920 some roads were sufficiently improved that motor vehicles were beginning to be used rather than horses. (Appendix 1: Figure 10).

13.3.1 Structural features

As the above references from the Annual Reports show, there are no details of the appearance of the cabins and towers. A brief report was made of the White Fox Cabin just before it was abandoned (SAB NR 5.2.B.3.g. District Superintendent to Director of Forests, Nov 15, 1938). The station, which by then was in poor condition, consisted of:

- a 14’ x 16’ log shingled cabin
- a 14’ x 14’ log shingled barn

There is some general information about forestry stations in a local history book which mentions the provincial Forest Reserves to the east. Patrol cabins were about 25 miles apart and they were connected with a telephone line system. By 1921, a Ranger’s Station usually included a cabin, stable, and tool shed. The cabins were usually 14’ x 16’ and made of logs with plaster used to fill the cracks (Hudson Bay & District Cultural Society 1982: 75).

13.3.2 English Cabin site

The English Cabin site may be the most important locale in the Forest Reserve for heritage site potential. It is located on a crossing on the upper portion of the largest drainage feature within the Reserve. It is also at, or near, the junctions of three major trails that probably existed long before the Reserve was established in 1913. Both a Forestry Cabin and Tower were located at the site. A provincial historic plaque has been placed at the site, which shows there is still a strong local interest in it (Hartwell 2001:27).

13.4 Provincial Game Preserve

In 1913, shortly after the Reserve was established, the provincial government passed an act creating Game Preserves out of all the Dominion Forest Reserves. Previously the Forest Reserve rangers had protected the game on the reserve, with the province taking no active interest (Sessional Papers 1915: 50-51).

Little information could be found regarding the consequences of the formation of the Game Preserve. Two Game Guardian cabins are shown on the Forestry maps: one on the north side of the junction of the Forks, in sect 24 49-22; the other was opposite the Whitefox Forestry Patrol Cabin, south of the Whitefox River, in Sect 20 - 51-19. Activities within the Reserve were obviously restricted because a court case in 1933 had determined that hunting was prohibited within its boundaries (Rex vs. Smith, 1933). However, in the 1920s, if not earlier, and until 1945, many families from the James Smith Reserve made annual expeditions north by horse and travois to hunt and trap at Fishing Lakes, in the present Nipawin Provincial Park (Nemeth 1977:26-27).

13.5 Other Features

13.5.1 Picnic grounds

There were various traditional public picnic grounds within the Reserve but these were south of the river. The two oldest were near the Lars Headquarters and near Fort House to the east (Hartwell 2006, 1928-1936 Forestry Maps).

13.5.2 Corrections Branch Work Camp

According to Hartwell (2006:18), the provincial Corrections Branch had a work camp in sect 11 5 - 19. It was established in 1955 and disbanded in 1963-64.

14.0 Traditional Trails in the Forest Reserve

14.1 Introduction

Traditional travel routes have a high potential for heritage sites, especially near drainage crossings. As we have seen, there are no detailed historic descriptions of the old trails through the forest between the Saskatchewan and the Whitefox Rivers which would enable us to pin point the locations of traditional campspots. Nevertheless, there can be little doubt that several of the trails north of La Corne marked on the published maps were in fact, traditional travel routes.

Both humans, at least on foot, and animals used the same trails. Although there may not be any historic documentation or recent memory of their use, any prominent game trail along a drainage would also have been used by humans in the past. Travel routes would have been disrupted in the aftermath of forest fires. However, these would probably have resulted in only minor changes since the basic topography and drainage systems would not have changed.

Cree were travelling between the upper Torch and Whitefox Rivers in the La Corne area in the early 1800s, and probably long before that. However, the first maps that show trails through the area were the Sectional Maps produced by the Department of the Interior, based on the records of the land surveyors, in the early 1900s. Some of the trails marked on these maps were not traditional routes but were cut by the surveyors themselves. Once the trail was cut, it was then re-used by others wanting to traverse that part of the forest.

Several of the trails on the Sectional Maps and the Forestry Maps are named. In some cases, the various names are the same, in other cases they differ. In regard to the Sectional Maps, it is not clear if the names were supplied by the surveyor who was in the area, or if they were named by the cartographers who drew the maps in Ottawa.

The main trails which are marked on both the Sectional Sheets and the Forestry Maps are listed in Appendix Three, together with the information that could be found about them.

14.2 Department of the Interior Maps

The Department of the Interior published eight editions of the Prince Albert North Sheet #319 between 1892 and 1918. The first three sheets, those of 1892, 1902, and 1906 do not show any trails north of the river (e.g. Appendix 3: Figure 3).

The 1908 Sheet shows the surveyed townships across the southern portion of the Forest Reserve (Appendix 3: Figure 4). All of Townships 49 and 50, Ranges 15-22 are mapped but only Ranges 19-22 of Township 51. Several trails are marked on the mapped blocks across Twps 50 and 51, but none in the Township 49 row to the south. Yet the well-established trail leading north from La Corne passed through this area. Only three small segments are shown to the north, in Twps 52, north of the Whitefox. The trails that are marked follow almost identical routes as on the later 1918 sheet (Appendix 3: Figure 1).

The 1911 Sectional Sheet is similar to the 1908 Sheet with the addition of the trails leading northeast to the Torch River through Township 51, Ranges 15-18 (Appendix 3: Figure 5). Again surprisingly, the major trails through Twps 49, directly north of La Corne, are not indicated. The only named trail is the major trail to Torch River which is simply called "Trail from Fort La Corne". These same trails are also on the 1918 Sheet (Appendix 3: Figure 1).



There is little difference between the 1914 and 1918 Sheets (Appendix 3: Figure 6). The same major trails are marked on both. The 1914 Sheet has two named trails. The “Trail from Fort a la Corne”, leading northeast to the Torch River, first appeared on the 1911 map. There is also a network of trails labelled “Trail from Fort a la Corne to Candle Lake”. However, instead of heading northwest towards Birchbark and Candle Lakes, they go directly north.

14.3 Forestry Maps

The three Forestry Maps of 1928, 1931, and 1936 show similar networks of trails through the Forest Reserve. Segments of some of these follow the same routes as those on the Sectional Sheets. Others are new. It is not known which of these “new” trails may have followed traditional trails; which followed old surveyors’ cut-lines; or which were constructed by forestry personnel after 1913.

14.4 Major travel routes

There were four major routes, or rather destinations, which required travel through the Forest Reserve. Although these have changed in importance over time, they appear to have an historical depth. One trail was along the north side of the Saskatchewan River west to the modern Prince Albert area; another led northwest to Birchbark and Candle Lakes, a third led directly north to the Torch River, perhaps even to Fishing Lake in the present Nipawin Provincial Park; and a fourth went northeast, to the lower Whitefox River and on to its junction with the Torch River.

A fifth more recent trail, known as the Division Road, crosses the Forest Reserve from east to west. The eastern portion pre-dates the 1913 Forest Reserve, but it is not clear if it was a traditional route, or if it was a result of DLS activities in the early 1900s.

14.4.1 North shore to Prince Albert

There was once a trail along the north side of the Saskatchewan between La Corne and the Sturgeon River/Prince Albert area. It has never been marked on any maps and its exact route is unknown. There is no documentation that it continued east along the north side of the river. It may have crossed over at La Corne and continued east along the south side.

Of his four trips inland in the 1760s, William Pink twice used this trail which was good enough to travel with horses (Section 5.2.3). In both years Pink’s group was camped opposite the old French post before they began walking inland, far beyond modern Prince Albert:

August 7, 1767 ... this day we proseeded on our journey by Land a Longe
the North Side of this River (HBCA B.239/a/58)

August 6, 1768 ... we prowseeded on Our Jorney by Land (HBCA B.239 /a/61)

The HBC journals from Carlton House I in 1795-97 do not mention any travel by land along the north shore, but they have little of this sort of information. However, in October 1798 Bird stopped there on his way to establish the Setting River post at the mouth of Sturgeon River on the north side of the Saskatchewan River near Prince Albert. While Bird was at Carlton and later at Setting River, he talks about overland travel between the two posts. This route must have been along the north side, otherwise it would have meant leaving Setting River, crossing the North Saskatchewan, the South Saskatchewan, and then the main Saskatchewan to circle around to Carlton I, which itself was on the north side:

Oct 25, 1798: [Bird] set off from Carlton I with one Man & three Horses for the Setting [River] ... In the evening found the men and canoes [sent earlier] a little above the South Branch [Forks]

April 29/99: "Sent two Men by land, down to Carlton House"

May 7/99: [Bird gets word from Carlton of a shortage of powder and shot so he "Sent off two Men & three Horses with the above articles for Carlton House

May 21/99: [Bird leaves by boat downriver for Carlton, three men go with horses by land] (HBCA B.197/a/1).

The trail is not mentioned again for over 50 years. Then, in 1864, Henry Budd made one of his quarterly visits to Fort Carlton and Isbister's newly established settlement at Prince Albert. Again, it is clear he was on the north side of the river and he seems to be following a well-established trail:

May 15/64: [leaves Carlton] "We took some pack horses & no carriage as we were to travel in the woods"

May 16/65: "Arrived at the Isbister's Settlement on the opposite side of the river... Here we had to take our horses across the Kisiskatchewan to be on the side of Carlton House." (CMS Reel A-84. Journal. Nepowewin. July 1, 1864. Henry Budd)

This is the last known mention of the trail. By then, Carlton House III and the newly-established Prince Albert settlement were more conveniently reached from Fort a la Corne by the main trail which crossed the South Saskatchewan both at and above the Forks (Appendix 1: Map 1878, 1882).

14.4.2 Candle Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail

Throughout the last half of the 1800s, the HBC, and to a lesser extent, the Nepowewin Mission had fisheries first at Candle Lake and then at Birchbark Lake (Sections 9.4, 9.5). The Candle Lake fishermen stopped, en route, at Birchbark Lake. Yet none of the known maps show any trail leading directly to the lakes (e.g. Appendix 1: Map 1913, Appendix Three: Figures 1-6).

Instead there is a network of trails, separating and then rejoining, running straight north of La Corne, leading to the Torch River at two crossings about 20 miles below Candle Lake (Appendix 3: Figure 1). On several maps, this is called the Candle Lake Trail. It would have been almost twice as far to reach the Candle Lake by this route, which does not go near Birchbark Lake. It is not clear why the surveyors omitted the more direct trail northwest to Candle Lake, but since the fisheries were abandoned in the 1890s, perhaps the direct trail was no longer recognizable. However, the “Candle Lake - La Corne Trail” was probably a traditional route to the middle Torch River area.

14.4.3 Torch River - Fort a la Corne Trail

Almost immediately north of the Saskatchewan River crossing, the main trail splits into two (Appendix Three: Figures 1, 6). The several branch trails forming the western branch were known as the Candle Lake Trail mentioned above. The other branch runs almost directly 15 miles northeast to the Whitefox River, then follows it east for about 8 miles when it branches. One trail heads 13 miles northeast overland to the Torch River. The other trail continues along the Whitefox River, apparently to the junction with the Torch (Appendix Three: Figure 1). This segment of the trail along the Whitefox is also labelled the Cumberland House - La Corne Trail on several maps.

About a mile past English Creek a branch leaves from the main trail and runs nine miles northwest to join the Candle Lake Trail, very close to Whitefox Cabin. About four miles from English Creek, another branch splits off and runs almost due east: this is the eastern portion of the Division Road (Appendix Three: Figure 1).

The southern portion of the Torch River Trail, through township 50, is drawn on the 1908 Sectional Map. There appear to be several trails marked on the township boundaries further to the northeast, but these are indistinct (Appendix Three: Figure 4). However, the complete trail complex appears on the 1911 Sectional Map where it remains unchanged in both the 1914 and 1918 maps.

It is highly likely that the Torch-La Corne Trail is a traditional route. This is especially true for the portion following the Whitefox River to the east: the Cumberland Trail.

14.4.4 Fishing Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail

There is a possibility of an early trail from La Corne north all the way to the Fishing Lakes, in present Nipawin Provincial Park, some 90 km north of La Corne. If so, this would indicate a rather wide range for the La Corne people. There are several entries in the Fort a la Corne journals from the early 1890s concerning people going to Fishing Lake. However, there was a HBC outpost at another Fishing Lake, south of Melfort. It is difficult to determine if some of the Fishing Lake entries might refer to the northern lake, instead of to the outpost.



The Sectional Sheets show a trail branching from the “Candle Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail” leading north from the Torch River towards Fishing Lake. The trail also leads southwest, almost in a straight line, towards Prince Albert (Appendix 3: Figure 1). This southwesterly portion of the trail is following the old cut-line made for the proposed Hudson Bay and Pacific Railway in 1910 (Christie SAB R 183.I.113, September 25, 1915). The line had been cleared for “150 miles in a direct line towards Churchill” before the project was abandoned (Abrams 1966:17).

It is not clear if the segment of the railway cut-line north of the Torch River followed a pre-existing trail from Fort a la Corne to the Fishing Lake area, or whether the La Corne trail developed after the line was cleared in 1910.

In 1912, W Robinson surveyed the 15th Baseline which crosses the north end of Candle Lake. He mentions that in Sect 35, Rge 18 Twp 56 , the Baseline crossed the cutline of the proposed railway:

the located line of the Hudson Bay Pacific railway, which commences at Prince Albert [which] follows a well-defined ridge ... At present the only means of access is by a wagon road leading from Fort a la Corne. This road crosses the Base line in section 33, range 18 [Twp 56], and passes south through a rolling sand-ridge country.... (Robinson 1913:135-38).

Similarly, Martindale, who surveyed the 16th baseline in the winter of 1913/14, noticed the same wagon road from Fort a la Corne:

The Hudson Bay Pacific railway trail runs northeasterly from Prince Albert crossing the fourteenth base line in range 21, the fifteenth in range 18 and the sixteenth in range 16. The end of the trail is reported to be about fifteen miles northeasterly from its crossing of the sixteenth base line. This road has practically been never used, except by a few trappers, since it was cut ... It is joined a few miles north of Torch river by a road from Fort a la Corne (Martindale 1915:144).

These references can be read to mean that there was a pre-existing trail to Fishing Lake before the railway line was cut in 1910. If so, this would mean added utilization of the Candle Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail by people travelling from La Corne into the north.

14.4.5 Division Road Trail

The Division Road which crosses the entire Forest Reserve from west to east was probably named after the “Division Telephone Line” which paralleled it. It was the main forestry road with Elk Tower at the west end and the Twin Lakes, English Creek, and Poplar Creek Cabins along the way east.

The Annual Forestry Reports in the 1910s mention road-making in the La Corne Reserve but there is no indication as to where these were (Section 13.3). The entire Division Road appears to have been cut out by 1916:



I have found out from the forestry branch of the Dept. of the Interior that there is a wagon trail in good condition running from Prince Albert down through the Fort a la Corne forest reserve on the north side of the Saskatchewan River. This trail has been recently corduroyed and fixed up for forest patrol purposes. (SAB R.183 I.373 W. H. Norrish, DLS Letter report. Ravine Bank P. O., September 8, 1916).

The east portion of the road branched off from the main Torch River - Fort a la Corne Trail at English Creek. It pre-dated the forestry activities, since it first appears on the 1908 Sectional Map, where it runs east only to the centre of 50-16 where it strikes due south to the Saskatchewan River. On the 1911, 1914, and 1918 maps the jog to the south is absent and the road continues east into 50-15 (Appendix 3).

It is not known if this was originally a traditional trail or not. All other trails run north/south to connect drainages, except those following along the Whitefox River. It seems quite possible that this eastern part of the trail was actually cut by the first DLS workers in the area. Especially when it is shown as ending at the jog south to the Saskatchewan River.

The western portion of the Division Road, west of English Creek, does not appear on any Sectional Maps. It was likely built after 1913 to give the foresters access to the interior of the Forest Reserve.

15.0 Summary

There is almost no historical documentation of the portion of the Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve lying between the Saskatchewan and the Whitefox Rivers. There are few first-hand descriptions by people travelling within the area until the early 1900s. However, the Fort a la Corne area, the 16 km stretch along the Saskatchewan River valley, is one of the richest historical resources areas in Saskatchewan. Historical accounts show that it has been the focus for the local Cree for at least the last 250 years. The presence of Europeans through this period has been sporadic. Nevertheless, La Corne contains, among others, the sites for the furthest west French trading post, the habitation of the earliest settler in Saskatchewan, and the furthest west mission which was also established by the first Cree missionary.

At least ten fur trade posts were built along the Saskatchewan River, all within the valley walls. Only one, Fort Maranquin, at the Forks, lies within the Forest Reserve boundary. The records concerning these posts, as well as the neighbouring HBC's Cumberland and Carlton House III, were examined for information concerning the Forest Reserve area. Information was also sought from the publications and maps produced by the people who travelled along the Saskatchewan in the 1700s and 1800s. There are also the reports and files from the Dominion Land Survey workers who determined the township outlines in the early 1900s.



Most of the information concerning the area within the Forest Reserve comes from the series of daily journals written after 1850 by the HBC at its Fort a la Corne I and II Posts and the Church Missionary Society Mission at Nepowewin on the north side of the river. These indicate that people were using main travel routes through the Forest Reserve. There are numerous mentions of Cree hunters but the location of their camps in the bush is rarely indicated, although some can be specifically located on the Whitefox and Torch Rivers and at Candle and Birchbark Lakes. Employees from both the post and the mission regularly traversed the Reserve to reach their annual winter fisheries at Candle and Birchbark Lakes.

Within the Forest Reserve, there were two major trail systems leading north from La Corne: the Candle Lake and Torch River Trails. Of these trails, the area of greatest site potential appears to be the Torch River Trail crossing at English Creek. This was an important trail junction even before the Forest Reserve was established. It may well be that the traditional trail originally followed the creek valley down to the Saskatchewan River, rather than continuing south overland to La Corne.

There is very little documentation of the individual forestry cabins and fire lookout towers that were built after the Forest Reserve was established in 1913. However, the specific locations of almost all of them are known from the research carried out by Hartwell in 2001 (although several locations seem problematic). Each of these sites should be considered important since they are nearly 90 years old.

There are some portions of the old trails shown on the Sectional Sheets which apparently have been bypassed by forestry road-building and may be relatively undisturbed (Appendix Three: Figure 2). These should be examined if impacts were to take place along them, especially if there are adjacent drainages or features of high geographic relief.

The Fort a la Corne Forest Area: a Survey of the Historical Documents

Appendix 1: Figures & Maps

*Prepared For
Shore Gold*

*Prepared By
Amanda Boechler &
Dale Russell*

Western Heritage Services, Inc

322 Duchess Street

Saskatoon, SK S7K 0R1

tel: 306-975-3860 ext.304

fax: 306-934-2572



August 2007

Table of Contents

Figure 1: The Fort a la Corne Provincial Forest, 1966 (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa).....	1
Figure 2: Core areas of Aboriginal Groups in the fur trade period (from Meyer and Russell 2006: 307).....	2
Figure 3: Cree place names in the La Corne area. Ingathering centres are marked in red. (Map courtesy of David Meyer, from Thomas Whitehead and others).....	3
Figure 4: Fur trade posts on the Saskatchewan River, 1768 - 1850 (from Klimko 1982: 121, Fig. 6).....	4
Figure 5: A S Morton's sketch map of trading posts in the La Corne area (SAB A 32 A.I.VIII: 203).....	5
Figure 6: J. B. Tyrrell's sketch map of trading posts in the La Corne area, ca. 1933 (Tyrrell 1934: endmaps).....	6
Figure 7: Skethes of Nepowewin Mission and Fort a La Corne by Hind, August 1858 & of Nepowewin Mission by Smith, October 1865 (Hind 1971 Vol 1:399; Church Missionary Intelligencer. n.s. Vol III May 1867:105).1865.....	7
Figure 8: Butler at Forks - Butler's sketches of the Forks in 1871 and of his winter cabin in 1872/3 (Butler 1968a:329, 1968b:43).....	8
Figure 9: Sample entries from the HBC's Fort a la Corne journals.....	9
Figure 10: Forest Service workers in Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve used a truck and car in their work, ca 1920 (SAB R-A9670).....	10
Map 1773: "A plan of part of Hudson's Bay and rivers communicationg with the principal	



settlements.” Andrew Graham. 1768-1770 [1773] (Warkentin and Ruggles 1970:95).	11
Map 1786: Peter Pond’s three maps showing his post at Sturgeon River and the Forks area in the mid-1770s (Wagner 1955).	12
Map 1801: “A Map of North America ...” Sir Alexander Mackenzie’s map of his travels to the Arctic and Pacific in 1789 and 1793, to 1801 (Mackenzie 1971).	13
Map 1814: David Thompson’s map of central Saskatchewan (Coues 1965: endmap).	14
Map 1815: “Sketch of Carlton District by Jas. Bird.” Undated [1815] (HBC Archives. G.1/27).	15
Map 1816: Peter Fidler’s map of Rupert’s Land, 1792-1816 (U. of Sask. Shortt Library: MSS C500/2/4.3)	16
Map 1820: “Route of the Expedition from York Factory to Cumberland House and the summer & winter tracks from thence to Isle a la Crosse in 1819 &1820” (Franklin 1970: End-map). Reprint ed, Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle.	17
Map 1824: The Forks area with the adjoining HBC fur trading districts. From the Arrow-smith map of 1824, corrected to 1833 (Simpson 1968: endmap).	18
Map 1858a: Palliser’s map of the west 1857-60 with his travel routes (Palliser 1968: end-map).	19
Map 1858b: Map to illustrate a narrative of the Canadian ... Assiniboine & Saskatchewan exploring expedition of 1858 (Hind 1970: 9).	20
Map 1873a: Sketch Survey of the Saskatchewan River from Rocky Mountain House to Cumberland Lake to Illustrate the Report of Mr. Alfred R C Selwyn. 1873 (SAB B 70/1)..	21



Map 1873b: “Plan of the Hon. Hudson’s Bay Co.’s Reserve at Fort a la Corne” (Nov 25, 1873). W S Gore, DLS. Ottawa 1874 (SAB Regina A 468).....	22
Map 1878: NWT. Sketch Map of Saskatchewan Valley Prince Albert to Fort a la Corne. A. L. Russell, DLS. 21 Oct. 1878 (SAB Regina A 463).....	23
Map 1882: Map of Prince Albert District, undated [predates 1882]. H D . Ellis file, 1882/84 (SAB R 183.I.170).....	24
Map 1883: Plan of Township No. 49, Range 20, West of Second Meridian. 1883. [East half of plan] (SAB A 12 #49). (trails emphasized).....	25
Map 1884: “Map of the Saskatchewan River from the Forks to Lake Winnipeg ... Otto Klotz, 1884” (Klotz 1885:21).	26
Map 1885: “Plan. Indian Reserve, Chief James Smith, at Fort a la Corne...” March 19th, 1885. (National Map Collection 1981:66). Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services Canada.....	27
Map 1888a: “Map Shewing Mounted Police Stations & Patrols 1888” (Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. 1973)	28
Map 1888b: Plan of Township No. 48, Range 20, West of Second Meridian.[NE portion] (SAB A 12 #48 1888).....	29
Map 1901: La Corne area pre-1901. Undated, untitled segment from a Dept of the Interior map. P. R. A. Belanger file (SAB R 183.I.025). [Trails emphasized. Note that the northern lakes are misplaced many miles to the east]	30
Map 1909a: Hudson’s Bay Company Reserve, Fort a la Corne. Thos Fawcett, DLS. “Copied by A. S.” Fort a la Corne Post Journal, August 1909 (HBCA B.2/a/10 fo 59).	31



Map 1909b: Numbers of vacant quarter sections. Prince Albert Land District. 1909. Department of the Interior (SAB A 16/2). [trails emphasized].....	32
Map 1913: Nelson and Churchill rivers, Saskatchewan and Manitoba (McInness 1913: End-map). [trails emphasized].....	33
Map 1913/19: J A Cote's Map of Summer and Winter Routes from Prince Albert to Beaver Lake Mining Area. n.d. (SAB A 26/83). [ca. 1913-19; Trails emphasized].....	34
Map 1915a: Saskatchewan. Map Showing Disposition of Lands to January 1st, 1915 (SAB B 12/4).	35
Map 1915b: The last great field mapping of the Saskatchewan River. A portion of Voligny's survey, 1910-1915 (Voligny 1917).....	36
Map 1923: Map of District Northeast of Prince Albert. Classification of lands by quarter-sections for settlement purposes 1923, corrected to 1922. Department of the Interior (SAB A 13/5). [trails emphasized].....	37
Map 1939: The Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve. Fire Protection Map, Prince Albert District. Plan F 509. 1939 (SAB B 1/5).	38

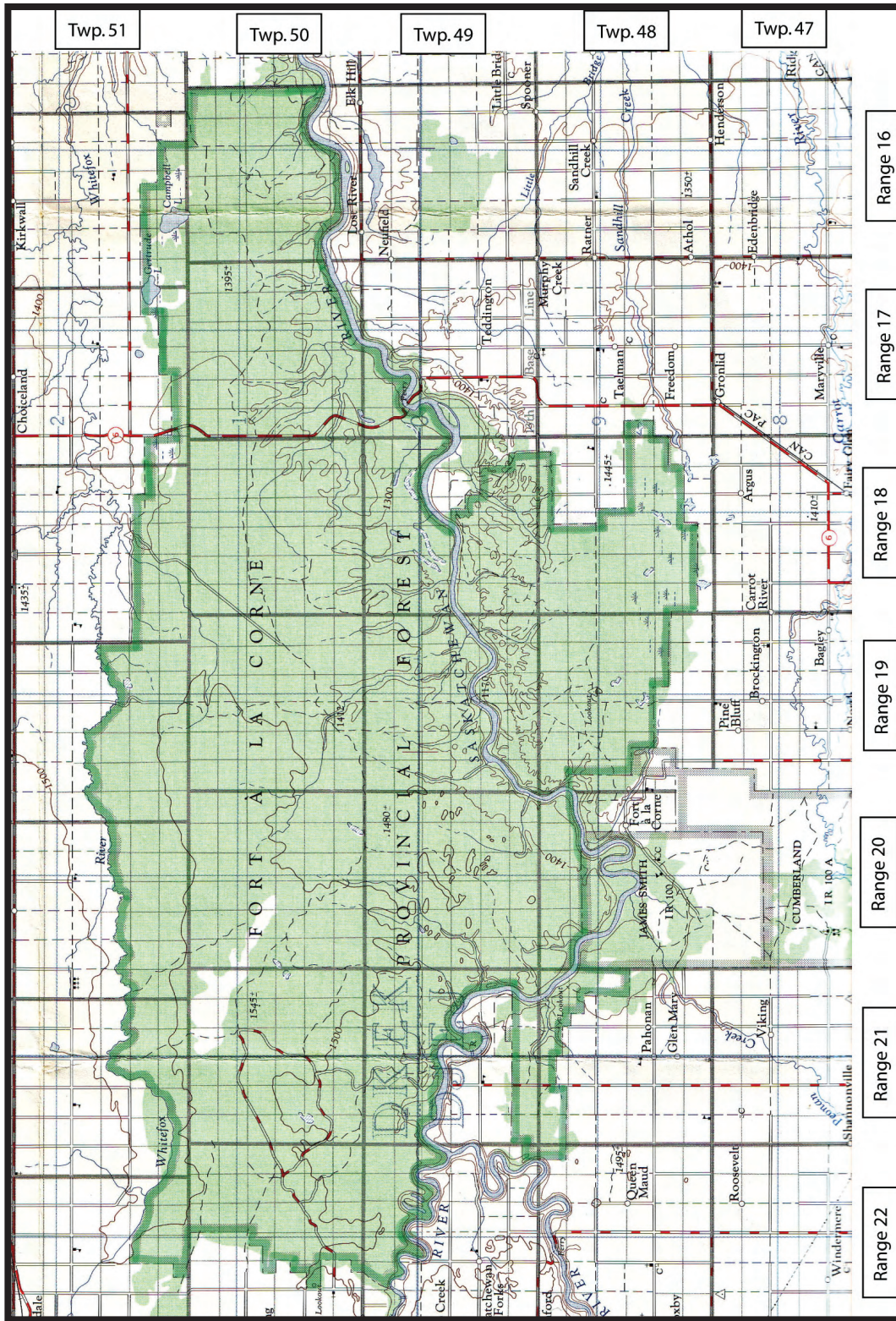
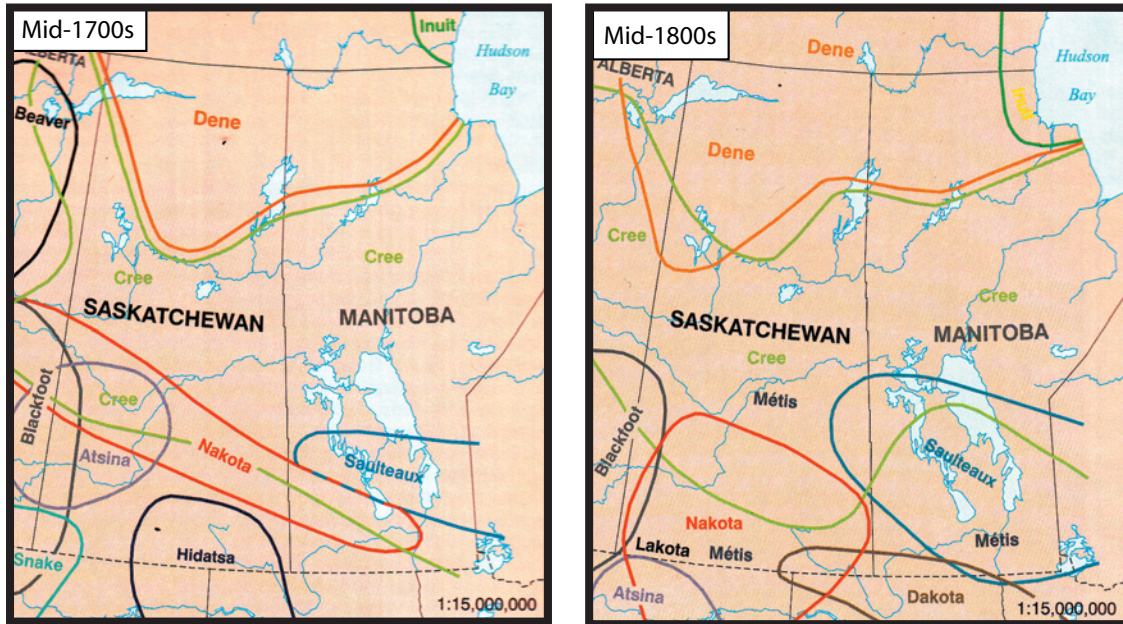
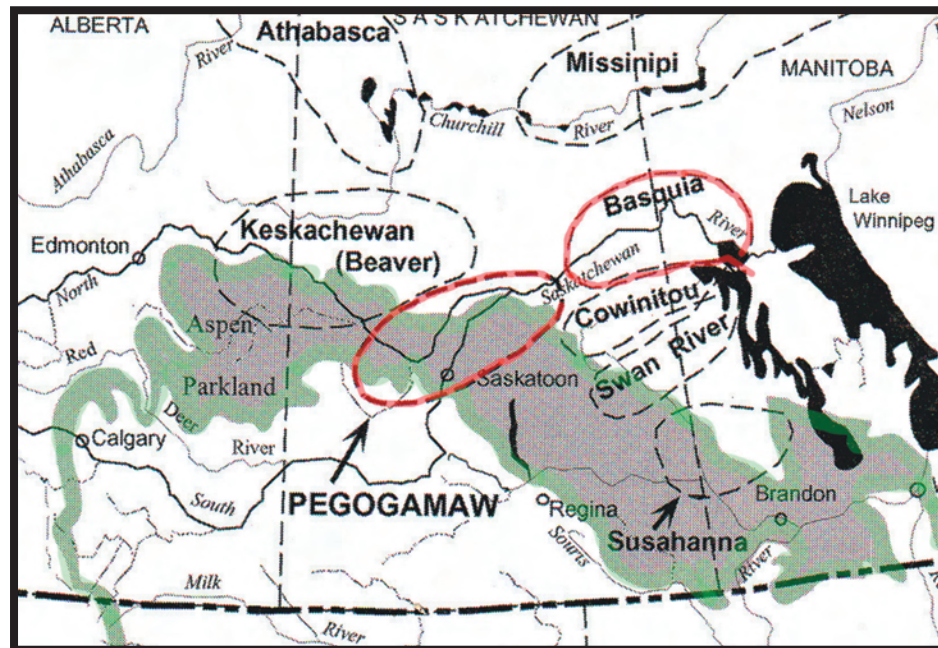


Figure 1: The Fort a la Corne Provincial Forest, 1966 (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa).

Core areas of Aboriginal groups in the fur trade period



Territorial changes of western groups, 1700s - 1800s (from Russell and Meyer (Fung 1999:21).



Cree groups before the Small Pox Epidemic of 1781 (Meyer and Russell 2006:307)

Figure 2: Core areas of Aboriginal Groups in the fur trade period (from Meyer and Russell 2006: 307).



Figure 3: Cree place names in the La Corne area. Ingathering centres are marked in red. (Map courtesy of David Meyer, based on information from Thomas Whitehead and others).

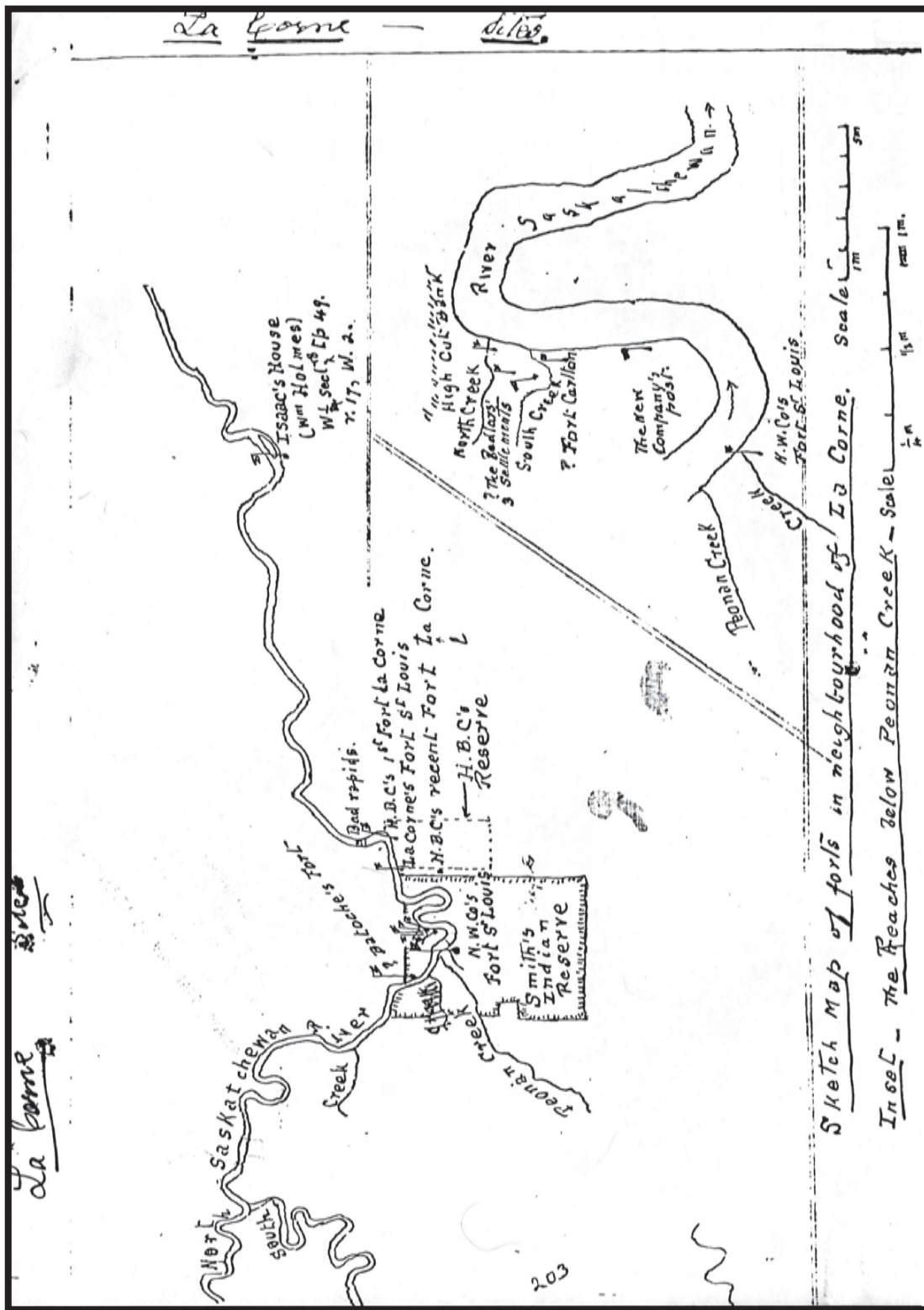


Figure 5: A S Morton's sketch map of trading posts in the La Corne area (SAB A 32 A.I.VIII: 203).

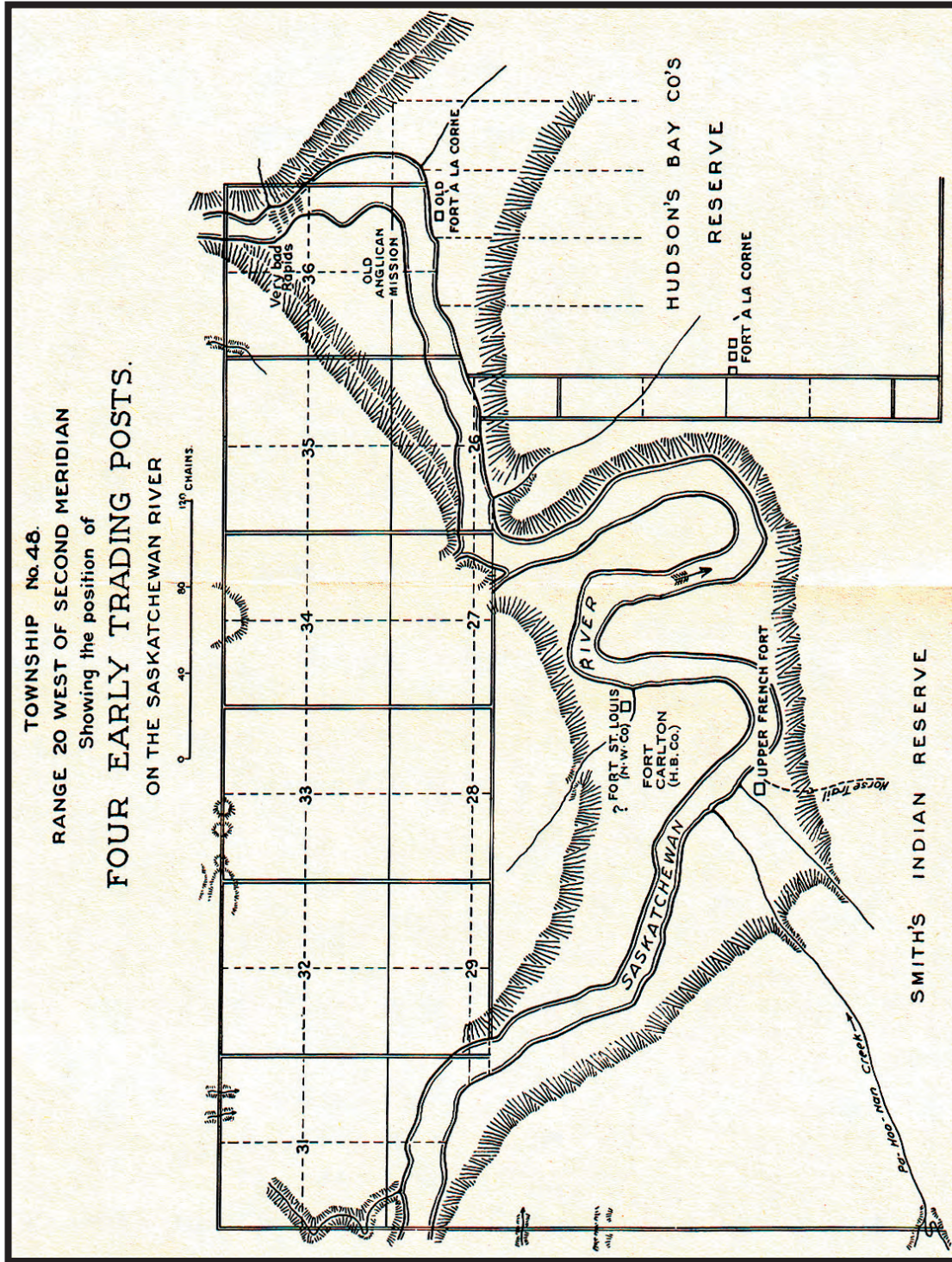
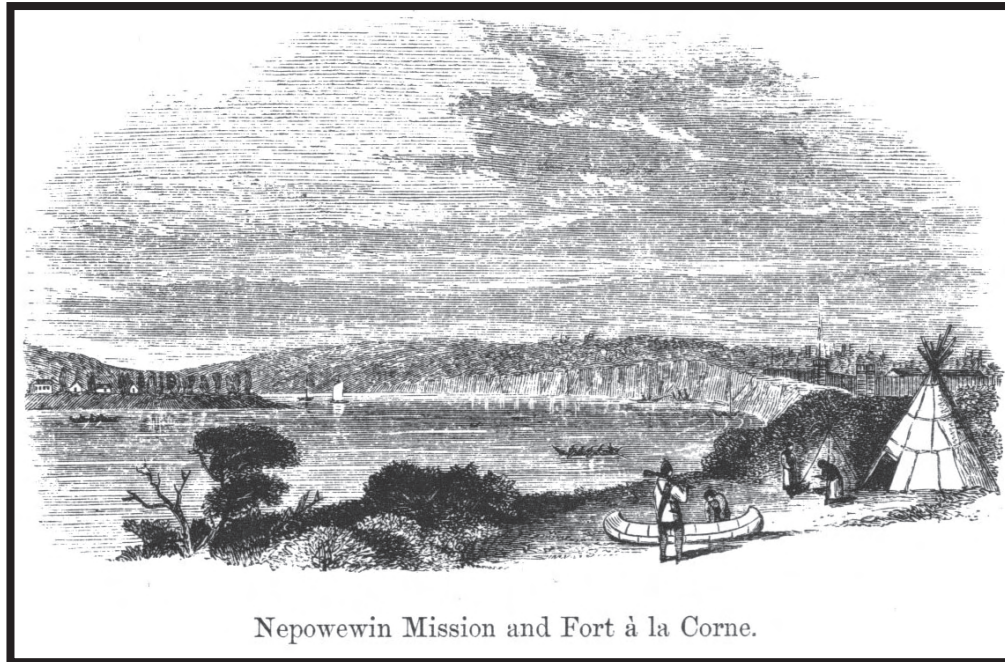


Figure 6: J. B. Tyrrell's sketch map of trading posts in the La Corne area, ca. 1933 (Tyrrell 1934: endmaps).



Nepowewin Mission and Fort à la Corne.

Nipowewin Mission and Fort a la Corne, August 1858 (Hind 1971 Vol. 1:399)



Nepowewin Mission. Sketch by Rev. T T Smith, October 30, 1865 (Church Missionary Intelligencer. n.s. Vol III May 1867:105).

Figure 7: Sketches of Nepowewin Mission and Fort a La Corne by Hind, August 1858 & of Nepowewin Mission by Smith, October 1865 (Hind 1971 Vol 1:399; Church Missionary Intelligencer. n.s. Vol III May 1867:105).1865

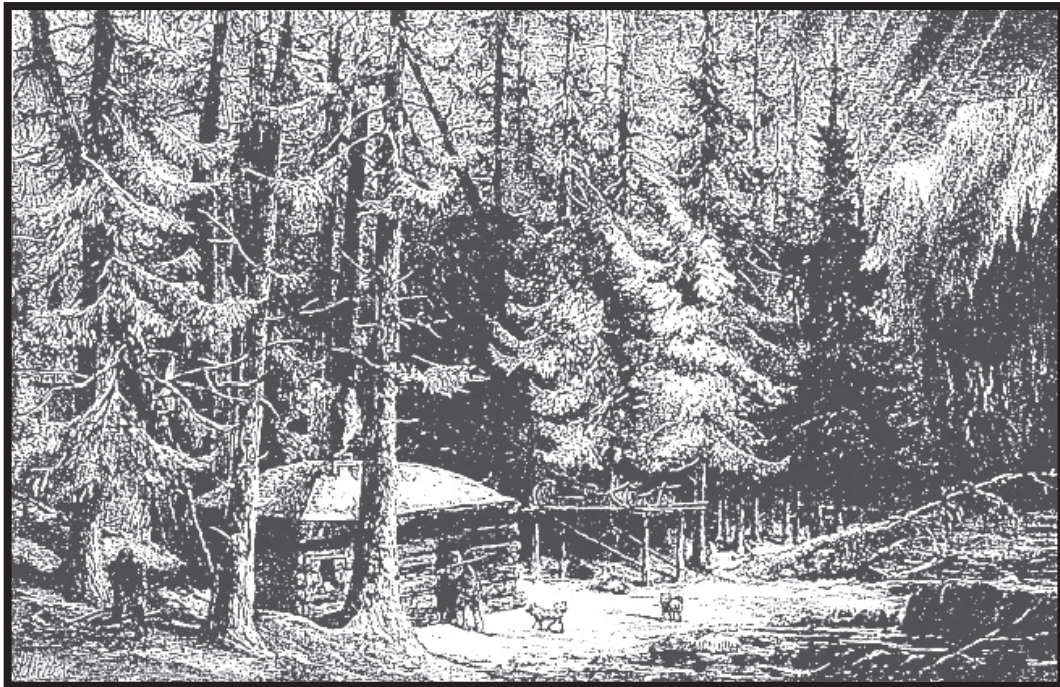


Figure 8: Butler at Forks - Butler's sketches of the Forks in 1871 and of his winter cabin in 1872/3 (Butler 1968a:329, 1968b:43).

Saturday 19th Duncan & Anton Braiwaker started
 Duncan & Anton Braiwaker started for the move woods for the intrusion. The
 Anton Braiwaker the move woods with the company
 for tomorrow? Since S.P. Wilson started for his Williams this
 S.P. Wilson coming with a train of logs going by Packer
 station for land & house.

21. a fine fire on 13 pulled on a prairie
 to employ on the same day
 sent John Sumner to Lark to the Indians

Sunday	19	fine day, returned to the Bow & Mackay. Small street camp
Monday	20	at the first (behind) staffs some Smith & pig with some powder shot & roughing fine day started and camped at the top which below before

Figure 9: Sample entries from the HBC's Fort a la Corne journals.

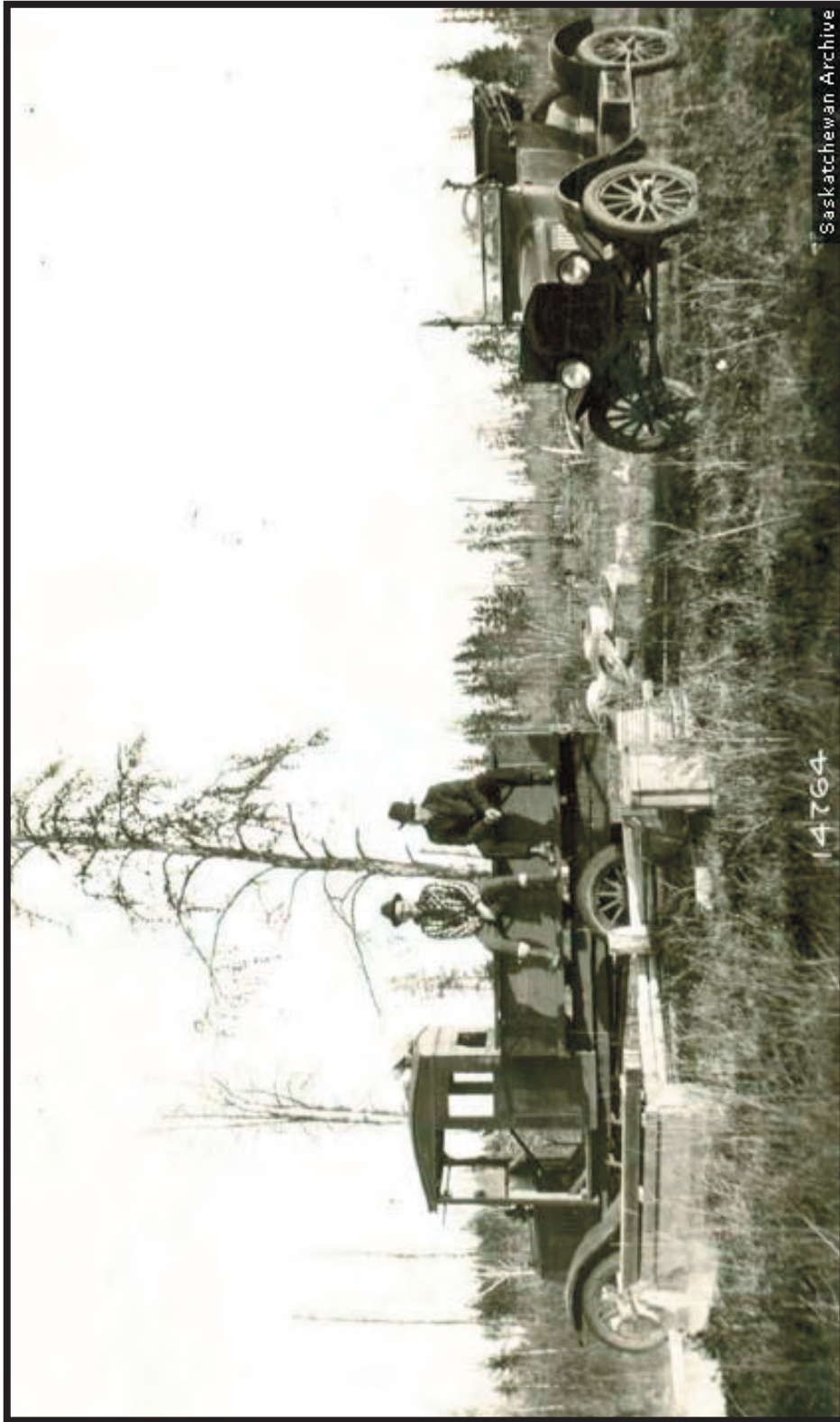
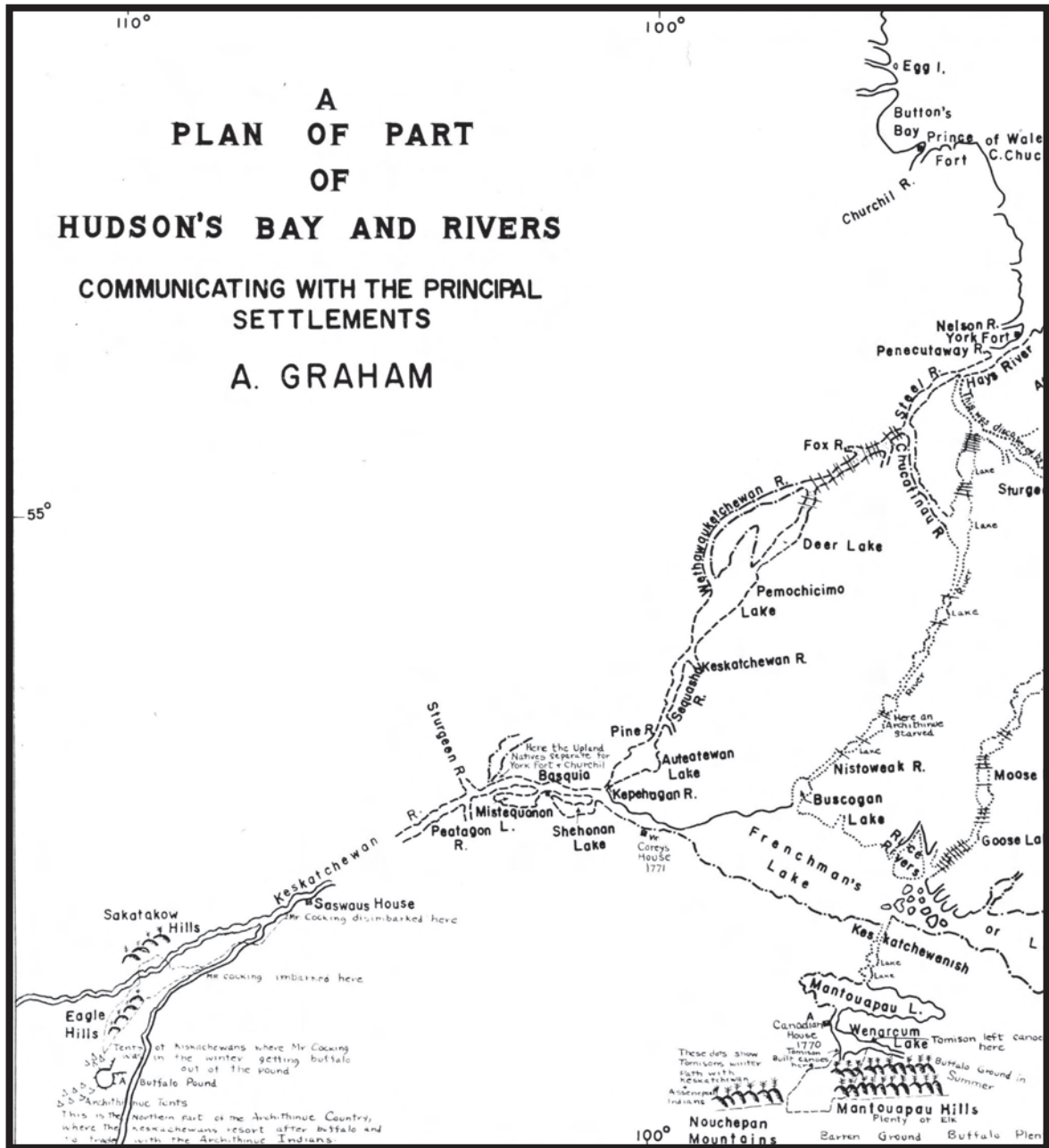


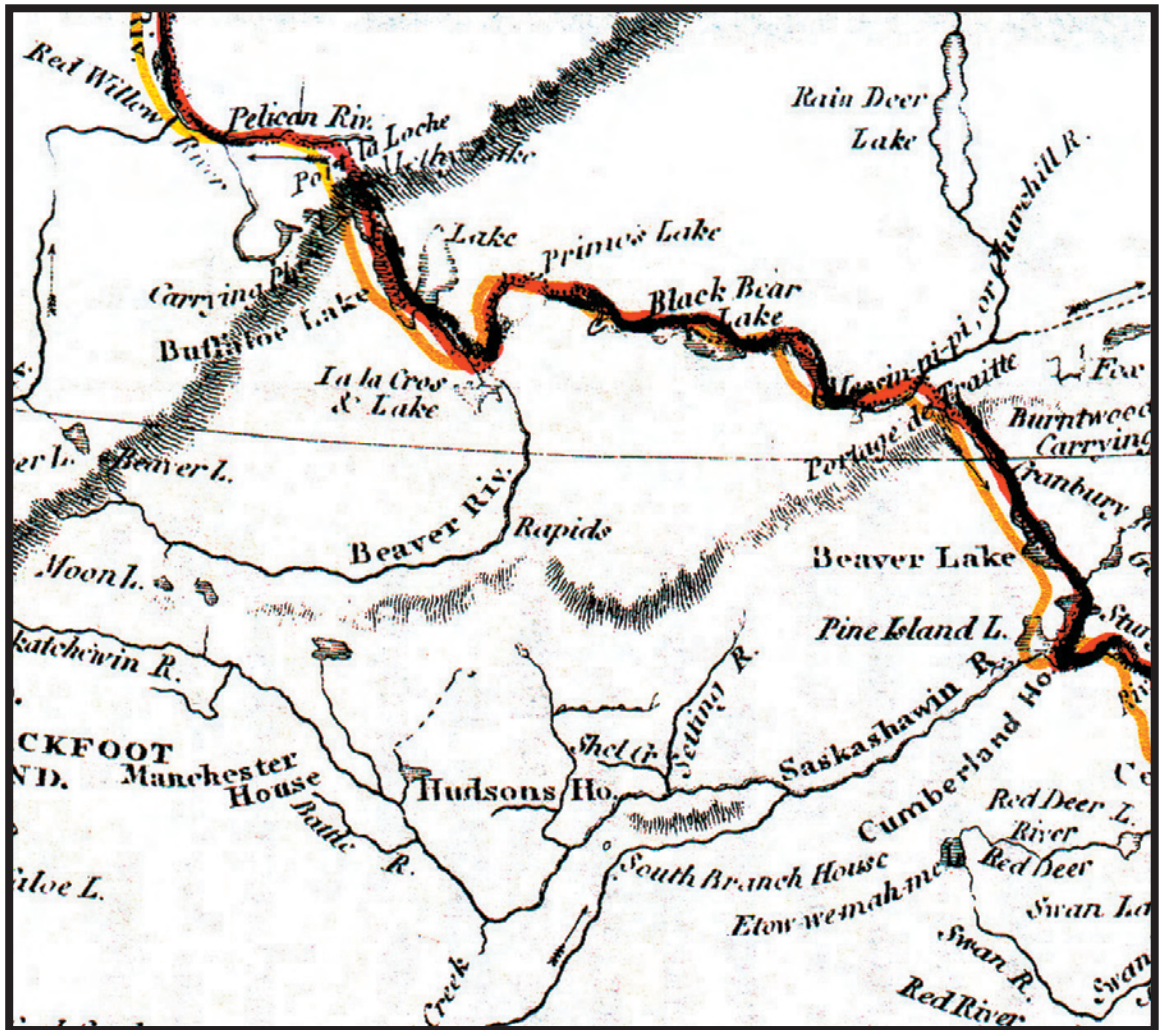
Figure 10: Forest Service workers in Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve used a truck and car in their work, ca 1920 (SAB R-A9670)



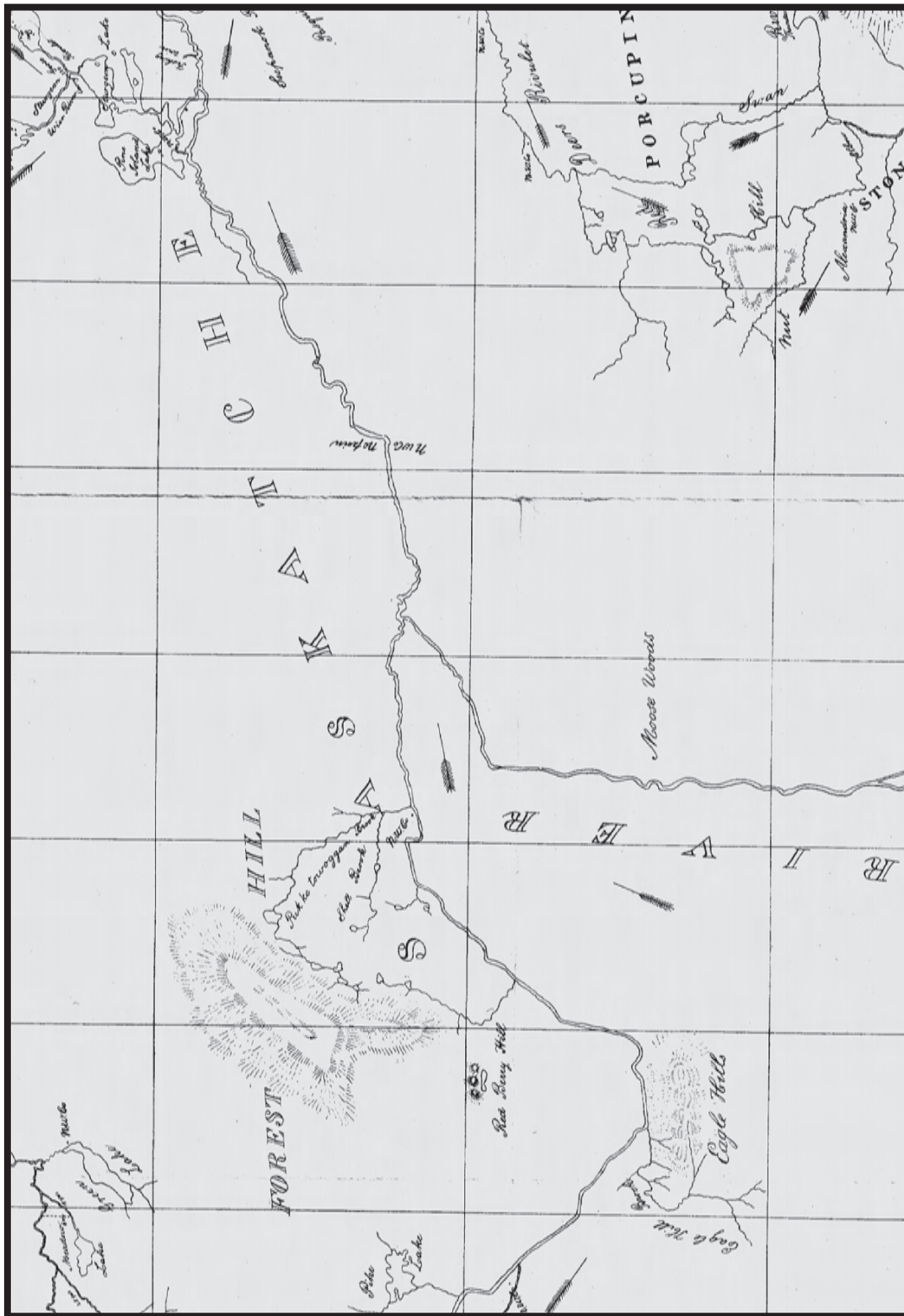
Map 1773: "A plan of part of Hudson's Bay and rivers communicating with the principal settlements." Andrew Graham. 1768-1770 [1773] (Warkentin and Ruggles 1970:95).



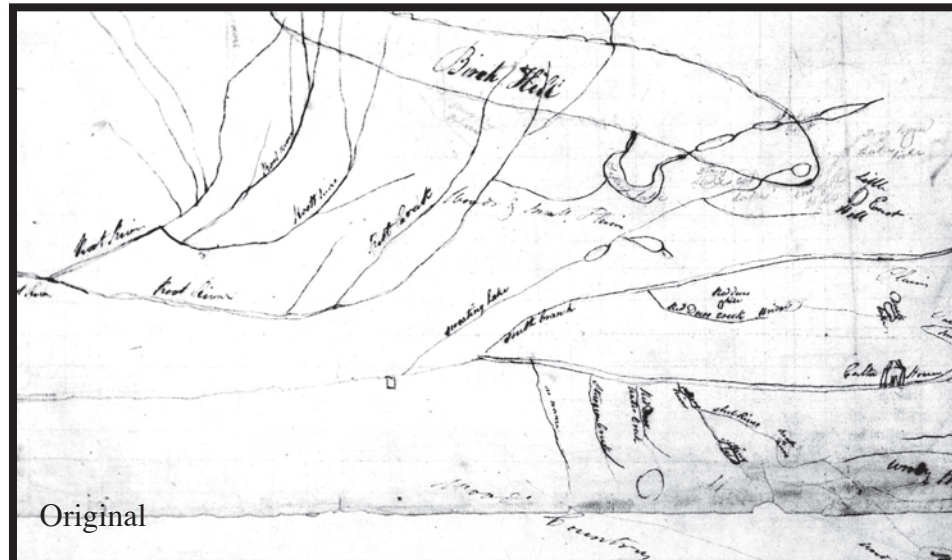
Map 1786: Peter Pond's three maps showing his post at Sturgeon River and the Forks area in the mid-1770s (Wagner 1955).



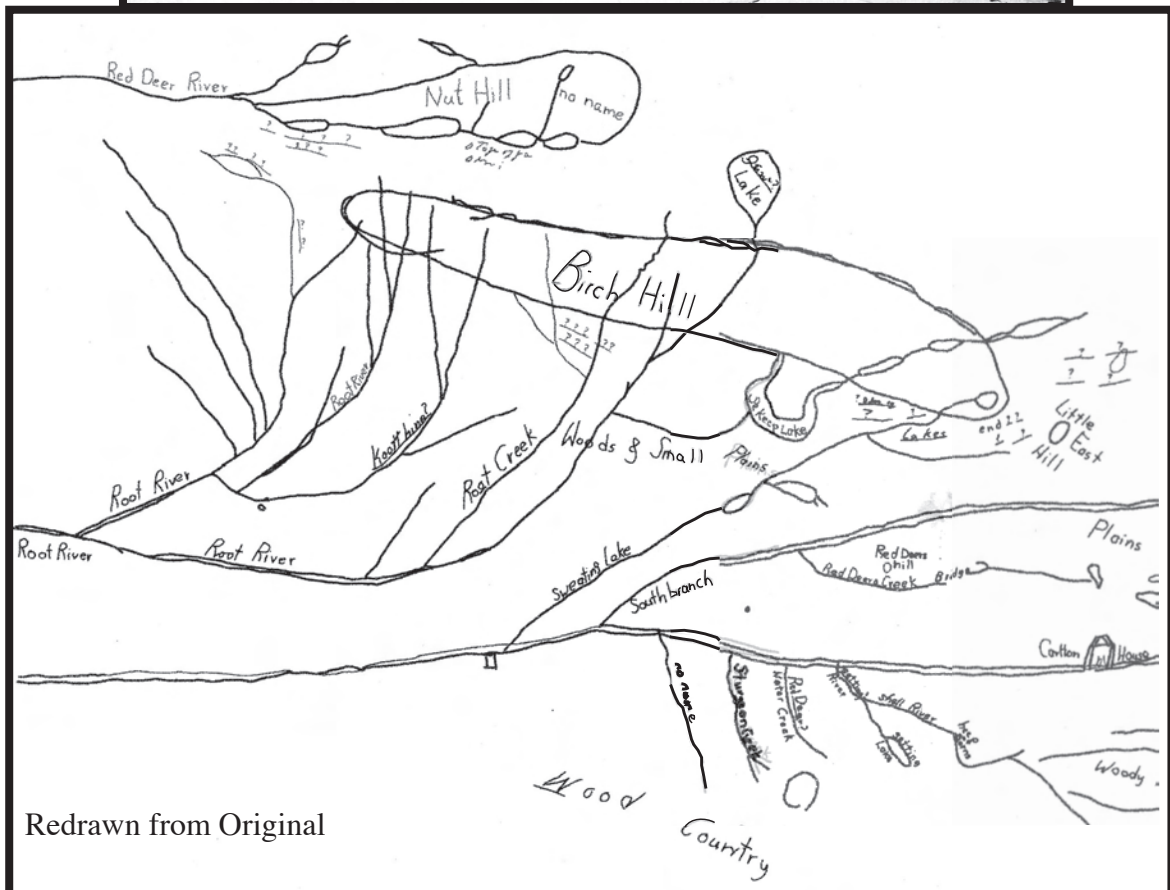
Map 1801: “A Map of North America ...” Sir Alexander Mackenzie’s map of his travels to the Arctic and Pacific in 1789 and 1793, based on information to 1801 (Mackenzie 1971).



Map 1814: David Thompson's map of central Saskatchewan (Coues 1965: endmap).

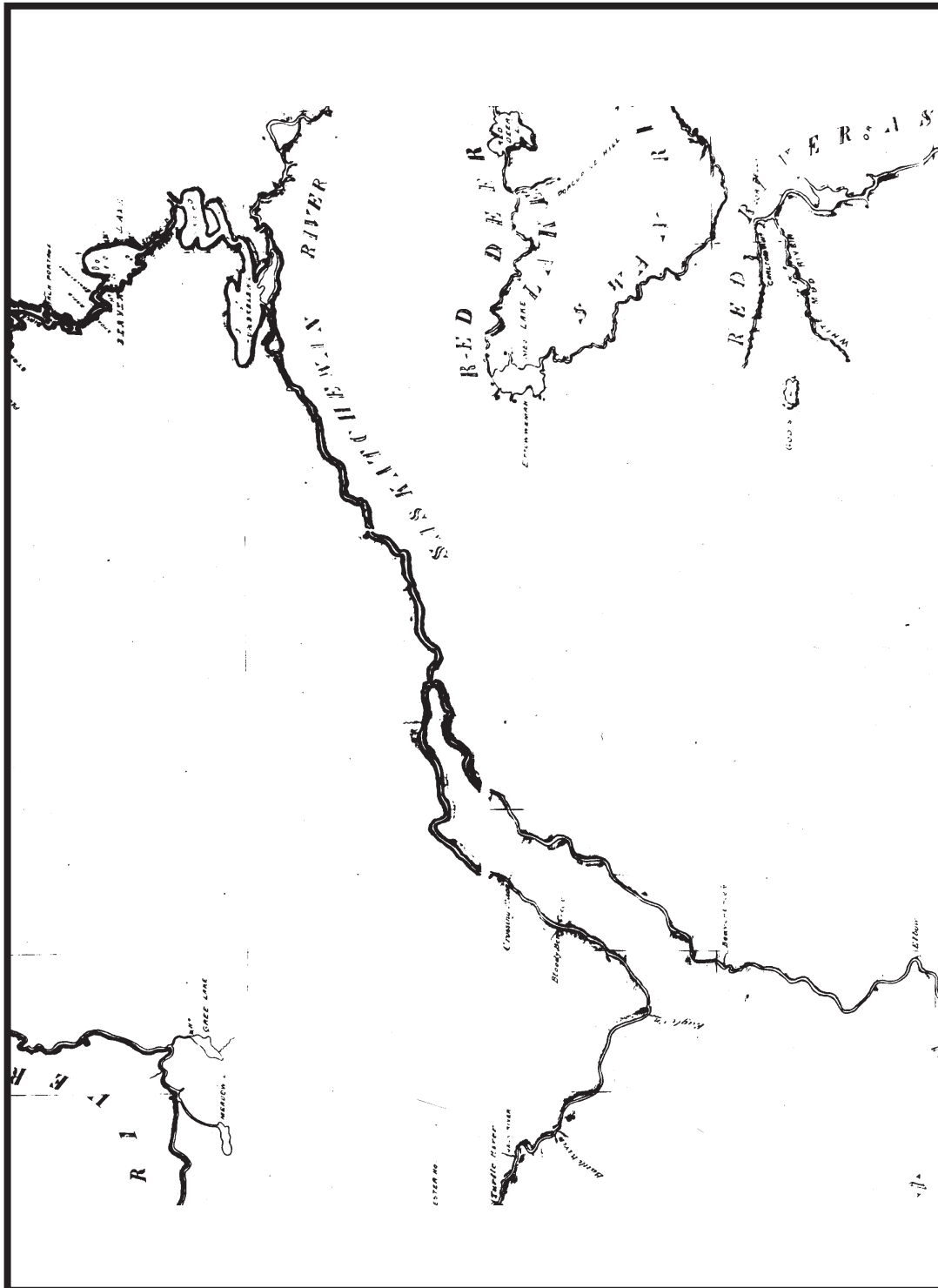


Original

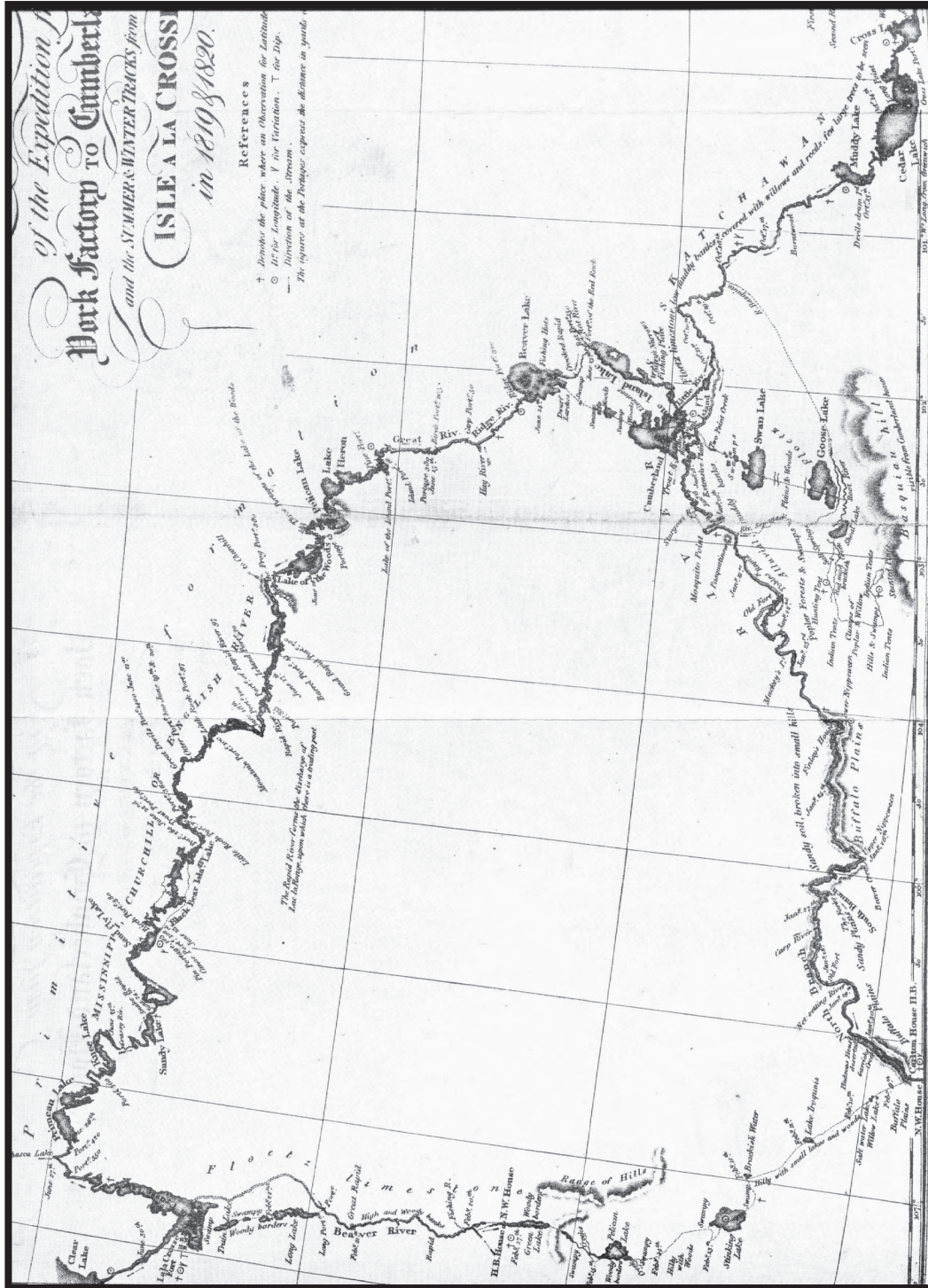


Redrawn from Original

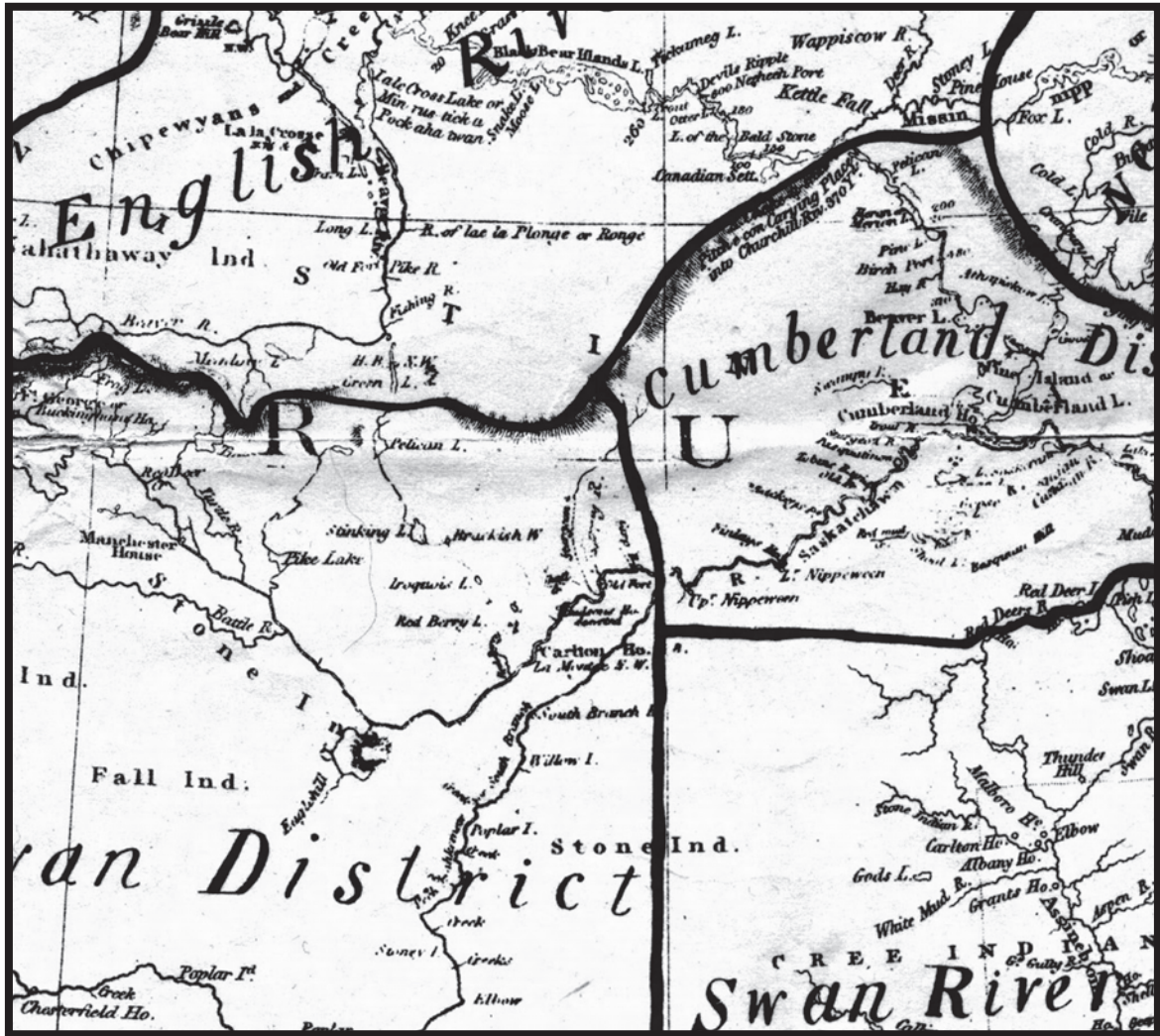
Map 1815: "Sketch of Carlton District by Jas. Bird." Undated [1815] (HBC Archives. G.1/27).



Map 1816: Peter Fidler's map of Rupert's Land, 1792-1816 (U. of Sask. Shortt Library: MSS C500/2/4.3)



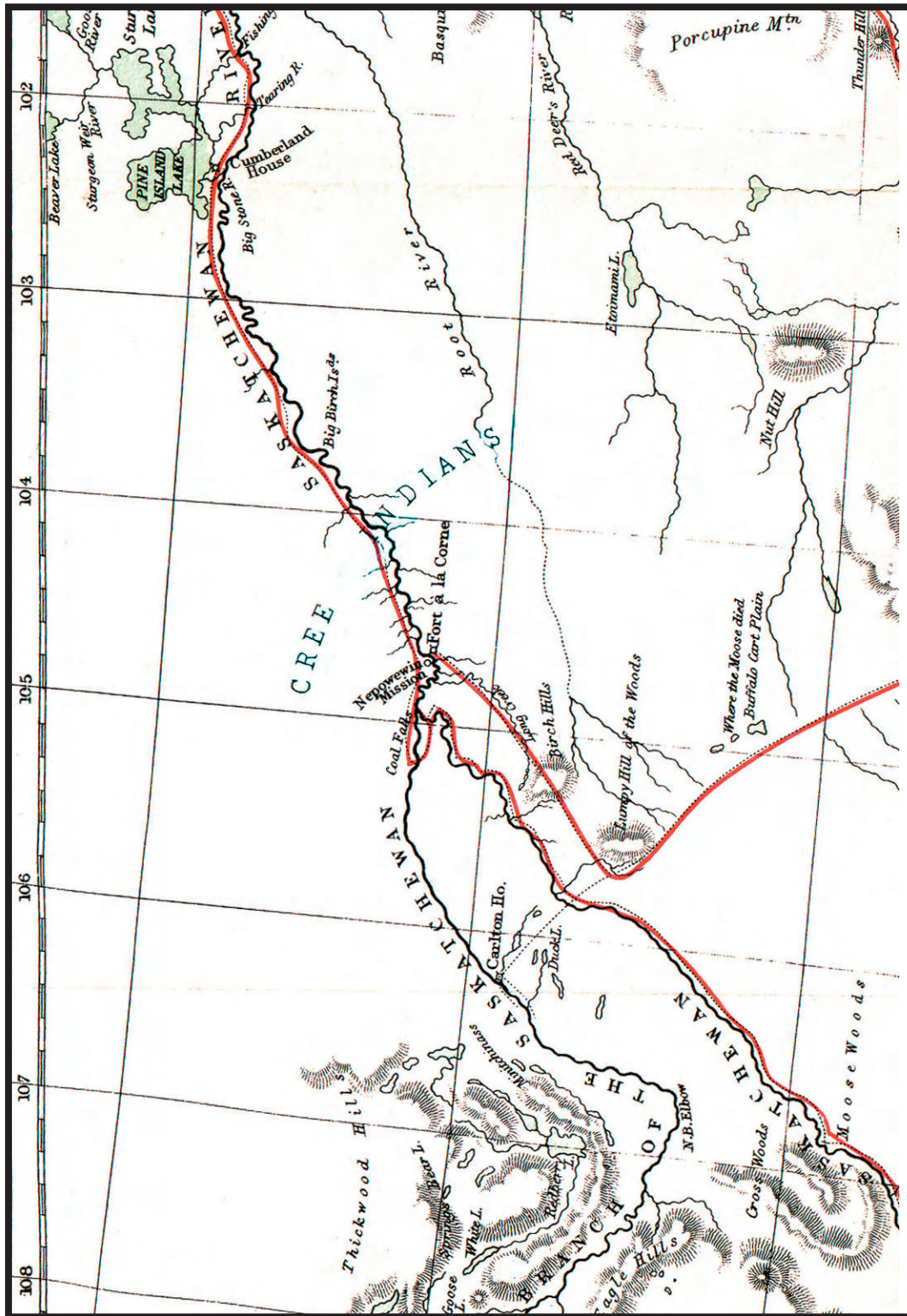
Map 1820: "Route of the Expedition from York Factory to Cumberland House and the summer & winter tracks from thence to Isle a la Crosse in 1819 & 1820" (Franklin 1970: Endmap). Reprint ed, Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle.



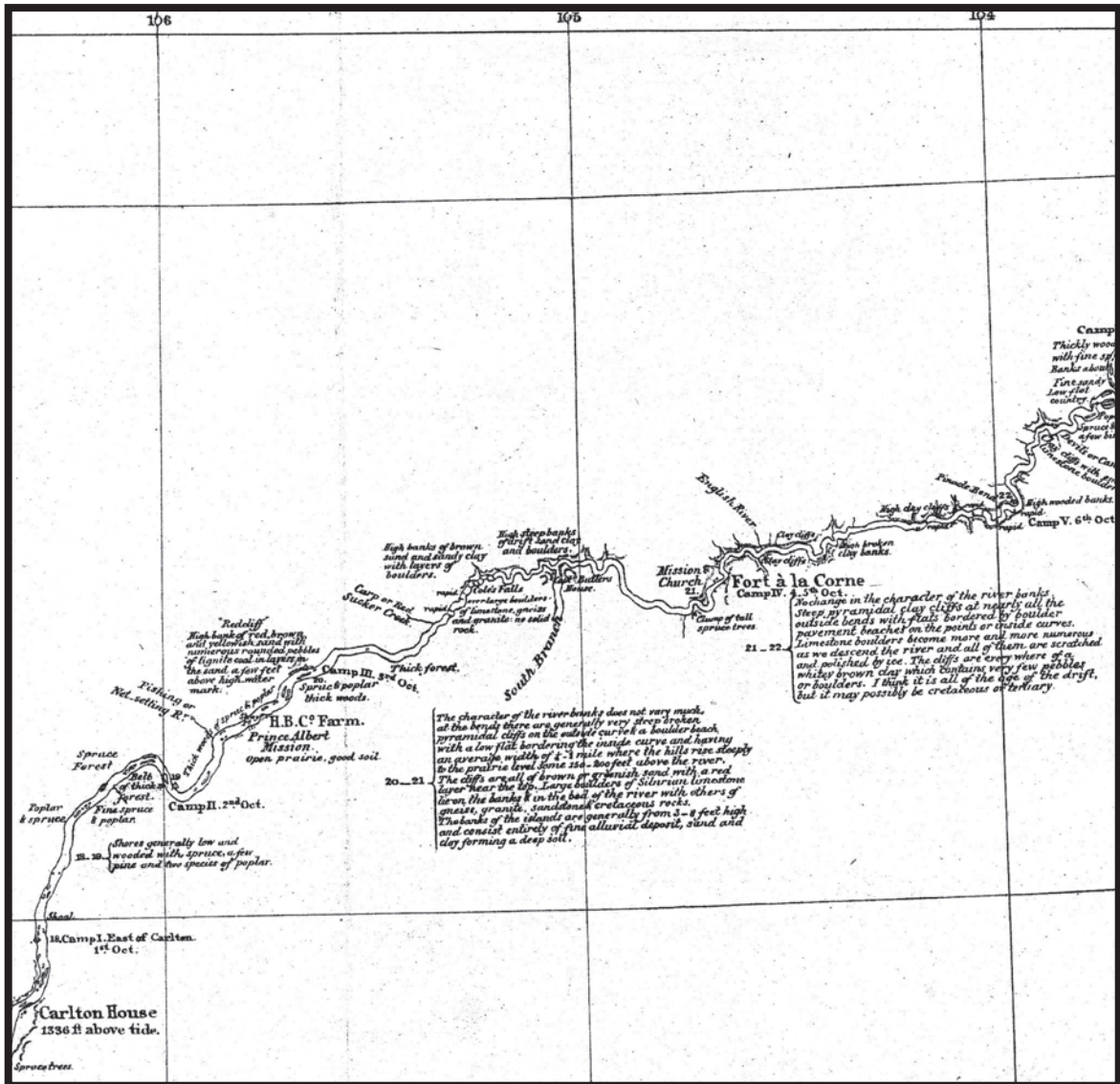
Map 1824: The Forks area with the adjoining HBC fur trading districts. From the Arrowsmith map of 1824, corrected to 1833 (Simpson 1968: endmap).



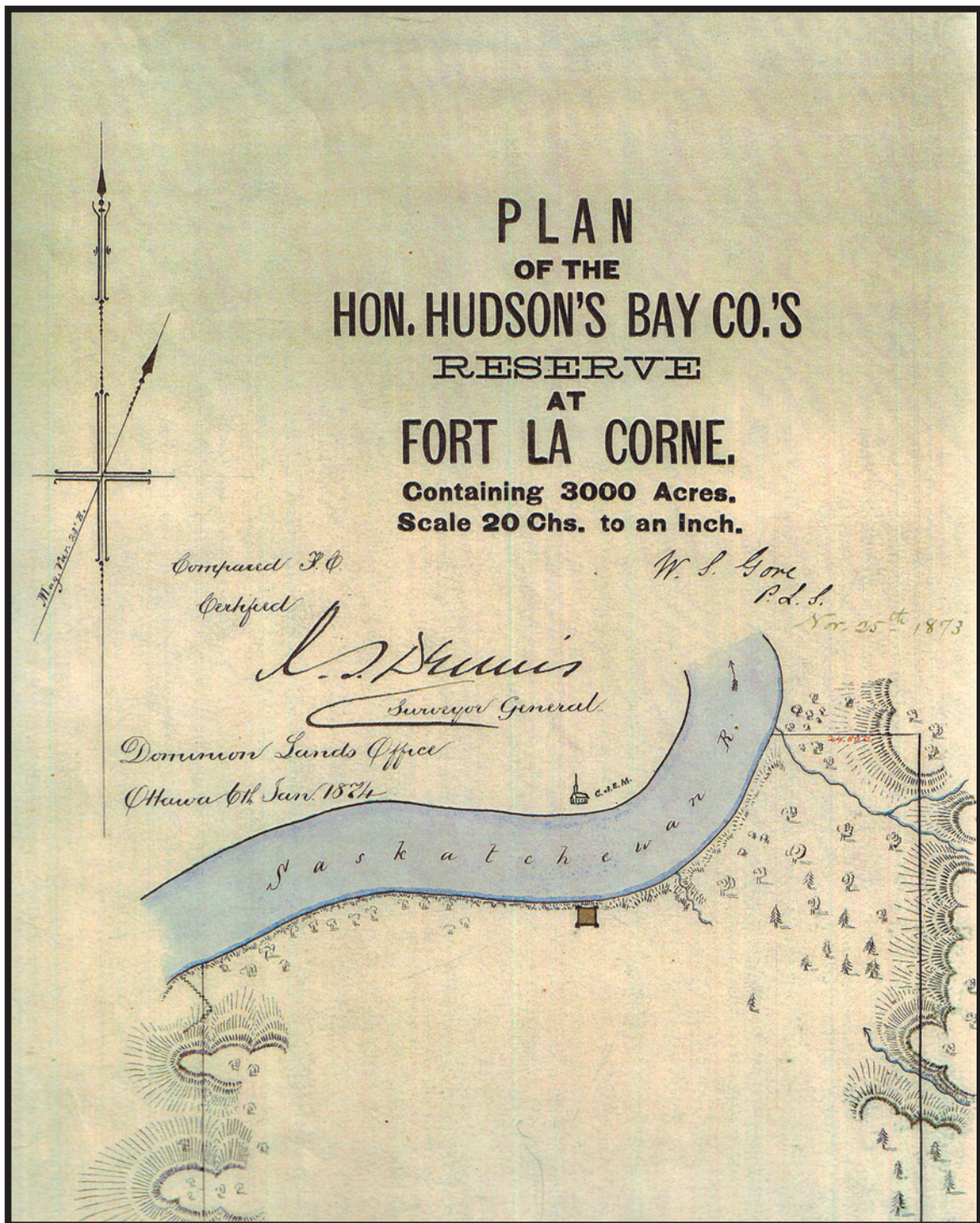
Map 1858a: Palliser's map of the west 1857-60 with his travel routes (Palliser 1968: endmap).



Map 1858b: Map to illustrate a narrative of the Canadian ... Assiniboine & Saskatchewan exploring expedition of 1858 (Hind 1970: 9).



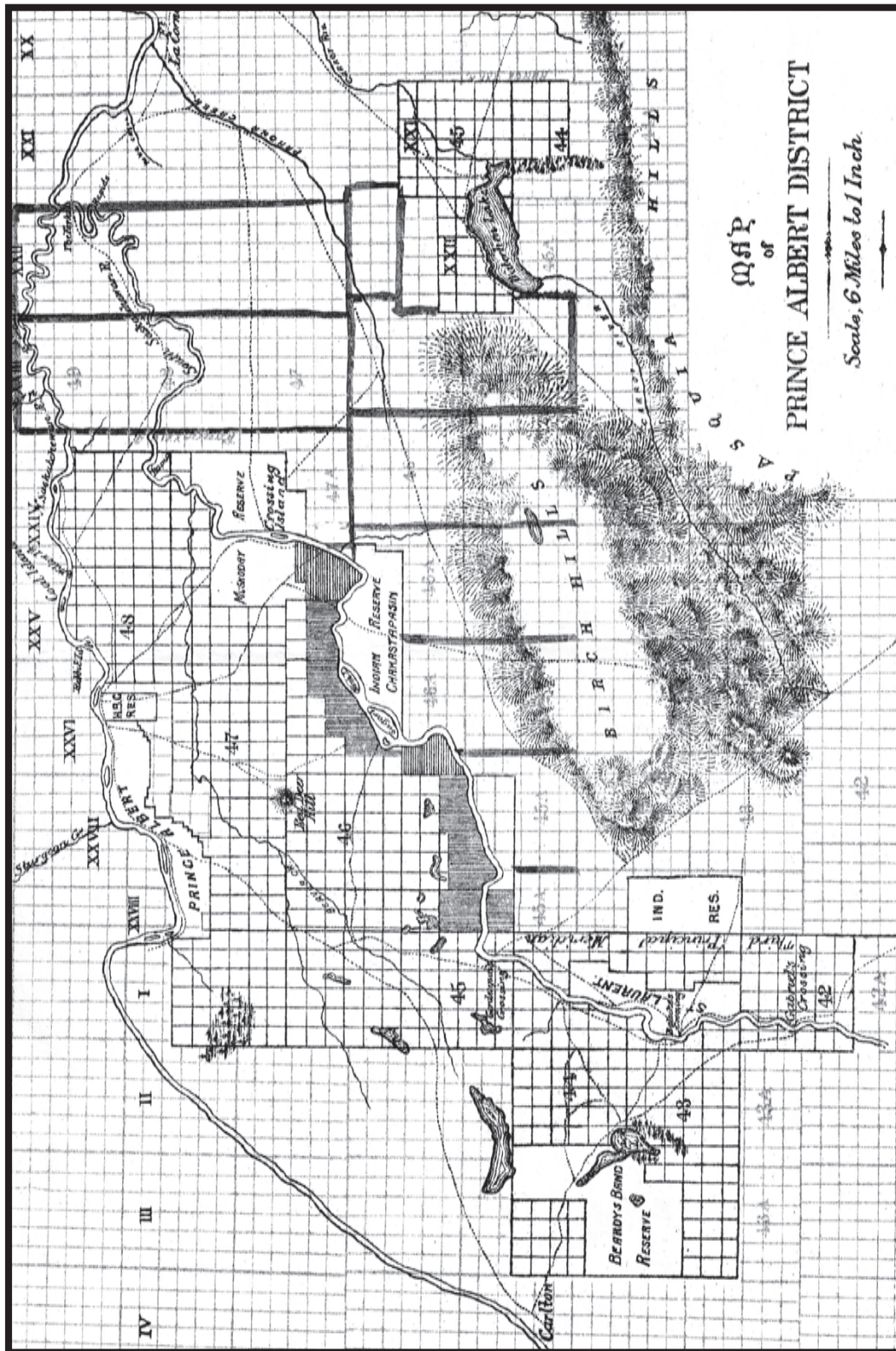
Map 1873a: Sketch Survey of the Saskatchewan River from Rocky Mountain House to Cumberland Lake to Illustrate the Report of Mr. Alfred R C Selwyn. 1873 (SAB B 70/1).



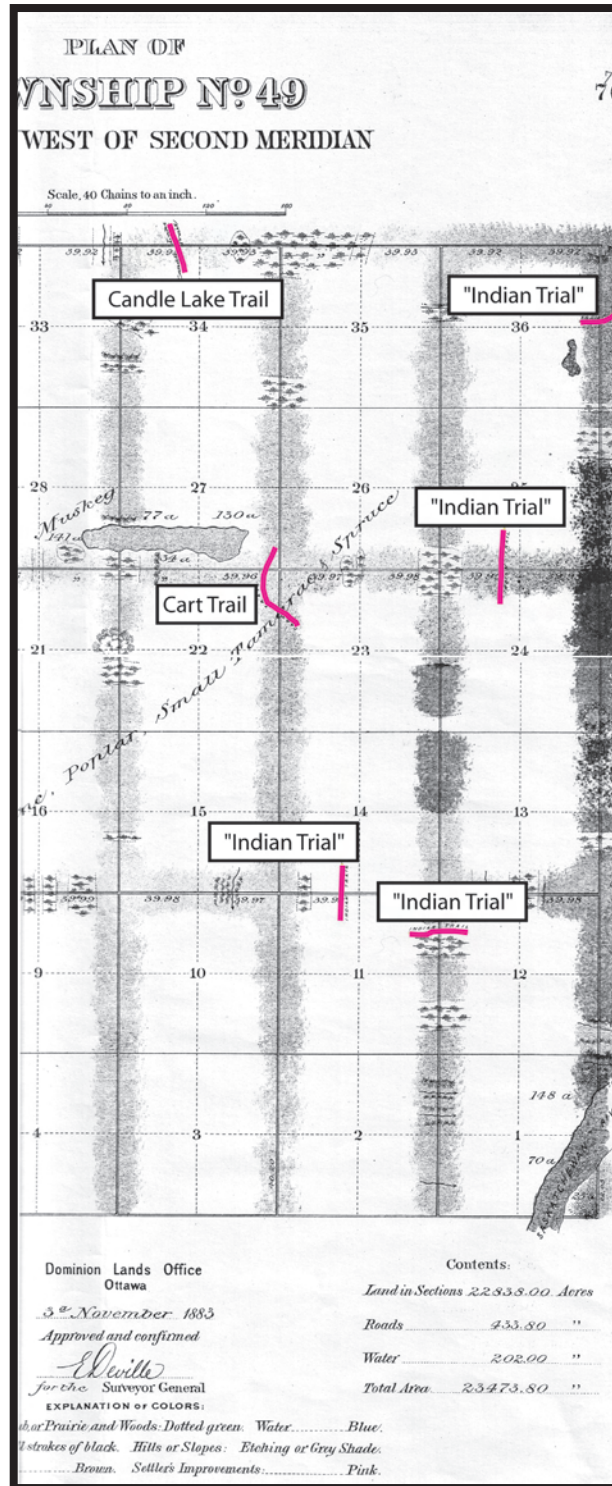
Map 1873b: "Plan of the Hon. Hudson's Bay Co.'s Reserve at Fort a la Corne" (Nov 25, 1873). W S Gore, DLS. Ottawa 1874 (SAB Regina A 468).



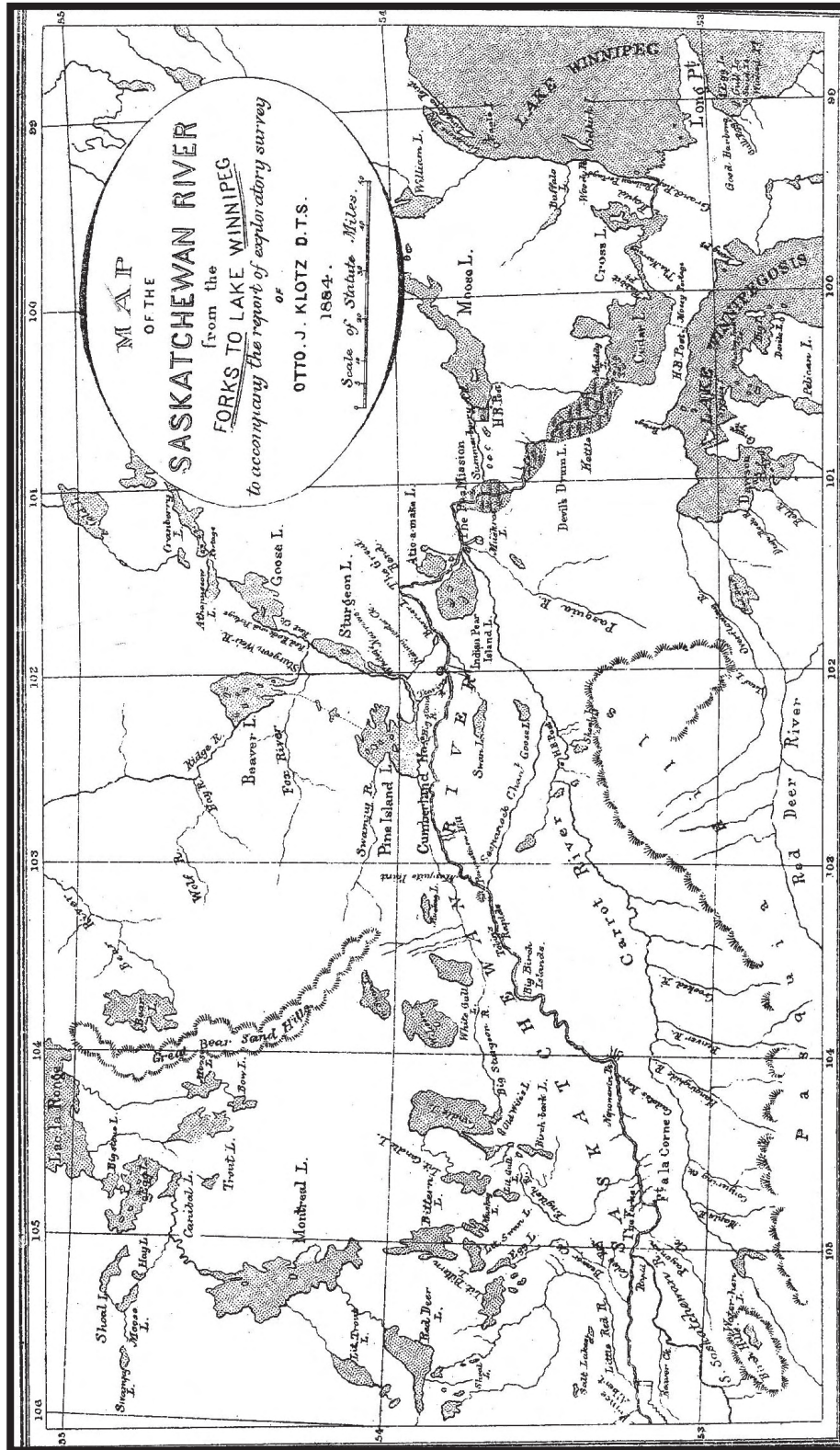
Map 1878: NWT. Sketch Map of Saskatchewan Valley Prince Albert to Fort a la Corne. A. L. Russell, DLS. 21 Oct. 1878 (SAB Regina A 463).



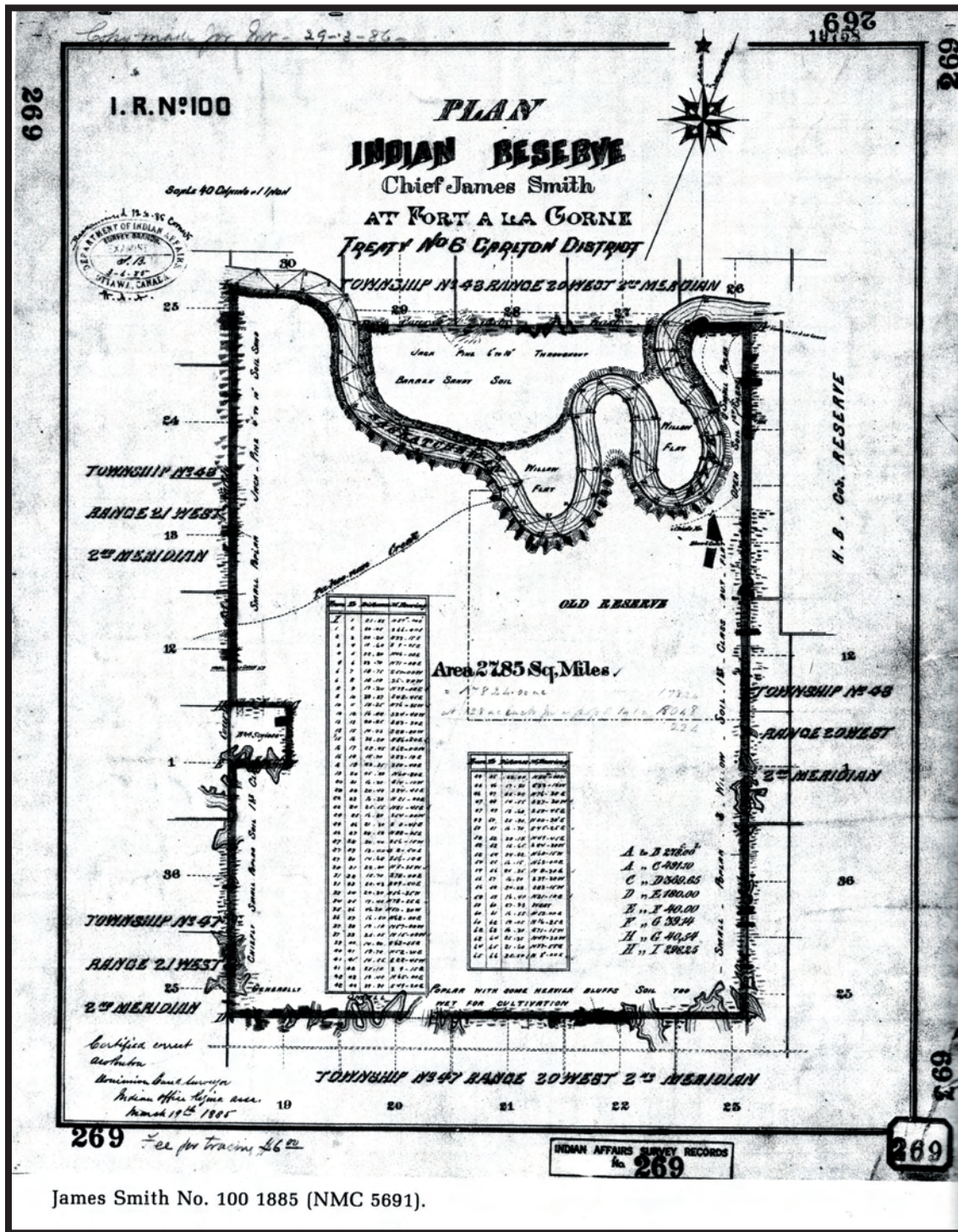
Map 1882: Map of Prince Albert District, undated [predates 1882]. H.D. Ellis file, 1882/84 (SAB R 183.I.170).



Map 1883: Plan of Township No. 49, Range 20, West of Second Meridian. 1883. [East half of plan] (SAB A 12 #49). (trails emphasized).

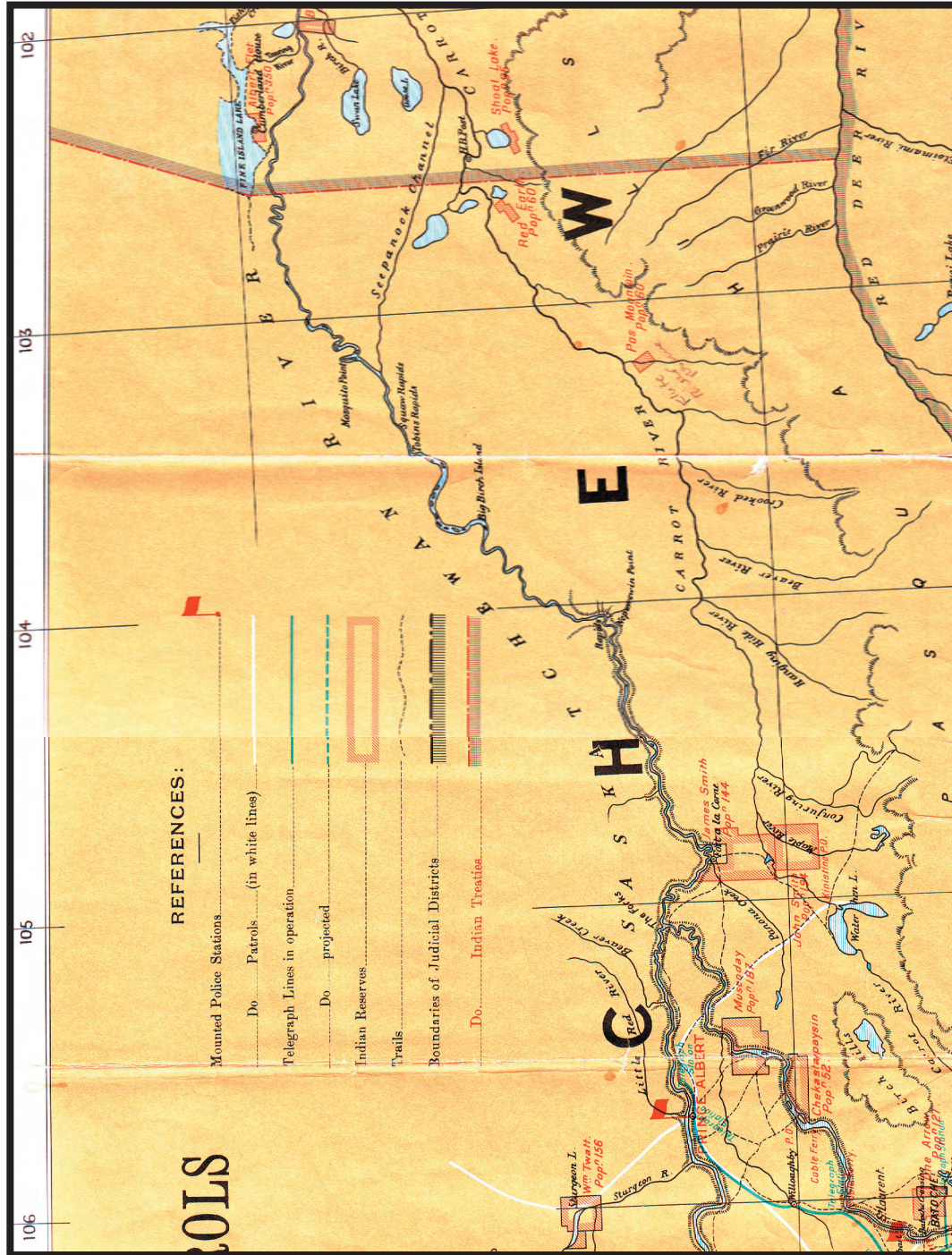


Map 1884: "Map of the Saskatchewan River from the Forks to Lake Winnipeg ... Otto Klotz, 1884" (Klotz 1885:21).

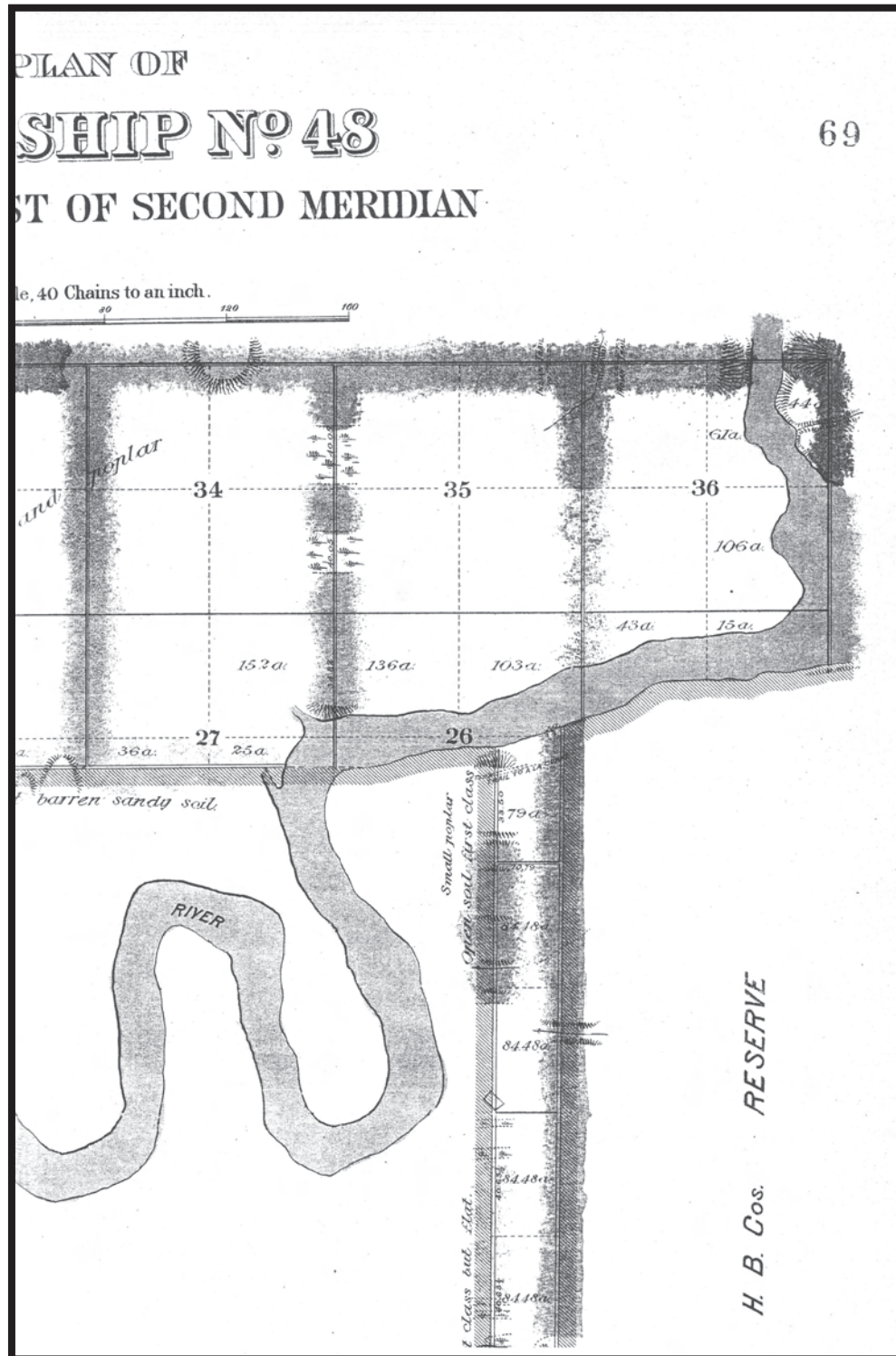


James Smith No. 100 1885 (NMC 5691).

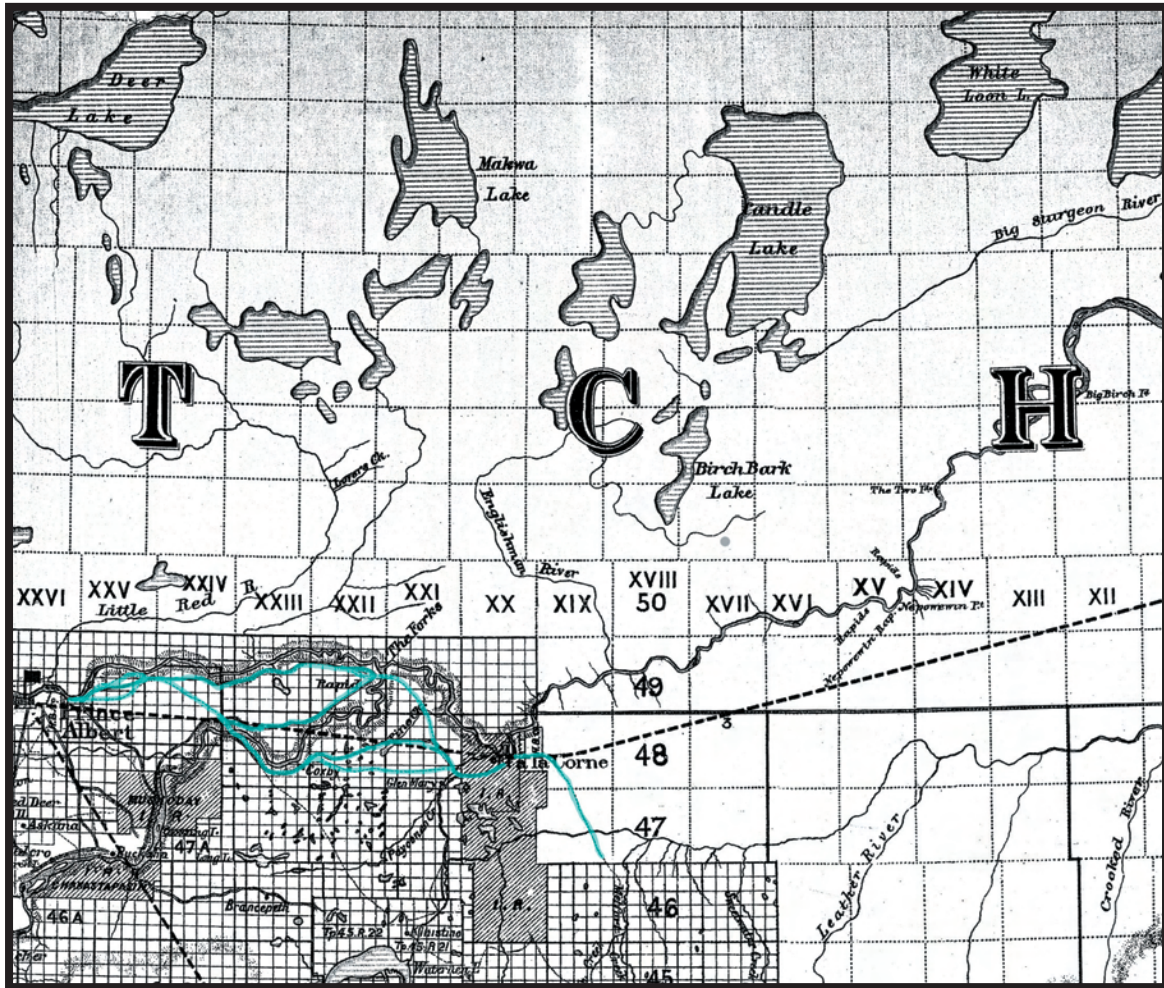
Map 1885: "Plan. Indian Reserve, Chief James Smith, at Fort a la Corne..." March 19th, 1885. (National Map Collection 1981:66). Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services Canada.



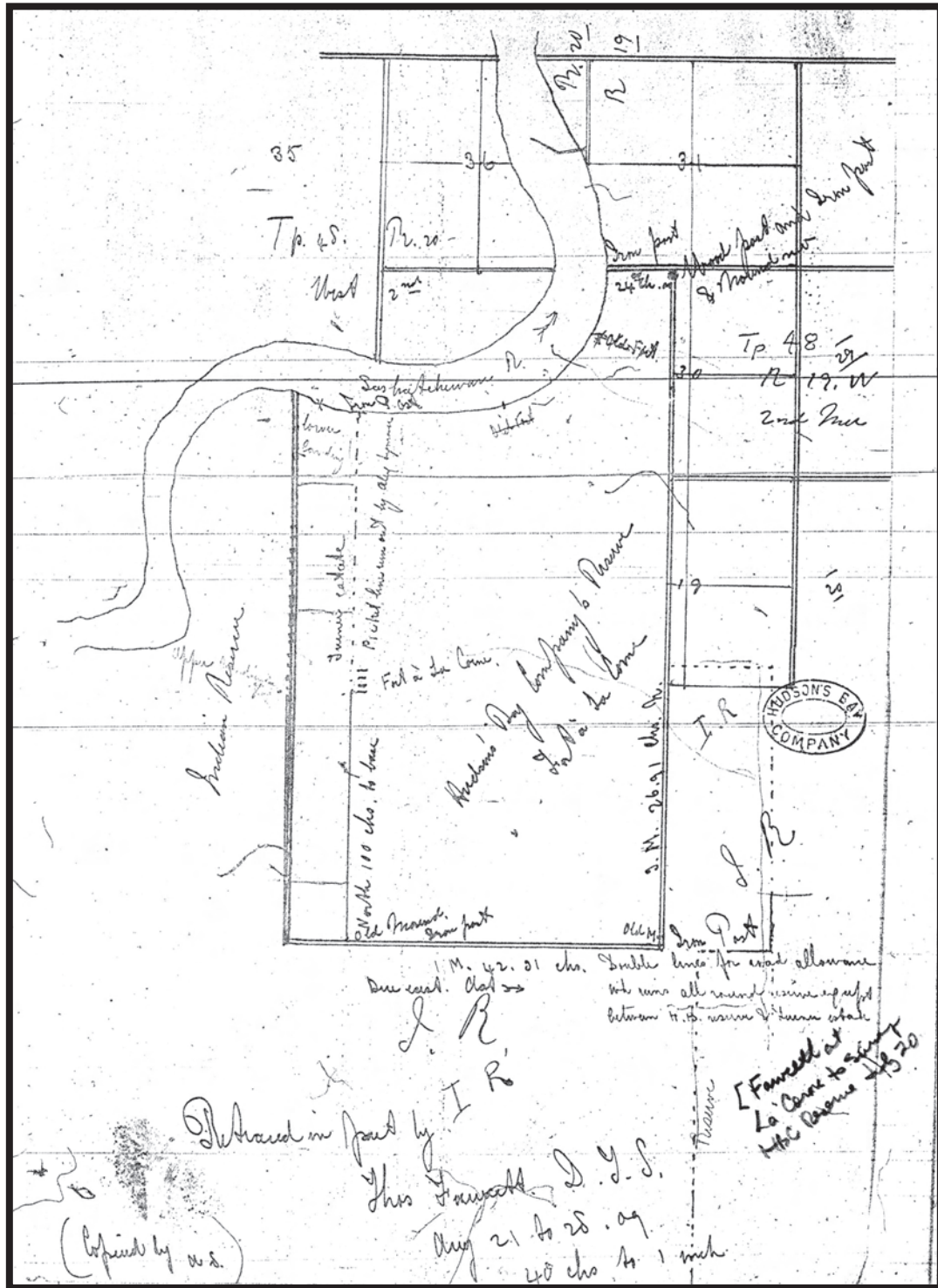
Map 1888a: “Map Shewung Mounted Police Stations & Patrols 1888” (Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. 1973)



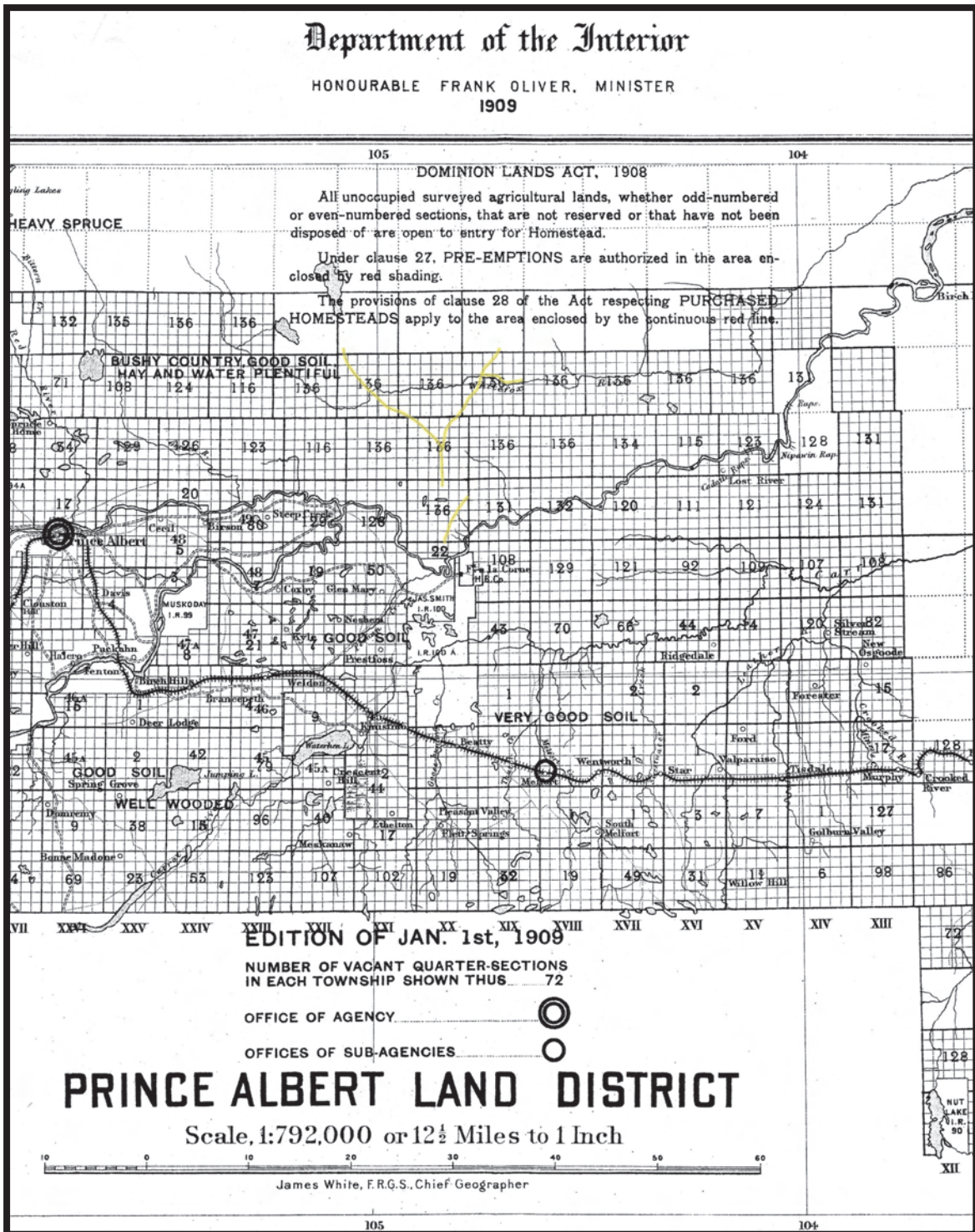
Map 1888b: Plan of Township No. 48, Range 20, West of Second Meridian.[NE portion]
(SAB A 12 #48 1888).



Map 1901: La Corne area pre-1901. Undated, untitled segment from a Dept of the Interior map. P. R. A. Belanger file (SAB R 183.I.025). [Trails emphasized. Note that the northern lakes are misplaced many miles to the east]



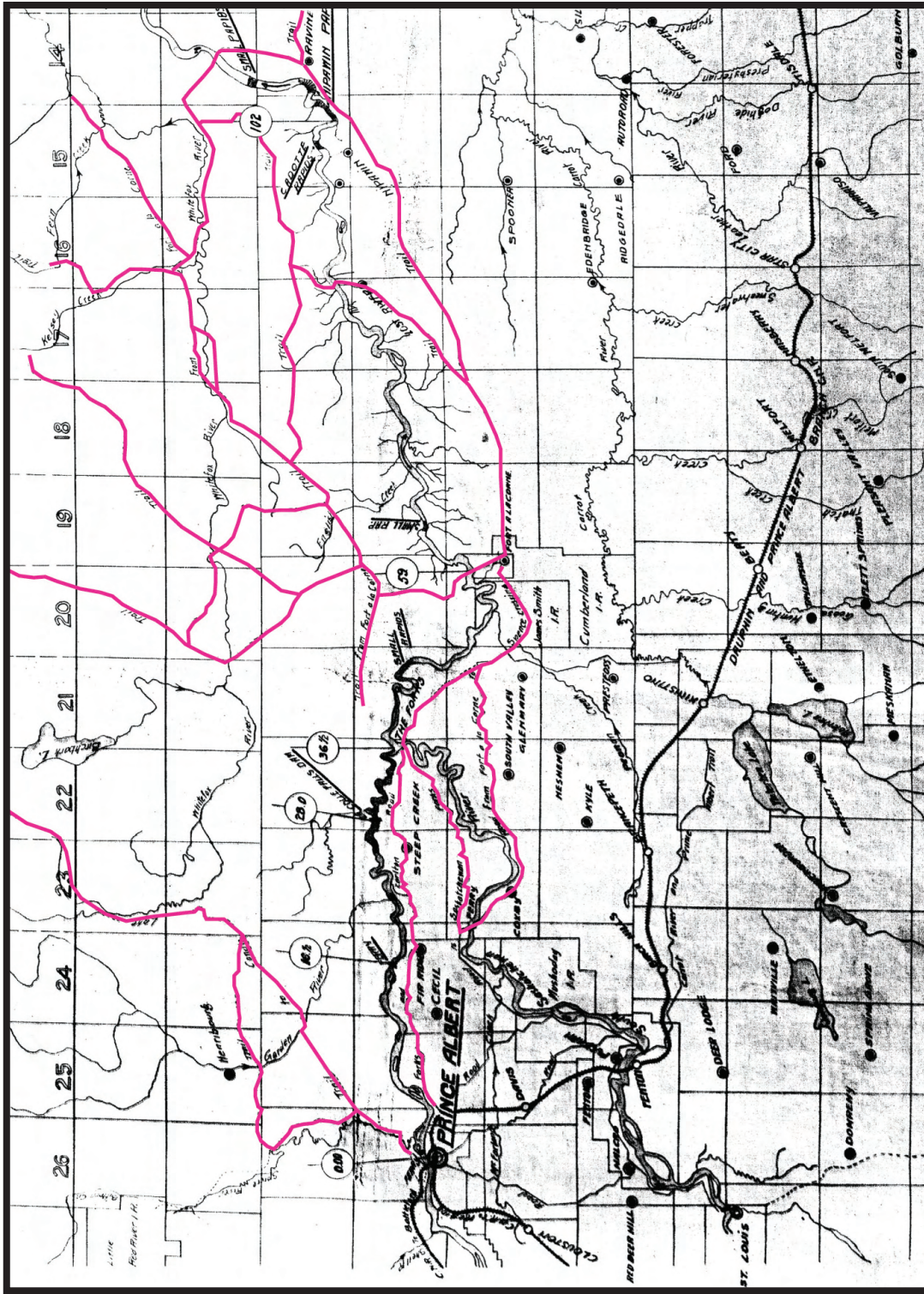
Map 1909a: Hudson's Bay Company Reserve, Fort a la Corne. Thos Fawcett, DLS.
"Copied by A. S." Fort a la Corne Post Journal, August 1909 (HBCA B.2/a/10 fo 59).



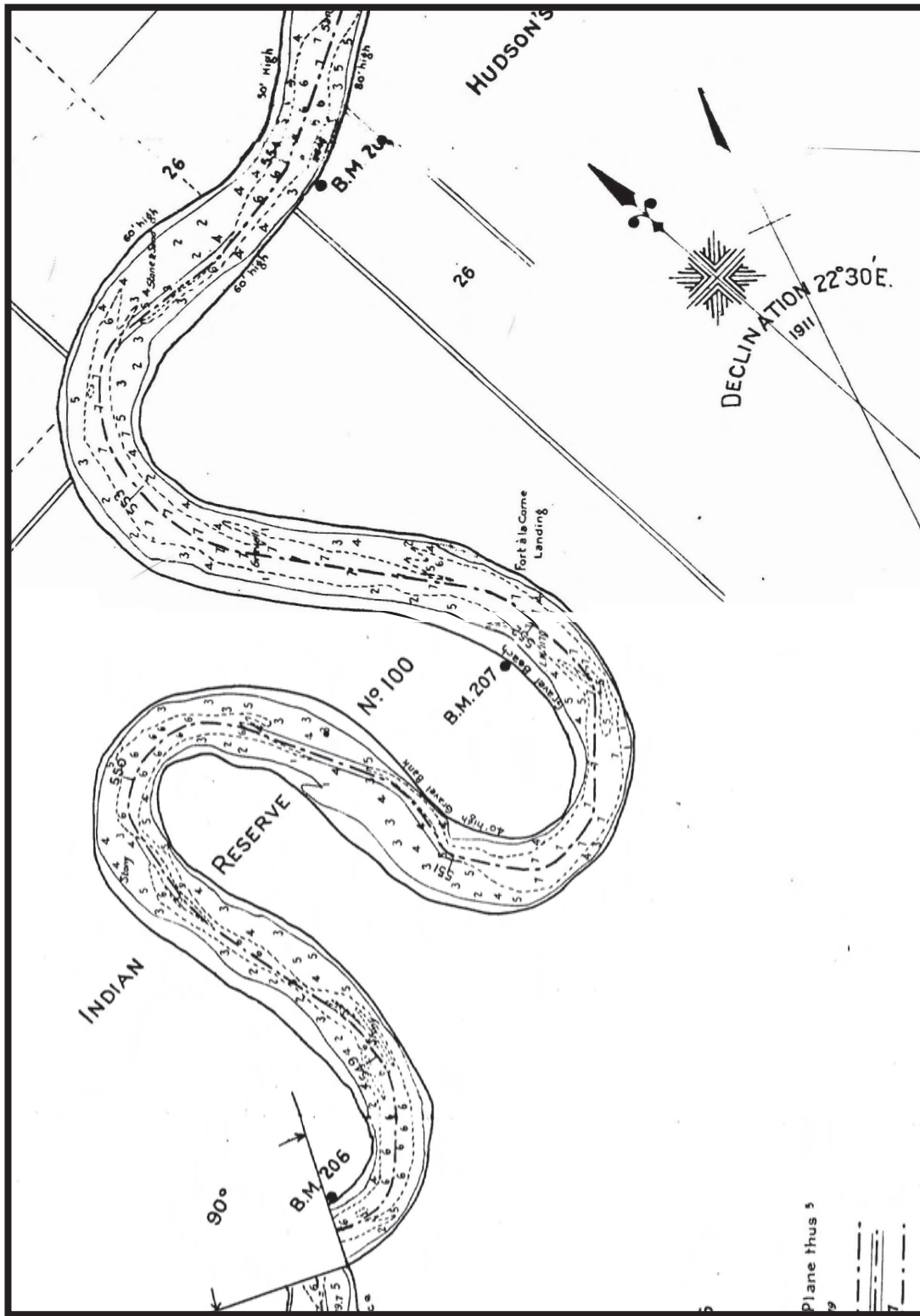
Map 1909b: Numbers of vacant quarter sections. Prince Albert Land District. 1909.
Department of the Interior (SAB A 16/2). [trails emphasized].



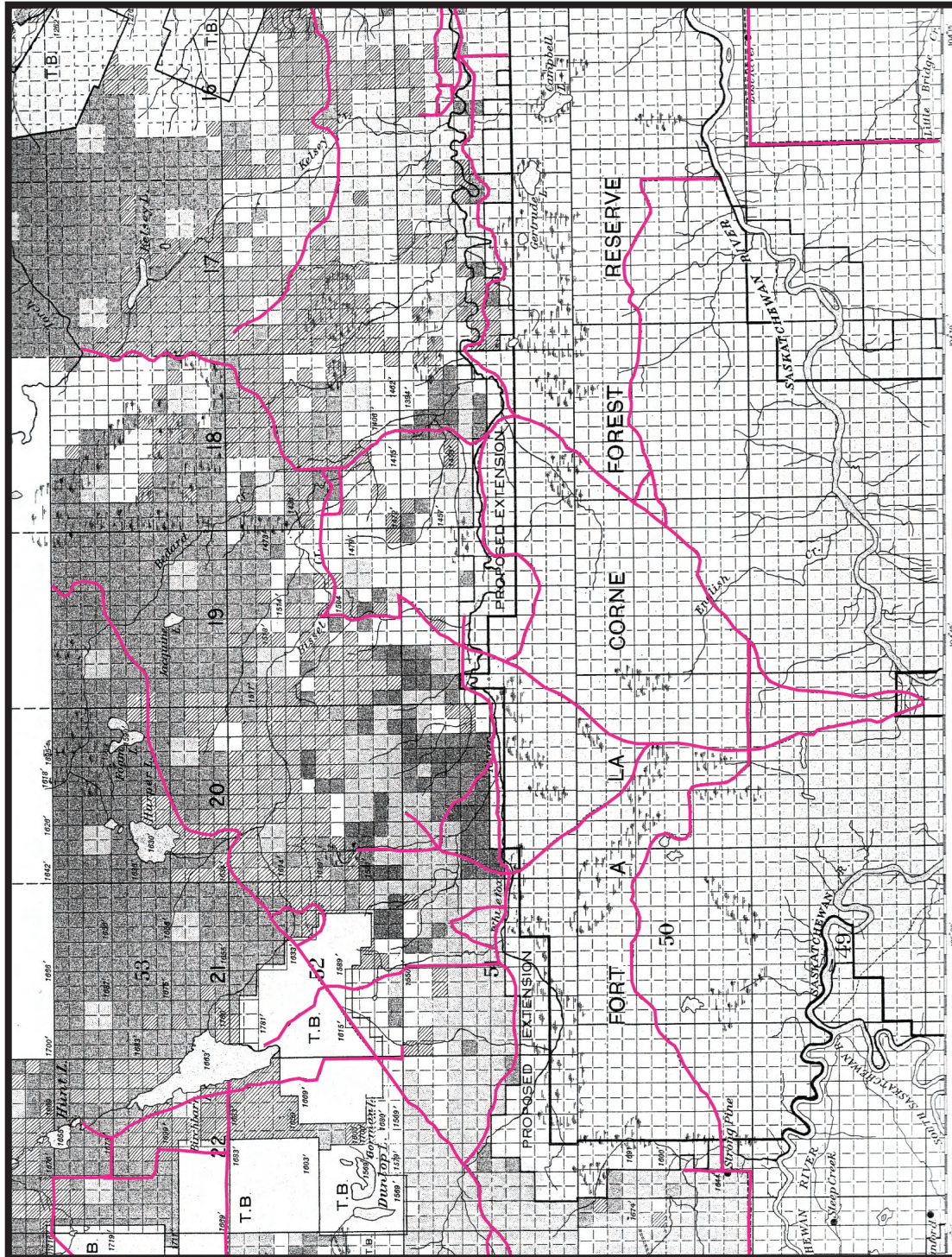
Map 1913: Nelson and Churchill rivers, Saskatchewan and Manitoba (McInness 1913: Endmap). [trails emphasized].



Map 1913/19: J A Cote's Map of Summer and Winter Routes from Prince Albert to Beaver Lake Mining Area. n.d. (SAB A 26/83). [ca. 1913-19; Trails emphasized].



Map 1915b: The last great field mapping of the Saskatchewan River. A portion of Voligny's survey, 1910-1915 (Voligny 1917).



Map 1923: Map of District Northeast of Prince Albert. Classification of lands by quarter-sections for settlement purposes 1923, corrected to 1922. Department of the Interior (SAB A 1315). [trails emphasized].

The Fort a la Corne Forest Area: a Survey of the Historical Documents

Appendix 2: Townships

*Prepared For
Shore Gold*

*Prepared By
Amanda Boechler &
Dale Russell*

Western Heritage Services, Inc

322 Duchess Street

Saskatoon, SK S7K 0R1

tel: 306-975-3860 ext.304

fax: 306-934-2572



August 2007



Table of Contents

Tp. 48 Rg. 18	2
Tp. 48 Rg. 19	2
Tp. 48 Rg. 20	3
Tp. 48 Rg. 21	3
Tp. 49 Rg. 17	4
Tp. 49 Rg. 18	4
Tp. 49 Rg. 19	5
Tp. 49 Rg. 20	6
Tp. 49 Rg. 21	7
Tp. 49 Rg. 22	8
Tp. 50 Rg. 16	9
Tp. 50 Rg. 17	10
Tp. 50 Rg. 18	11
Tp. 50 Rg. 19	11
Tp. 50 Rg. 20	12
Tp. 50 Rg. 21	13
Tp. 50 Rg. 22	14
Tp. 51 Rg. 16	15
Tp. 51 Rg. 17	17



Tp. 51 Rg. 18 18

Tp. 51 Rg. 19 20

Tp. 51 Rg. 20 22

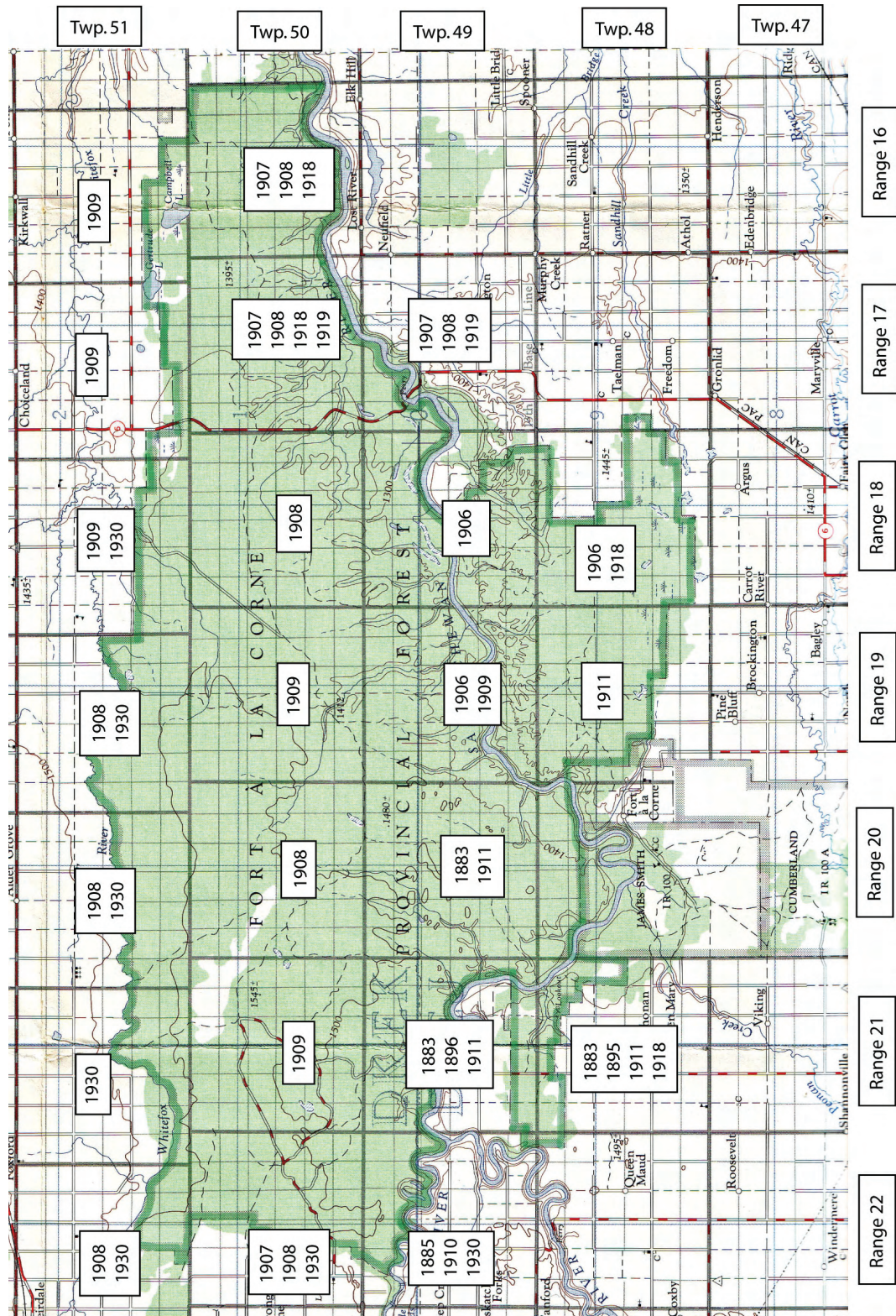
Tp. 51 Rg. 21 24

Tp. 51 Rg. 22 25

Tp. 52 Rg. 22 26

List of Figures

Appendix 2: Figure 1: Township Plans - Publication Dates of the Township Plans Within
The Forest Reserve. (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys,
Ottawa 1966)..... 1



Appendix 2: Figure 1: Township Plans - Publication Dates of the Township Plans Within The Forest Reserve. (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa 1966).



Tp. 48 Rg. 18

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1906 and 1918 (Poulin 1974). SAB has only the 1906 edition. The 1906 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Belanger in 1901, Belleau in 1901, and Reilly in 1905.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1903 Vol XXXVII, No. 25. Paper No. 25

Dept of Interior. Report of the Surveyor General.

Appendix No. 15. Report of J. A Belleau

[surveyed summer of 1901]

- pg 50: “Fort Cumberland trail passes through section 25, and runs in a northeasterly direction” [see Sect Map Prince Albert South 1916].
- pg 50: “An Indian pack trail leading to Fort a la Corne, passes through section 1”

Sessional Papers 1903 Vol XXXVII, No. 25. Paper No. 25

Dept of Interior. Report of the Surveyor General.

Appendix No. 17. Report of P. R. A. Belanger

[surveyed 13th base line along Twp 48 east from Fort a la Corne in May - Dec, 1901]

- pg 54: Belanger describes only the soils and the forest cover for this Township.

Tp. 48 Rg. 19

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1911 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1903 Vol XXXVII, No. 25. Paper No. 25

Dept of Interior. Report of the Surveyor General.

Appendix No. 17 Report of P. R. A. Belanger

[surveyed 13th base line along Twp 48 east from Fort a la Corne in May - Dec, 1901]

- pg 54: As well as describing the soils and water sources, he also points out that “a wagon road leading to a saw-mill on Saskatchewan river, crosses the base line in section 33 [Twp 48 Rg 19]”

[NOTE: this isn't on the 1918 Sectional map but is in same location as a trail shown on the 1966 73 H 1:250 NTS sheet. It is also on the three Forestry maps where it is called the Tepee Road leading to the ferry on sect 9 49-19.

Tp. 48 Rg. 20

Information from Township Sheets

No Township Sheet editions are listed in Poulin's (1974) Index/Catalog. However SAB does have a 1888 sheet (mostly James Smith IR 100 and La Corne HB Co. Reserve). The 1888 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Ellis in 1882, Patrick in 1883, and Ponton in 1885.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.387 L. Patrick, DLS

Letter. L Patrick to Deville, Chief Inspector. July 10, 1883

[re survey of Twp 48 Rg 20]

- Patrick was going to survey the Indian Reserve but had seen a map showing the reserve so will only do the boundaries of it.

Information from Other Published Sources

Drummond 1886:

Township 48 Range 20

- pg 212: Outlines of Township - H.D. Ellis, 1882
Drummond makes no mention of either James Smith or HBC Reserve or of any human features. The soil is described as sandy and poor
- pg 213: Sub-divisions of Township - L Patrick, 1883
“The land from the south boundary northwards to the Indian reserve, and northwards to the muskeg along the west of the township is first class. ... The balance of the township is of poor quality, being made up either of sand or muskeg; in this balance is included much of the country lying north of the river, with the exception of a flat in Sections 25 and 26, which is claimed by the Bishop of the Church. The Saskatchewan River passes by a very circuitous route, flowing east. Fort a la Corne is situate [sic] on the river near the center of the township, and a considerable area south and east of the fort is included in Indian and H.B. Co.'s Reserves

Tp. 48 Rg. 21

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1883, 1895, 1911, and 1918 (Poulin 1974).

SAB has only the 1883 edition. The 1883 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Patrick in 1883.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1912 Vol XLVI, No. 19. Paper No. 25b



Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Appendix No. 27. Abstract of the Report of E W Hubbell, DLS

[NOTE Original is in SAB R.183.I.239]

- pg 95: [resurveyed Twp 48 Rg 21 in June, 1910: “All the agricultural land in this township is settled on.” Hubbell also describes the soil, vegetation, animals and bodies of water.

Information from Other Published Sources

Drummond 1886:

Township 48 Range 21.

- pg 223: Outline of Township - H.D. Ellis, 1882
“North - poor for settlement.... The Saskatchewan River crosses the north-east corner of the township.”
- pg 223: Sub-divisions of Township - L Patrick, 1883
“The land through the south-east portion in which lies the Pawawan [Peonan] Settlement, is good agricultural land [the rest is wet and much broken].”

Tp. 49 Rg. 17

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1907, 1918, and 1919 (Poulin 1974). SAB has the 1907 and 1919 editions. The 1907 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Belanger in 1901, Abrey in 1905, and MacLennan in 1906.

Information from Other Published Sources

R. 183 I.5 G.B. Abrey, DLS

- apparently there are no reports by Abrey in either SAB or the Sessional papers
- Letter. G. B. Abrey to Surveyor General, Nov. 2, 1904
- has completed surveys of Twp 49 Rge 18, 19 on the south side of the Saskatchewan River Will wait till freeze-up before going on the north side.

Information from Maps on the Trails

There are no trails marked in this Twp north of the river.

Tp. 49 Rg. 18

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1906 (Poulin 1974). However, SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Other Published Sources

R. 183 I.5 G.B. Abrey, DLS

- apparently there are no reports by Abrey in either SAB or the Sessional papers

Letter. G. B. Abrey to Surveyor General, Nov. 2, 1904

- has completed surveys of Twp 49 Rge 18, 19 on the south side of the Saskatchewan River. Will wait till freeze-up before going on the north side.

NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo. W. W. Whelan, Chief Inspector to R. T. Cook, DNR. July 24th, 1935.

- re Metis petition for lands in 49 - 18: [see Sectional 12.3 of main report]
- "... in [Twp 49] Range 18 north of the Saskatchewan River, there are no means of travel, except by the river."
- "There is a mill site on the NW 17-49-18-W. 2nd, owned by Hanson Bros. of Lenvale, Sask."

NR 5.2.B.3.g Letter from the Minister to Baptiste Umpherville, Gronlid. June 19, 1939.

- Umpherville has requested that certain lands in Twp 49 Rg 18 be opened for settlement but his request is denied

NR 5.2.B.3.g Letter [from ??] to Baptiste Umpherville, Gronlid. January 27, 1941.

- Umpherville has requested a 21 year lease on Sect 17 and 18 Twp 49 Rge 18 W2nd for ranching. He is told a lease can only be granted for grazing.

Information from Maps on the Trails

There are no trails marked in this Twp north of the river.

Tp. 49 Rg. 19

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1906 and 1909 (Poulin 1974). However, SAB does not have either sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 49 Rg 19. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907]

- pg 251: "The township is reached by a trail running northwesterly [sic] from Fort a la Corne, centering on the west boundary of section 31. This trail is in a fair condition but rather hilly, near Saskatchewan river." The soil and vegetation is also described.

Information from Other Published Sources

R. 183 I.5 G.B. Abrey, DLS

- apparently there are no reports by Abrey in either SAB or the Sessional papers

Letter. G. B. Abrey to Surveyor General, Nov. 2, 1904

- has completed surveys of Twp 49 Rge 18, 19 on the south side of the Saskatchewan River. Will wait till freeze-up before going on the north side.

NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo. W. W. Whelan, Chief Inspector to R. T. Cook, DNR. July 24th, 1935.

- [re Metis petition for land south of the river] - “There are no improvements on the Saskatchewan River in Range 19 West” but he mentions a mill on the NW 17-49-18-W. 2nd., owned by Hanson Bros. of Lenvale, Sask.

Information from Maps on the Trails

There was a ferry crossing in the NW 1/4 sect 9 (1928 forest map) which was apparently later moved to SW 1/4 sect 15 (1936 forest map).

The historic La Corne - English Creek /Torch River Trail crosses the NW corner in sect 31, 49-19

One mile south of English Cabin, in 50-19, the Tepee Road branches south from the Division/Torch River Trail. In 49-19, It mainly follows the west side of sects 33, 28, 21 and 16. Then it turns SE to an unnamed ferry crossing on the Saskatchewan River. The trail continues south of the river four miles to Fort House in sect 27 48-19.

- The Tepee Road appears only on 1928, 1931, and 1936 forestry maps, south of the river.

Tp. 49 Rg. 20

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1883 and 1911 (Poulin 1974). SAB has the 1883 edition. The 1883 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Patrick in 1883.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.5 P. R. A. Belanger,

- SAB file includes a segment of topo map of NE Sask. undated but pre-1901. Only Tp 49, Rgs 20 and 21 are shown as surveyed

Information from Other Published Sources

Drummond 1886:

Range 20 Township 49.

- pg 213: Sub-division and Outline of Township. - L. Patrick, 1883
“This township is utterly unfit for settlement, being sand and muskeg”

Information from Maps on the Trails

Two historic trails led north from the river crossing at old Fort a la Corne in the NE 1/4 sect 26 48-20. They are shown on the 1918 sectional map, the 1922 soil map and the 1928 - 36 forestry maps.

The main trail branched north of the river, in either sect 2 or sect 11 49-20 (the maps vary).

- The western branch, called the Candle Lake Trail, led north, leaving 49-20 in sect 34.
- The eastern branch, was known to the foresters as the English Creek Trail, although its continuation past English Cabin, in 50-19, is named the Torch River Trail. This trail is not shown on the 1939 fire map.

A more recent trail, the Lars Car Road, left the Candle Lake Trail in sect 22 49-20 running SW through the Twp at the river crossing in the SW 1/4 sect 1 49-21.

Tp. 49 Rg. 21

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1883, 1896, and 1911 (Poulin 1974). SAB has the 1883 edition.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.5 P. R. A. Belanger,

- SAB file includes a segment of topo map of NE Sask. undated but pre-1901. Only Tp 49, Rges 20 and 21 are shown as surveyed

SAB R.183 I.424 W. R. Reilly, DLS [1908 work]

Letter. Reilly to Surveyor General. Fort a la Corne, July 15, 1908.

- [He is working in Twp 49 Rg 21]. “There are no settlers in this Tp on either side of the River ... the only part of the Tp. likely to be settled is a small strip south of the river. The most of the north part is either swamp or Jack pine... not fit for cultivation.”

Report, Feb 8, 1909.

- It seems that he was ordered elsewhere before he could complete the work. There is nothing relevant in his description of the Twp.

SAB R.183 I.425 W. R. Reilly, DLS [1909 work]

Report to Deville from Reilly. February 10, 1910



- He apparently went back and completed Tp 49 Rg 21 but gives little information. He says that south of the river, “a large quantity of ties, building logs and fuel [has] been taken off.”

Information from Other Published Sources

Drummond 1886:

Township 49 Range 21

- pg 223: Sub-divisions and Outline of Township. - L Patrick, 1883
“Only a small portion of this township is adapted for settlement, and this comprises all sections lying between the south boundary and the Saskatchewan River.”

Information from Maps on the Trails

No named trails are found in the Twp, north of the river, except the Lars Car Road which crosses sect 1, 49-21 to the river bank and continues 1 mile SW to Lars Ranger Station, south of the river.

There are two winter roads leading north from the river.

Tp. 49 Rg. 22

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1885, 1910, and 1930 (Poulin 1974). SAB has the 1885 edition. The 1883 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Caddy in 1883.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch. Annual Report

[Tp 49 Rg 22. Summary of report by W R Reilly, 1908.

- pg 331: “A ferry was being put in by the Saskatchewan government a few chains east of the west boundary.” The soil, vegetation, and water sources are also discussed.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.424 W. R. Reilly, DLS [1908 work]

Letter: Reilly to Surveyor General. Steep Creek, July 4, 1908

- he has completed the survey of the north part of Twp 49 Rg 22 (i.e. north of the river). He mentions only that it is thickly wooded.

Letter Report, Feb 8, 1909.

- There is nothing relevant in his description of the Twp.



Information from Other Published Sources

Drummond 1886:

Township 49 Range 22

- pg 234: Sub-divisions and Outline of Township. - E. C. Caddy, 1883

“The part of this township lying to the north of the north branch of the Saskatchewan River, is not fit for agricultural purposes... There are several settlers already located near the forks of the rivers.”

Information from Maps on the Trails

A Game Guardian Cabin was located on the north shore of the Forks, in the middle of sect 24 49-22. [The 1928 forestry map show the Game Preserve Boundary as running along the east side of Rg 22]

The Olson Trail led south from the Division Road (near Barnett’s Mill) in 50-22 and follows the east edge of sections 11, 2 50-22 and sects 35, 26 49-22 then southeasterly through sect 25 and 24 to the Cabin.

- it appears only on the 1928, 1931, and 1936 forestry maps

Tp. 50 Rg. 16

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1907, 1908, and 1918 (Poulin 1974). SAB has the 1907 edition.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 248-49: Mentions that the Lost River post office is in SE corner. As well, this township can be reached by trail about 42 miles from Fort a la Corne:

“This trail runs due north from the river to township 50, range 20 thence easterly entering this township in section 19. The condition is fair, but rather hilly near the river.”

[NOTE: Trail is marked on 1918 Sectional map. It is also part of the Division Road on the Forestry maps]. No mention of settlers.

Information from Maps on the Trails

The Division Road continues east across the Twp, from sect 19 to sect 25 where it apparently leaves to join the 8 mile grid road to Nipawin.

- It is on the 1918 sectional map, the 1928, 1931, and 1936 forestry maps, and the

1939 Fire map. However, the soil map does not show the Division Road east of 50-17.

A branch left the Division Road in sect 26, running north and east to Beaver House. Both the 1936 forestry map and the 1938 fire map show that this branch had become the main route.

Tp. 50 Rg. 17

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1907, 1908, 1918, and 1919 (Poulin 1974). SAB has the 1907 and 1908 editions. The 1908 sheet lists the DLS work to that date as: Abrey in 1905, MacLennan in 1906, Montgomery in 1907, Hubbell in 1908, and LeBlanc in 1917.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b
Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.
Annual Report

[Tp 50 Rg 17. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 323: “This township lies about twenty-nine miles northeasterly from Fort a la Corne by trail. This trail runs due north from Saskatchewan river to township 50, range 20, thence easterly entering this township in section 30. It is in fair condition but rather hilly near the river.”

Information from Other Published Sources

R. 183 I.5 G.B. Abrey, DLS

apparently there are no reports by Abrey in either SAB or the Sessional papers

There is only this letter. G. B. Abrey to Surveyor General, Nov. 2, 1904
has completed surveys of Twp 49 Rge 18, 19 on the south side of the Saskatchewan River,
will wait till freeze-up before going on the north side.

Information from Maps on the Trails

River House Ranger Station/cabin is in the Sw 1/4 sect 12, immediately north of the Saskatchewan River. Here a crossing (not a ferry) led to a series of grid roads to the south.

The Division Road continues from sect 19 east to sect 24 50-17.

The River Road, to River House, leaves the Division Road in sect 24, following the west line of sects 13 and 12 50-17 indicating it follows the DLS of the twp.

However, the 1918 sectional map, which does not show River Road does indicate a different trail leading SW from the Division Road, across the Saskatchewan River through later Teddington.

- This trail left Division Road in sect 19 50-16 to the SW; crossed the Twp line at sect 13-50-17 and south to River House. On the south shore it continued to angle SW cross-country.

Tp. 50 Rg. 18

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1908 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report

[Tp 50 Rg 18. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1908.

- pg 323-24: "This township lies about thirty miles northeasterly by trail from Fort a la Corne. This wagon trail runs due North from Saskatchewan river to township 50, thence northerly, entering this township in section 19. This trail is in fair condition ... Jackpine up to sixteen inches can be found scattered throughout the township but [insufficient] for lumbering purposes. One large muskeg extends nearly across the entire north boundary.

Information from Maps on the Trails

Poplar Creek Cabin is on the Division Road in the NE 1/4 sect 23.

The following trails are on the 1918 sectional map, the 1923 soil map, the 1928, 1931, and 1936 forestry maps, and the 1939 Fire map:

- The Torch River Trail, originating at La Corne, is in the NW corner of the Twp, crossing sect 30, 31, 32 of 50-18 and enters 51-18.
- The Division Car Road passes easterly from sect 19 to sect 24 50-18.

Tp. 50 Rg. 19

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1909 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers



Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b
Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.
Annual Report

[Tp 50 Rg 19. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907.

- pg 325: “This township lies about fourteen miles northeast by trail from Fort a la Corne, and can be reached by trail running to township 50, range 20, thence due east entering the township in section 5. The condition of the trail is fair, though some what hilly near Saskatchewan river.... English creek is a stream of good water, being about ten feet wide and two feet deep and has banks about sixty feet high.”

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.237 E. W. Hubbell

Hubbell was rechecking surveys during April and May, 1908: Twps 50, 51; Rgs 19, 20, 21.

- He crossed to the north on the ferry at Prince Albert and had great difficulty in reaching the contract area and had to cut and brush miles of trails. “There are no settlers or in habitants in this section of the country.” He returned to Prince Albert via La Corne as ground was thawing.

Information from Maps on the Trails

English Creek Cabin with a 80’ steel tower is in the NW 1/4 of sect 4 50-19 on the Division Road.

Just north of English Cabin, an unnamed trail branches north leading into Twp 51-19 at sect 33, providing an alternate eastern route to Whitefox Cabin.

3.5 miles NE of English Cabin, the main trail (probably the original historic trail) branches, the northeasterly one, named the Torch River Trail leaving the Twp in sect 25. The other, the Division Road, runs easterly, leaving in sect 24.

One mile south of English Cabin, at the edge of the Twp in sect 5, the Tepee Road branches south from the Division/Torch River Trail, leading to a ferry crossing on the Saskatchewan River.

Except for the Tepee Road Trail, these trails are shown on the 1918 sectional map, the 1923 Soil map and the 1928, 1931 and 1936 forestry maps.

- The Tepee Road appears only on the three forestry maps.

Tp. 50 Rg. 20

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1908 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 50 Rg 20. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 252: “This township lies ten miles from Fort a la Corne by trail. It can be reached by a wagon road straight north of Saskatchewan river. This trail is in fair condition, but rather hilly.” [No mention of settlers]

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.237 E. W. Hubbell

Hubbell was rechecking surveys during April and May, 1908: Twps 50, 51; Rgs 19, 20, 21.

- He crossed to the north on the ferry at Prince Albert and had great difficulty in reaching the contract area and had to cut and brush miles of trails. “There are no settlers or in habitants in this section of the country.” He returned to Prince Albert via La Corne as ground was thawing.

Information from Maps on the Trails

Twin Lakes Cabin was in NW 1/4 sect 18 50-20, on the Division Road. On the 1928 and 1931 forest maps it is called the Twin Lakes Cabin Stopover. It is also on the 1936 map and the 1938 Fire map.

The Division Road and telephone line enters sect 18, runs SE to cross the Candle Lake Trail in sect 3. Then it runs east 3.5 miles along the Twp line to join the Torch River in the next Twp

The La Corne - Candle Lake Trail enters the Twp in sect 3 and runs north to sect 22 where divides into two branches, the west branch leaves the Twp in sect 32 the east in sect 35. Neither branches are named north of this Twp.

- The trails appear on the 1918 section map, the 1923 fire map and the 1928, 1931, and 1936 forestry maps.

Tp. 50 Rg. 21

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1909 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 50 Rg 21. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907]

- pg 253: There is no mention of settlers. “This township lies about fourteen miles by trail from Fort a la Corne. It can be reached by a wagon trail running north from Fort a la Corne to the south boundary of township 50, range 20, thence running northwesterly entering this township in section 13. This trail is in fair condition but is hilly near Saskatchewan River.....There are two lakes in the township, lake No. 1 in section 7 and 18 and lake No. 2 in section 13.”

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.237 E. W. Hubbell

Hubbell was rechecking surveys during April and May, 1908: Twps 50, 51; Rgs 19, 20, 21.

- He crossed to the north on the ferry at Prince Albert and had great difficulty in reaching the contract area and had to cut and brush miles of trails. “There are no settlers or in habitants in this section of the country.” He returned to Prince Albert via La Corne as ground was thawing.

Information from Maps on the Trails

The Division Road and telephone line enter sect 19 and leave on sect 24.

The Birchbark Trail branches off in section 20 and runs northwest out of the Twp across the Whitefox River where it joins the Whitefox Trail.

- an unnamed “Winter Trail” runs south from the Division Road, along the section lines three miles of the east Twp boundary, eventually to the Saskatchewan River.

Tp. 50 Rg. 22

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1907, 1908, and 1930 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have these sheets.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1908 Vol XLII

Topo Surveys Branch. Dept of Interior

Tp 50 Rg 22W 2nd 50-22.

[Summarizes Montgomery report of 1906].

- pg 267-68: There is no mention of settlement at this township.
Access is from Prince Albert via the Fort a la Corne trail to Tp 49-Rg 22 then



“taking a branch line crossing Saskatchewan river, and entering this township in section 6. The condition of this trail is good.”

[NOTE: the hamlet of Strong Pine is later shown in 1918 Sectional map in NE 1/4 of Sect 6].

- pg 267-268: Alternate access is by way of Candle Lake trail to Tp 51-Rg 23 then “taking a branch trail running in an easterly direction to section 31 of this township. This trail is in poor condition.”

[NOTE: This trail does not appear in 1918 Sect map]

- pg 268: There is again no mention of settlement.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.290 McCloskey, M.D.

Land Classification Survey ...

fieldwork done in 1920

- there are no vacant lands in the township outside the reserve
- nearest PO is Strong Pine in NE 1/4 sect 8

Information from Maps on the Trails

Elk Ranger Station with a 80’ steel tower was in NW 1/4 sect 8 50-22 and is on the 1928, 1931, and 1936 forest maps.

- it is shown on the 1939 Fire map as “Elk Tower & cabin”.

The 1928/31 map shows it was then outside the reserve but within the proposed addition which is included on the 1938 map.

The main Division Road (here called the Elk Creek Road) leaves the grid road at the NW corner sect 4 and runs northeast to sect 24. The telephone line from Elk Ranger Station parallels the road.

- Barnetts [mill?], SW 1/4 sect 23 50-22 shown only on 1928 and 1931 forest maps

- the Olsen Trail led south along the east side of sect 3, 10 from the Division Road south into 49-22 to a Game Guardian’s cabin on the north shore of the Saskatchewan River at the Forks. It was paralld by a winter road, one mile to the west.

Tp. 51 Rg. 16

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1909 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 249: There is no mention of settlers but he does describe Whitefox River.

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1908-09

[Tp 51 Rg 16. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1908].

- pg 322: “This township lies about forty miles northeasterly by trail from Fort a la Corne. This trail runs due north from the Saskatchewan river to township 50, thence northeasterly entering this township in section 19. It is in fair condition... Whitefox river enters this township in section 19 and leaves from section 25 [90’ wide, 4’ deep and a current of 2 - 5 miles/hour]. Kelsey creek flows south through sections 32 and 29 into Whitefox river [10’ wide, 2’ deep and current of 2 miles/hour]. Two large lakes lie to the south of this township, both having muskeg shores.”

[Note: modern Gertrude and Campbell Lakes are actually within the Twp]

Information from SAB Files

SAB R 183.XIII.3 McCloskey, M. D. 1921/22.

“Land Classification Northeast of Prince Albert”

[Fieldwork was done in 1921

- pg 13: Area C [along NE border of La Corne; Twps 51-16, 51-17
“Here settlement has followed the course of the old Cumberland trail, still used by the people located in ranges 15, 16 and 17 along the Whitefox river.... Settlement is also being retarded here, to a greater extent than in Area B, by reasons of non-resident holders. In township 51 range 16 south of Whitefox river in the easterly part of the township, fifteen excellent quarter-sections were noted, homesteaded mostly in 1919, with no sign of improvements.
- pg 14: (Area C contd) [mentions a settler in S1/2 - 20-51-16 whose nearest neighbour south of the Whitefox is 4 1/2 miles east.
- pg 15: In considering the settlement of this district [Areas A,B,C, D] , its probable expansion and future prosperity, the distance to market is an important factor. The ferry near Nipawin is the only crossing on the Saskatchewan river. To the length of the haul to the ferry must be added 37 miles to Tisdale over a road that for several weeks during the past summer was impassable for loaded wagons.... A commonly expressed hope of the settlers is that the proposed railway running northeast from Melfort will be constructed; this will cut down, considerably, the

long haul to market... many of [the settlers] are returned soldiers who have received the advantage of government loans.

Information from Maps on the Trails

The forest reserve follows a straight edge border across the township.

The Beaver House Patrol cabin/Ranger Station, with an 80' steel tower was 1/4 mile east of the reserve boundary in the NE 1/4 sect 1, 51-16 on the 1931 and, 1936 forestry maps. However it was within the reserve on the 1928 map.

Klassen's Mill was at the south edge of sect 5 51-16. The Simpson Patrol Cabin was to the immediate south in 50-16. A winter road led from both, east across Campbell Lake to Beaver House Cabin. Another winter trail led straight south, across the Division Road to the Saskatchewan River.

The Gertrude Lake Trail along the west side of sects 5 and 8 led south to the Division Road.

Tp. 51 Rg. 17

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1909 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b
Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch. Annual Report 1907-08
[Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 250: There is no mention of trails or settlers, but he does describe Whitefox River.

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b
Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.
Annual Report

[Tp 51 Rg 17. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1908].

- pg 323: "This township lies about thirty miles northeasterly by trail from Fort a la Corne. This wagon trail runs due north from Saskatchewan river to township 50, thence northerly, entering this township in section 19. This trail is in fair condition.... Practically speaking, there is no timber in this township." Whitefox River, which contains jackfish and mullet, crosses this township.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R 183.XIII.3 McCloskey, M. D. 1921/22.

“Land Classification Northeast of Prince Albert”

[Fieldwork was done in 1921]

- pg 13: Area C [along NE border of La Corne; Twps 51-16, 51-17
“Here settlement has followed the course of the old Cumberland trail, still used by the people located in ranges 15, 16 and 17 along the Whitefox river.... Settlement is also being retarded here, to a greater extent than in Area B, by reasons of non-resident holders. In township 51 range 16 south of Whitefox river in the easterly part of the township, fifteen excellent quarter-sections were noted, homesteaded mostly in 1919, with no sign of improvements.
- pg 14: (Area C contd) [mentions a settler in S1/2 - 20-51-16 whose nearest neighbour south of the Whitefox is 4 1/2 miles east.
- pg 15: In considering the settlement of this district [Areas A,B,C, D] , its probable expansion and future prosperity, the distance to market is an important factor. The ferry near Nipawin is the only crossing on the Saskatchewan river. To the length of the haul to the ferry must be added 37 miles to Tisdale over a road that for several weeks during the past summer was impassable for loaded wagons.... A commonly expressed hope of the settlers is that the proposed railway running northeast from Melfort will be constructed; this will cut down, considerably, the long haul to market... many of [the settlers] are returned soldiers who have received the advantage of government loans.

Information from Maps on the Trails

In this Twp the Forest Reserve boundary follows a straight E/W line south of the Whitefox.

The only trail within the reserve is the Gertrude Pack Trail [NOTE: not the Gertrude Lake Trail] on the east side of sect 3 which leads southeast to the Division Road. It is named on the 1928 and 1931 map but only indicated on the 1938 map.

The two main trails, over 1.5 miles north of the forest reserve, are the Cumberland and the Torch River Trails, on either side of the Whitefox River.

The Cumberland Trail follows south of the Whitefox, across the Twp. The Torch River Trail continues NE from the Whitefox crossing, but it is not named. They are on the 1918 Sectional map as well as the 1928, 1931 and 1936 forestry maps.

Tp. 51 Rg. 18

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the years 1909 and 1930 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have these sheets.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 251: No mention of trails or settlers but he does describe Whitefox River.

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

[Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1908].

- pg 324: “This township lies about twenty-seven miles by trail northeasterly from Fort a la Corne. A wagon trail runs due north from Saskatchewan river for ten miles thence northeast entering this township in section 4. This trail is in fair condition but inclined to be hilly near the river.” There is no mention of settlement but he does describe Whitefox river and Bisset creek.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921.

[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 10: The portions of townships 51 ranges 18 and 19 available for settlement, that is, north of the forest reserve and proposed extension, are mostly covered with a heavy forest of aspen and balsam poplar...
- pg 49: Report on Township 51 Range 18 W. of 2nd Mer.
The township is most conveniently reached by a wagon trail, generally in fair condition, running westerly along the south side of the Whitefox river, from the ferry near Ravine Bank. [p 12: a trail can be found running westerly along the south side of the Whitefox until it intersects a wagon trail leading from Fort a la Corne to the Torch river in township 51 range 18]. Motor cars may be taken from Star City or Tisdale to Ravine Bank but it would be advisable to use a democrat or wagon for the remainder of the trip.
- The township is also accessible from Prince Albert by the graded road to Meath Park, thence easterly to the ford on the Whitefox river on the N.W. quarter of sec. 21 Tp. 51 R. 22 From this point the trail along the north side of the river should be followed as far sec. 18 Tp. 51 R. 20 where a trail branches south into the Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve. This trail should be followed far as the south boundary of sec. 3 Tp. 50 R. 20, thence easterly along the south boundary of the township to the S.E. corner of sec. 6 Tp. 50 R. 19, thence northeasterly on a trail running from Fort-a-la-Corne to the Torch river, crossing the Whitefox on the NW quarter of sec. 15 of this township. From this ford on the Whitefox we opened out a pack trail



running westerly along the south side of the river, leaving the township on the S.W. quarter of sec. 19.

- pg 49: The southern 1/3 of Twp 51 - 18 is in the Reserve “and the proposed extension ... includes the south halves of secs. 19, 20, 21, 22, 23 and all of sec. 24. The remaining lands are all available for homestead entry with the exception of sec. 29.”

Information from Maps on the Trails

[Note: the 1939 Fire Protection map shows a “Torch River Cabin” in sect 10 51-18. However, it isn’t on the 1928, 1931 or the 1936 forestry maps.

In this Twp the Forest Reserve boundary follows a straight E/W line south of the Whitefox. Only a portion of the Candle Lake Trail lies within the reserve

The Torch River Trail enters the TWP in sect 4 heading NE to follow east along the Whitefox River where it divides into two branches in sect 13, outside the reserve. Both branches then follow the Whitefox, the northerly branch crossing the river in the adjacent sect 19 of 51-17.

[The 1922 Soil Classification map shows an apparent continuation of the Whitefox River Trail from the west through the Twp but this seems to have been only a bush trail cut by McCloskey in his 1921 survey.

Tp. 51 Rg. 19

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1908 and 1930 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have these sheets.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 51 Rg 19. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 251: “This township lies about seventeen miles by trail north from Fort a la Corne. This trail runs due north from Saskatchewan river, entering this township on section 6. It is in fair condition.” Whitefox River crosses this township but there is no mention of settlers.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.237 E. W. Hubbell

[Hubbell was rechecking surveys during April and May, 1908:

Twps 50, 51; Rgs 19, 20, 21.

- He crossed on ferry at Prince Albert; had great difficulty in reaching the contract area and had to cut and brush miles of trails. “There are no settlers or inhabitants in this section of the country.” He returned via La Corne as ground was thawing.

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921.
[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 10: The portions of townships 51 ranges 18 and 19 available for settlement, that is, north of the forest reserve and proposed extension, are mostly covered with a heavy forest of aspen and balsam poplar...
- pg 11: The Whitefox River country is reached by following a wagon trail leading easterly from Meath Park, crossing the Whitefox at a ford on the N.W. quarter of section 21 township 51 range 22. From here the trail runs easterly along the north side of the river. It is in fairly good condition as far as Kyle’s ranch, on section 20 township 51 range 20 where it formerly terminated. From this point we opened out the trail as far as the east boundary of section 21 township 51 range 19.
- pg 53: Report on Township 51 Range 19 W. of 2nd Mer.
“This township is reached by a wagon trail running easterly from Meath Park post office, crossing the Whitefox at a ford on the N.W. quarter of sect. 21 Tp. 51 R. 22. It is in fair condition as far as sec. 16 Tp. 51 R. 20 where it formerly terminated. We opened out [i.e improved] a wagon trail from this point across the remainder of Range 20 and entering this township on the S.W. quarter of sec. 19. This trail terminates on the E. bdy. of sec. 21 and very little traffic has been over the latter portion.... An old wagon trail running northerly from Fort-a-la-Corne enters the township near the S.W. corner of sec. 6 and leaves near the N.E. corner of sec. 34. From a point on this trail, on the S.W. corner of sec. 17, we opened out a wagon trail to the N.E. corner of sec. 11 and from there a pack trail running north to the Whitefox river thence easterly along the south side of the river, leaving the township on the S.E. quarter of sec. 24.”
- pg 53: “The south two-thirds are included in the Fort-a-la-Corne Forest Reserve and proposed extension thereto. The surface of the portion available for settlement is ... covered, for the most part, with a dense forest.”

Information from Other Published Sources

NR 5.2.B.3.g

Letter from James Hoglin. March 19, 1930

[wants permission to squat on and later take up a homestead on NE 1/4 Sect 19, 51, 19, W.2nd]

- “There are some cabins - forestry cabins, on this quarter which I would buy if you consent to sell”

NOTE: The White Fox patrol Cabin is shown at this location on all three Forestry maps.

- This quarter section lies north of the Whitefox River while the rest of the Reserve follows a straight E/W line to the south. The Reserve now follows the course of the Whitefox.

Letter Finlayson, Director of Forestry to District Forest Inspector at PA. April 2, 1930

- Finlayson thinks they should keep the above land as “it is used as an administrative site even though it is north of the Whitefox River.”

Letter. J Smart to the Director of Forestry. April 15, 1930

- He doesn't want to give up the property: “The White Fox Ranger station (one of the most important stations of the Fort a la Corne districts during the summer months) is located on this land.”

NOTE: NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo to E H Roberts from E C Cournier. November 15, 1938
[re portions of NE 19 and SE 19 - 19 - 51 - 19 W2nd lying north of the Whitefox River, Fort a la Corne Reserve

- recommends that they be withdrawn from the Reserve and made available for settlement. The Inspector's Report [?? DR] describes:
 - a 14' x 16' log shingled cabin
 - a 14' x 14' log shingled stableboth in poor condition in the centre of the NW of NE 1/4 sect 19 - Tp 51 Rg 19.

Information from Maps on the Trails

The Whitefox Patrol Cabin was located in the NW1/4 sect 19, 51-19. There was also a Game Guardian's cabin in the centre of sect 20, on the south shore of the river.

- both cabins are on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 forestry maps but not the 1939 Fire protection map

The East Branch of the Candle Lake Trail enters the Twp at sect 6. The trail leaves the forest reserve in sect 20 where it crosses the Whitefox, adjacent to a game guardian cabin. It leaves the Twp in sect 34.

The Whitefox Trail leads about 9 miles southeast from the patrol cabin to 50-19 where it joins the Torch River Trail to the NE

Tp. 51 Rg. 20

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1908 and 1930 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have these sheets.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 51 Rg 20. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907. No mention of settlers]

- pg 252: “This township lies about seventeen miles by trail from Fort a la Corne. This wagon trail runs northerly from Saskatchewan river, and is in good condition, but is inclined to be hilly near the river. It enters on section 5....” There is no mention of settlers but he does describe Whitefox River as it cuts across this Township.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.237 E. W. Hubbell

[Hubbell was rechecking surveys during April and May, 1908:

Twps 50, 51; Rgs 19, 20, 21.

- he crossed on ferry at PA; had great difficulty in reaching the contract area and had to cut and brush miles of trails. “There are no settlers or inhabitants in this section of the country.” He returned via La Corne as ground was thawing.

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921.

[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 11: The Whitefox River country is reached by following a wagon trail leading easterly from Meath Park, crossing the Whitefox at a ford on the N.W. quarter of section 21 township 51 range 22. From here the trail runs easterly along the north side of the river. It is in fairly good condition as far as Kyle’s ranch, on section 20 township 51 range 20 where it formerly terminated. From this point we opened out the trail as far as the east boundary of section 21 township 51 range 19.
- pg 60: Report on Tp. 51 R. 20 W. of 2nd Mer. This township is reached by a wagon trail running easterly from Meath Park post office, crossing the Whitefox river at a ford on the N.W. quarter of sec. 21 Tp. 51 R. 22, and entering this township on sec. 18. It is in fair condition as far as sec. 16 where it formerly terminated. We opened out a wagon trail from this point across the remainder of the township, crossing the east outline near the N.E. corner of sec. 13. Wagons have been taken over this portion only once.... A wagon trail running northerly from Fort-a-La-Corne enters the township on the S. Bdy. of sec. 5, runs northerly through secs. 5, 7, 18, 19, 30, 29 and leaves this township near the quarter section corner on the N, Bdy of sec. 33. This trail is in fair condition but in some places is blocked by windfall. The Meath Park route is the best means of access to the township. The south half of the township is included in the Fort-a-La Corne Forest Reserve and the

proposed extension thereto.

Information from Maps on the Trails

1928, 1931, 1936 maps show Whitefox Trail along north of Whitefox River running from the west side of 51-22 east to Whitefox Cabin on west side of 51-19

- not on 1918 Sectional map or the 1939 Fire Protection map

The 1928, 1931 and 1936 maps show the west branch of the Candle Lake trail entering the Twp in sect 5, running NW and crossing the Whitefox River and the reserve boundary in sect 18. It runs NNE and leaves the Twp in sect 33.

- The Candle Lake Trail on the 1918 Sectional map seems to lead north to the unsurveyed Torch River.

A three mile long “winter trail” lies in the SW corner of the maps with no obvious start or end

Tp. 51 Rg. 21

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1930 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have this sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1910 Vol XLIV, No. 16. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report

[Tp 51 Rg 21. Summary of report by R H Montgomery, 1907].

- pg 328: This township lies about twenty miles by trail northwesterly from Fort a la Corne. This wagon trail runs north, from Saskatchewan river, to the north of township 50, range 20, thence northwesterly to this township entering it in section 13. The condition of this trail is good but rather inclined to be hilly near Saskatchewan river.
- pg 328: Montgomery makes note of a definite soil transition where “north of Whitefox river the soil is black loam ... suitable for mixed farming. South of Whitefox river the soil is sand.”

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.237 E. W. Hubbell

[Hubbell was rechecking surveys during April and May, 1908:

Twps 50, 51; Rgs 19, 20, 21.

- he crossed on ferry at PA; had great difficulty in reaching the contract area and had to cut and brush miles of trails. “There are no settlers or inhabitants in this section of the country.” He returned via La Corne as ground was thawing.

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921.
[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 8: The south half of township 51 range 21 is included in the Fort-a-la-Corne Forest Reserve and proposed extension thereto. Sections 22, 23 and 24 are covered in an application for grazing. Homestead entries have recently been filed on 10 quarter sections, in the northeasterly portion of the township
- pg 9: Homestead entries have recently been filed on 13 quarter-sections, leaving 14 ... still available for settlement [sections 19 - 28 are under, or have been applied for, grazing leases]

Information from Maps on the Trails

Forest map 1936, B 36/17

Forest Reserve generally follows Whitefox River

- 1928, 1931, 1936 maps show Whitefox Trail along north of Whitefox River running from the west side of 51-22 east to Whitefox Cabin on west side of 51-19

- 1928, 1931, 1936 maps show Birchbark Trail leads south from sect 7 51-21 to Division Road

Tp. 51 Rg. 22

Information from Township Sheets

Township Sheet editions exist for the year 1908 and 1930 (Poulin 1974). However SAB does not have these sheet.

Information from Sessional Papers

Sessional Papers 1908 Vol XLII

Topo Surveys Branch. Dept of Interior

Tp 51 Rg 22W 2nd 50-22.

[Twp report by A L Robertson, Forest-ranger, 1906].

- pg 269: There is no mention of settlement.

Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 51 Rg 22. Summary of report R H Montgomery, D L S 1906].

- pg 253: Located about 35 miles by road from PA. “A trail leading into it leaves the Candle lake trail about thirty miles from Prince Albert. Both trails are in poor condition.



- pg 254: Whitefox River enters the township on the west boundary of section 30 and leaves on the east boundary of section 1, about 30' wide and 2' deep.

Information from SAB Files

SAB R.183 I.290 McCloskey, M.D.

Land Classification Survey

[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- reached by a wagon trail NE from Meath Park, fording Whitefox river in NW 1/4 sect 21. A motor car can be taken as far as the ford in dry weather
29 quarters are homesteaded but most are recent arrivals; mentions some unimproved homesteads that were taken in 1915 and 1917

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921.

[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 7: “In Township 51 range 22 ... Only 16 quarter sections now remain available for homestead entry. A few quarter-sections were filed in 1916 and 1917 but most of the entries were filed during the past two years: many of the homesteaders being returned soldiers.”
- pg 8: [settlers are ranching as markets are too far to haul grain] “With the exception of sections 17 and 18 the south half of the township is included in the Fort-a-la Corne Forest Reserve and the grading [grazing ??] lease of Wentworth Ranch Lts.”

Information from Maps on the Trails

Forest map 1936, B 36/17

Reserve boundary in SE corner, bordered by Whitefox River

1928, 1931, 1936 maps show Whitefox Trail along north of Whitefox River running from the west side of 51-22 east to Whitefox Cabin on west side of 51-19

1928, 1931, and 1936 maps show unnamed trail coming from junction of Division Road and Birchbark Trail through SW corner of Twp to Meath Park

- western portion of trail on the 1966 1:250 NTS sheet
- no trails shown on 1939 Fire map
- Smythe Mill, sect 29, shown only on 1928, 1931 map

Tp. 52 Rg. 22

Information from Sessional Papers



Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch.

Annual Report 1907-08

[Tp 52 Rg 22. Summary of report R H Montgomery, D L S 1906].

- pg 254: “This township lies about forty miles by trail from Prince Albert. It can be reached by following the Candle Lake trail to Township 52 Range 23, thence easterly to the township by a pack trail. Birchbark lake cuts off the northeast corner of the township ... about four miles long and four miles wide.”

The Fort a la Corne Forest Area: a Survey of the Historical Documents

Appendix 3: Section 1: Trails

*Prepared For
Shore Gold*

*Prepared By
Amanda Boechler &
Dale Russell*

Western Heritage Services, Inc

*322 Duchess Street
Saskatoon, SK S7K 0R1
tel: 306-975-3860
fax: 306-934-2572*



August 2007



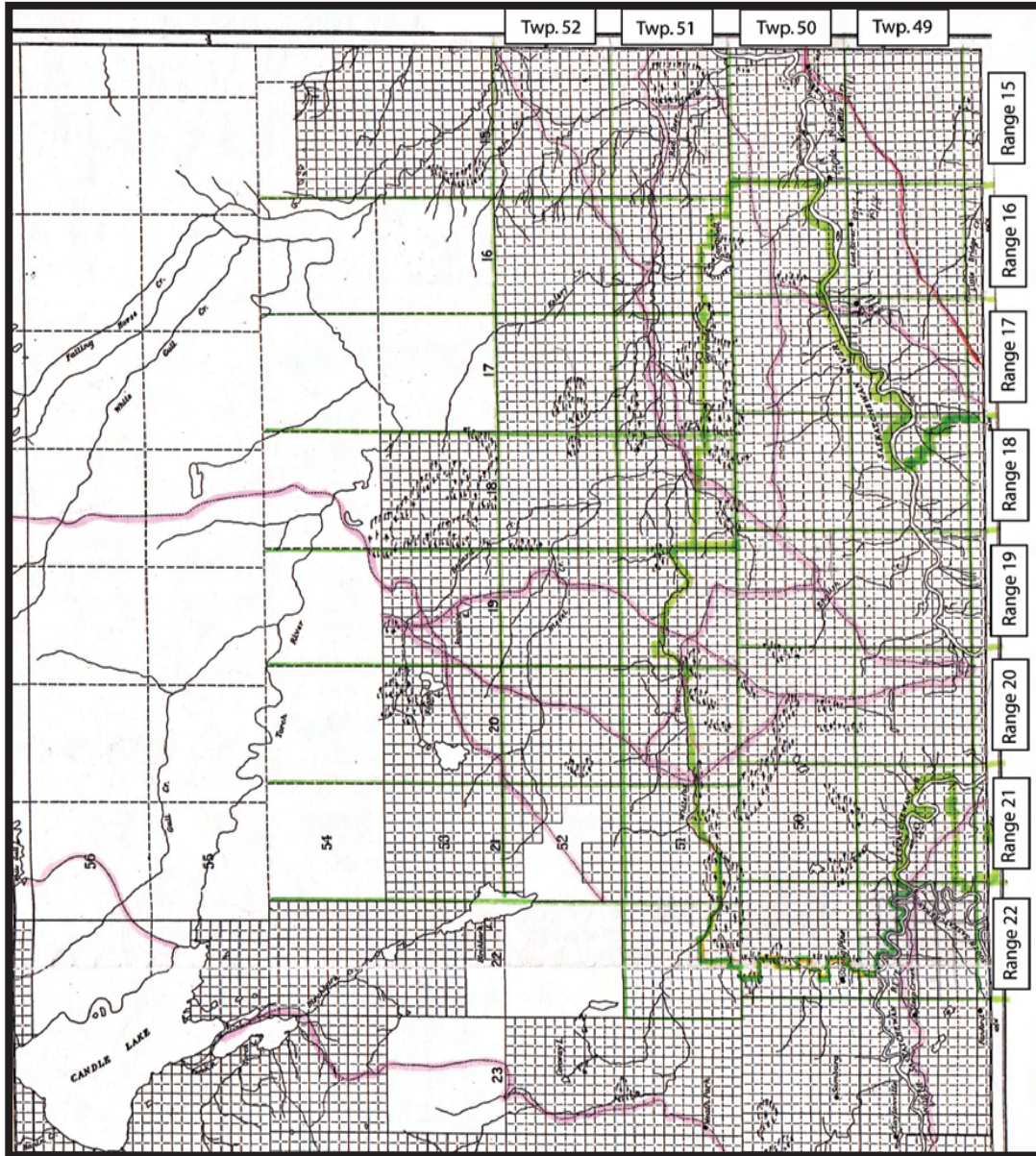
Table of Contents

Birchbark Trail.....	7
Candle Lake – Fort a la Corne Trail.....	7
Cumberland House – Fort a la Corne Trail.....	8
Division Road	9
Elk Creek Road.....	10
Elk Hay Trail.....	10
English Creek Trail	11
Gertrude Trail.....	11
Fishing Lake/Hudson Bay and Pacific Railway Trail.....	11
Lars Car Road	13
Pack Trail	13
Prince Albert – Whitefox River Trail.....	13
Torch River – Fort a la Corne Trail.....	14
White Fox Trail.....	15

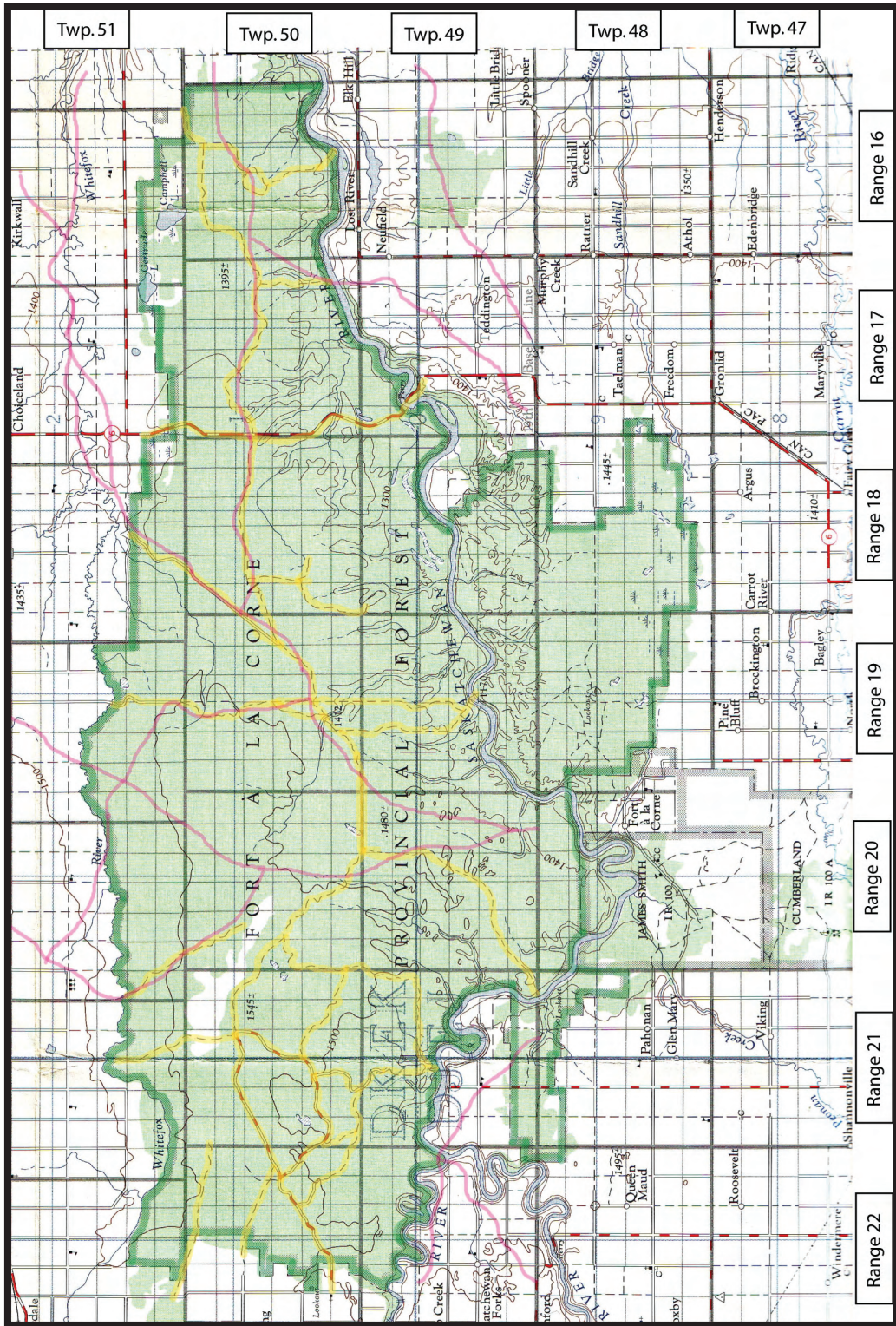


List of Figures

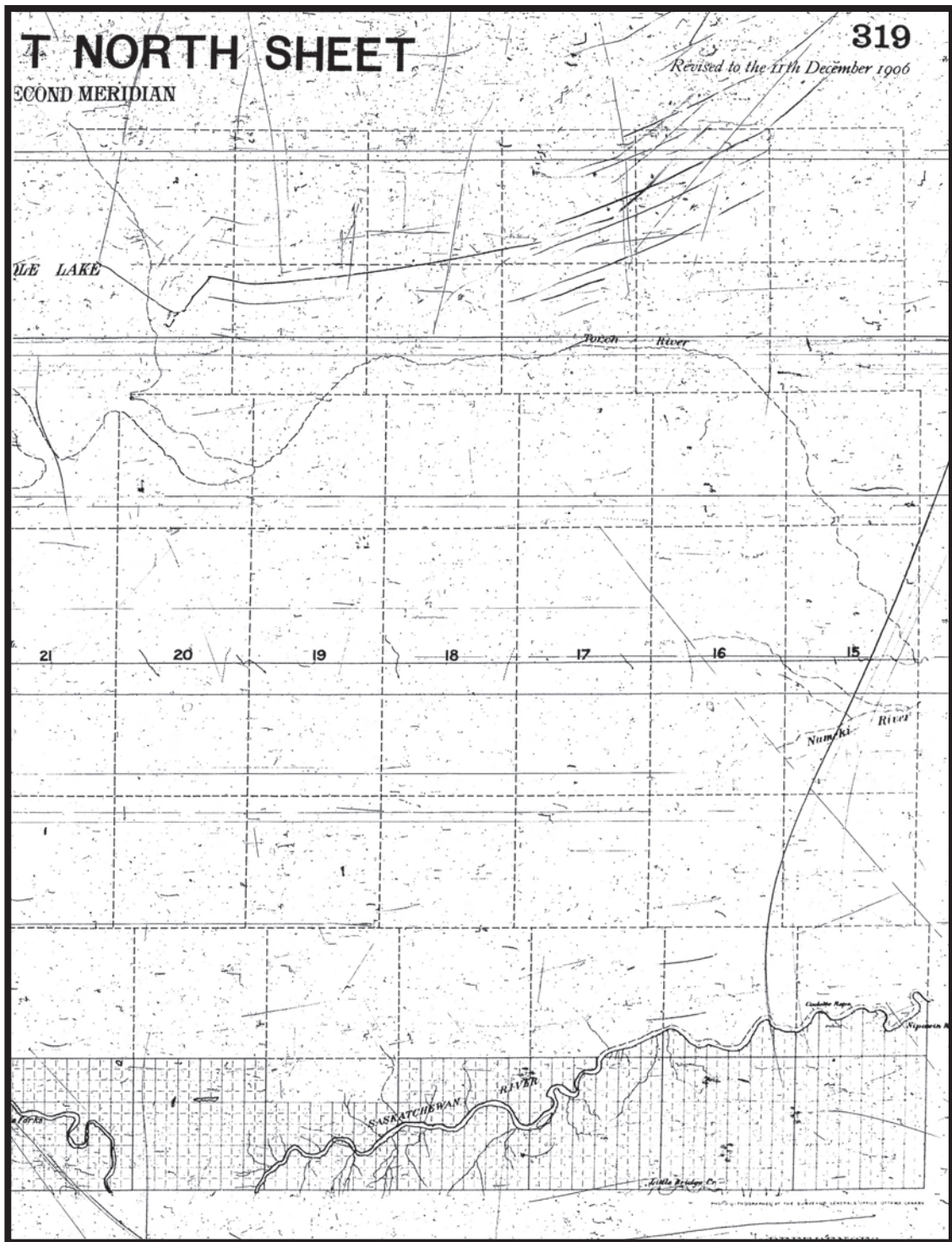
Appendix 3, Figure 1: The 1918 Prince Albert North Sheet, Sectional Map #319. (SAB A11/8) [Forest Reserve boundaries and trails highlighted].	1
Appendix 3, Figure 2: Trails from the 1918 Sectional Sheet (red) superimposed on the trails from the 1966 NTS sheet (yellow). (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa) & (SAB A11/8 Sheet 319, 1918)	2
Appendix 3, Figure 3: The 1906 Prince Albert North Sheet, Sectional Map #319. (SAB Micro 6.6) [no trails on the map].	3
Appendix 3, Figure 4: The 1908 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted].	4
Appendix 3, Figure 5: The 1911 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted].	5
Appendix 3, Figure 6: The 1914 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted].	6



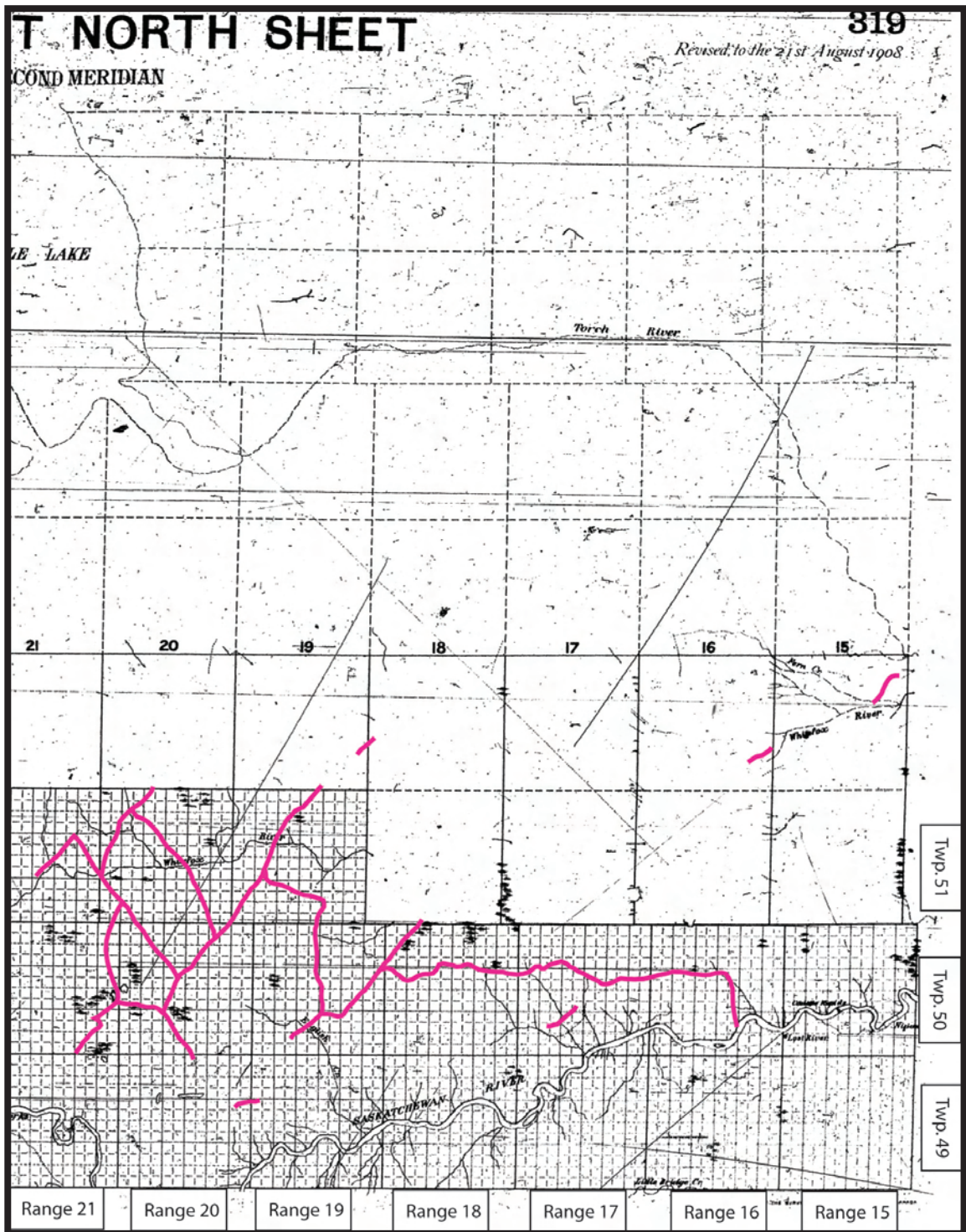
Appendix 3, Figure 1: The 1918 Prince Albert North Sheet, Sectional Map #319. (SAB A11/8) [Forest Reserve boundaries and trails highlighted].



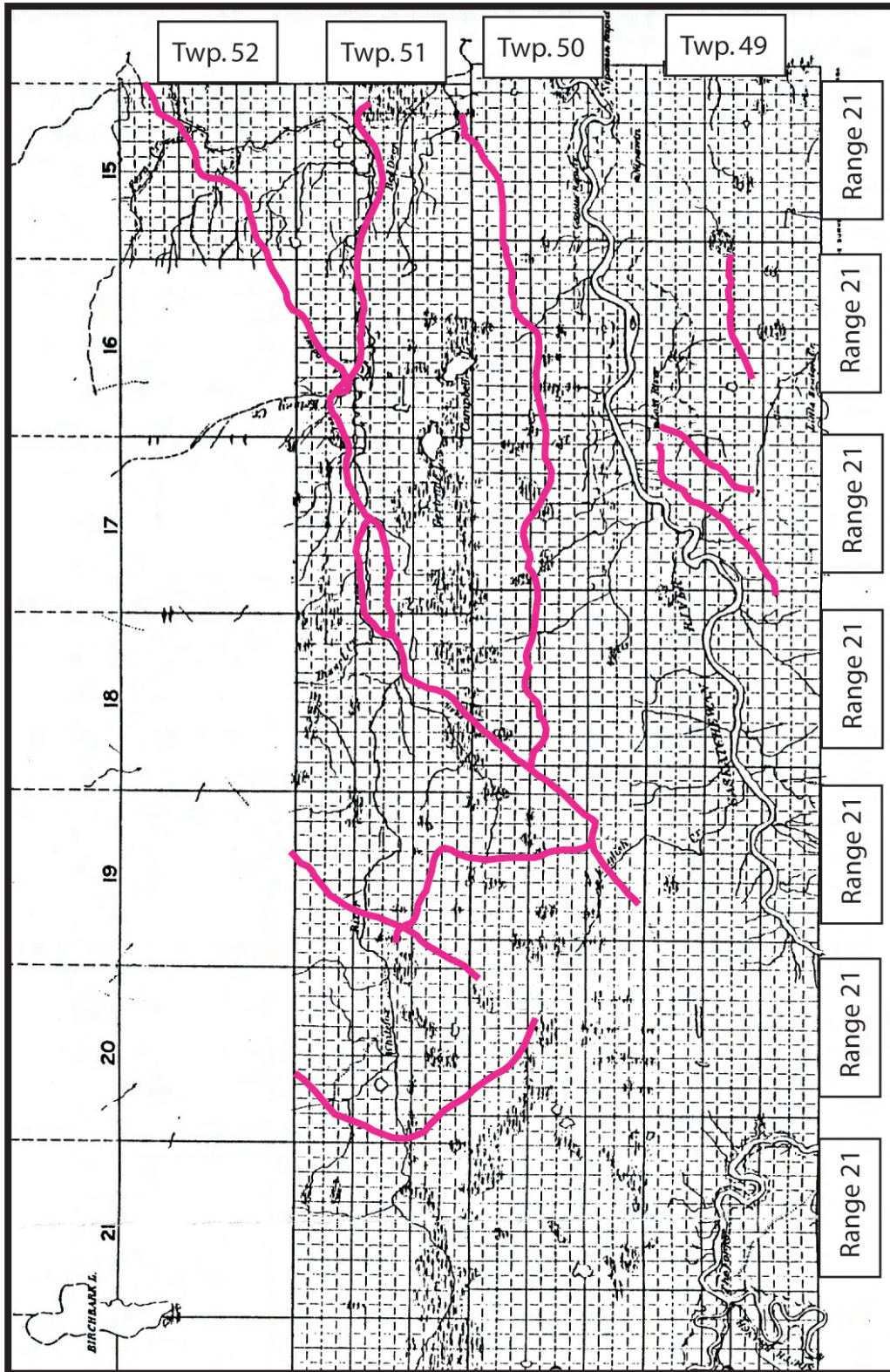
Appendix 3, Figure 2: Trails from the 1918 Sectional Sheet (red) superimposed on the trails from the 1966 NTS sheet (yellow). (NTS sheet: Prince Albert 73 H, 2nd ed. Mines and Technical Surveys, Ottawa) & (SAB A11/8 Sheet 319, 1918)



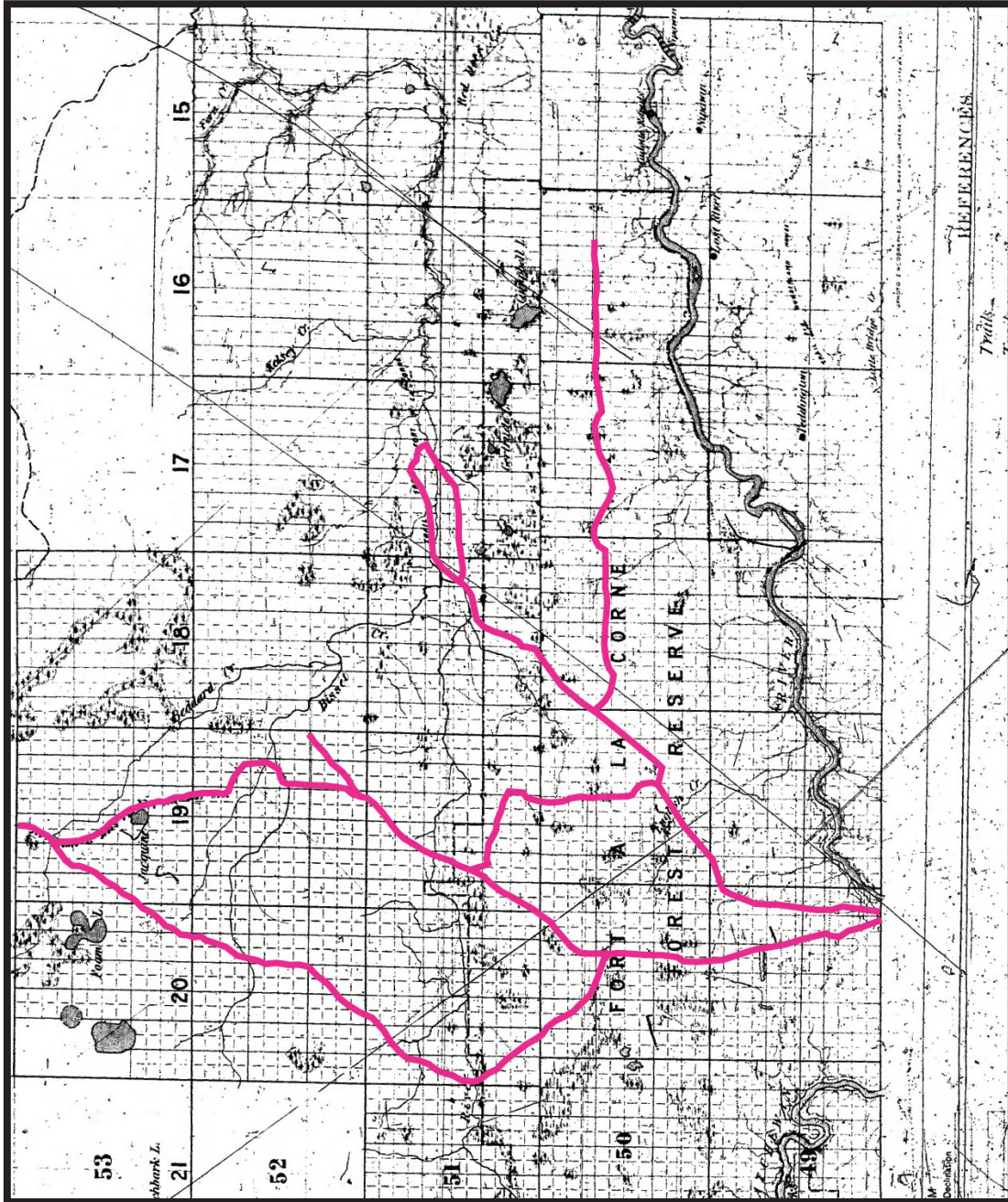
Appendix 3, Figure 3: The 1906 Prince Albert North Sheet, Sectional Map #319.
(SAB Micro 6.6) [no trails on the map].



Appendix 3, Figure 4: The 1908 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted].



Appendix 3, Figure 5: The 1911 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted].



Appendix 3, Figure 6: The 1914 Prince Albert North Sheet Sectional Map #319 (SAB Micro 6.6). [trails highlighted].

In “Appendix 2: Townships” there are also references to the following listed trails. Some of these trails are identified in the specific township descriptions. The descriptions given here do not include the seasonal “winter trails” that are shown on the Forestry Maps.

Birchbark Trail

Description

- This trail is 3 miles in length and runs north- south in the northwest corner of the reserve.
- It may be part of the traditional Birchbark Lake to the La Corne trail.

Maps

- 1928, 1931, 1936 Forestry Maps show the Birchbark Trail leads south from sect 7-51-21 9 (probably from the Whitefox Trail) across the Whitefox River to the Division Road in Sect 20 50-21.
- not on the 1918 Sectional map or the 1939 Fire Protection map

Candle Lake – Fort a la Corne Trail

Description

- None of the maps show a trail between Candle and Birchbark Lake and La Corne. Instead, the trail labeled “Candle Lake Trail” leads directly north from La Corne to the Torch River.
- From 1850 on the HBC at La Corne had a winter fishery at Candle Lake. The trail went by Birchbark Lake. The sectional maps do not show a trail leading from the Whitefox River directly northwest to Birchbark and Candle Lakes. Instead the Candle Lake trail leading north from La Corne divided in Twp. 50, then the two branches crossing the Whitefox River rejoining about 15 miles north in Twp. 53. There is no information available for the Townships north of this junction.
- The East crossing of the Whitefox River was where both the Whitefox forestry cabin and the Game Guardian Cabin were built. This would indicate a high potential for a traditional camp ground.

References

SAB R.183 I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921”
[fieldwork done in 1920]

Report on Tp. 51 R. 20 W. of 2nd Mer

- pg 60: “A wagon trail running northerly from Fort-a-La-Corne enters the township [Twp 51 - 20] on the S. Bdy. of sec. 5, runs northerly through secs. 5, 7, 18, 19, 30, 29 and leaves this township near the quarter section corner on the N, Bdy of sec. 33. This trail is in fair condition but in some places is blocked by wind

fall. The Meath Park route is the best means of access to the township.”

Maps

The Candle Lake Trail is identified on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 Forestry maps.

- The portion within the reserve is shown on the 1939 Fire Protection map
- The Candle Lake Trail starts on the north side of the Saskatchewan River opposite old Fort a la Corne in 49-20. It continues through to mid 50-20 where it splits into two then rejoins about 20 miles north on the north edge of 53-19. The west branch crosses the north reserve boundary in sect 18 51-20 and the east branch in sect 20 51-19, a mile east of the Whitefox patrol cabin.
- It is shown (with both branches) on the 1918 Sectional map where it stops at the unsurveyed twps in Twp 54.

Cumberland House – Fort a la Corne Trail

Description

- There were two trails from Fort a la Corne leading east to Cumberland House, one south of the river and one north. It is unclear if either of these were traditional trails because the fur traders used the Saskatchewan River in both the winter and the summer. The trails are not referred to until the early 1900’s.

North Side

- The trail on the north side of the Saskatchewan river follows the south side of the Whitefox River; branching off from the Torch River - Fort a la Corne Trail. On the sectional maps this trail rejoins the Torch River-Candle Lake in 51-17, and continues east on the north side of the river. However, this contradicts the Forestry maps which show it continuing east without intersecting the Torch River-Candle Lake Trail and simply follows the Whitefox River.

References

SAB R.183 I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921”
[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 12: “On the NE. quarter of section 10 of the same township (51 - 18) a connection will be found with the wagon trail leading to Ravine Bank, along the south side of the river.”

SAB R 183.XIII.3 McCloskey, M. D. 1921/22.

“Land Classification Northeast of Prince Albert”

[Fieldwork was done in 1921]

- pg 21: “The old trail from Prince Albert to Cumberland House runs along the south side of Whitefox river ... This trail is used by the settlers in the vicinity and is

becoming deeply rutted by wagon traffic.”

[McCloskey is confused as the Cumberland House Trail does not follow the Whitefox River west of the Torch River – Fort a la Corne Trail.]

Additional References

D of Int Sess 1908 Vol XLII No 13 Pap 25b Appendix 46

J. N. Wallace 1908

- pg 265: in 1906- surveying twps on 14 Baseline. Twp 52 Rg 11: “The winter mail route from Fort a la Corne to Cumberland House crosses the bogland in section 34.”

SAB R 183.XIII.3 McCloskey, M. D. 1921/22.

“Land Classification Northeast of Prince Albert”

work carried out in 1921

- pg 13: Area C [along NE border; see Twps 51-16, 51-17
“Here settlement has followed the course of the old Cumberland trail, still used by the people located in ranges 15, 16 and 17 along the Whitefox river....”

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921

[Fieldwork was done in 1920]

- pg 11: “The townships [i.e. 51, 52] in range 18 are more conveniently reached from Ravine Bank. After crossing the ferry near that place (Ravine Bank) a trail can be found running westerly.”
- pg 12: “along the south side of the Whitefox until it intersects a wagon trail leading from Fort a la Corne to the Torch river in township 51 range 18....On the NE. quarter of section 10 of the same township (51 - 18) a connection will be found with the wagon trail leading to Ravine Bank, along the south side of the river.”

Division Road

Description

- The Division Road, except for a five mile segment in 50-19 (along the old La Corne - Torch River Trail), was probably built by the forest industry. It appears, from the 1918 Sectional map that the eastern segment was built before the western portion. However, the entire Road appears on the 1923 Soils map.
- Originally, as on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 Forest maps, the term “Division” referred to the “Division Telephone Line” which generally paralleled the main car road across the reserve. The line began at the Elk Ranger Station in 50-22 across to Beaver House in the NE corner.
- The main east/west road, now called the Division Road is often labeled “Car Road” in the 1928, 1931 and 1936 forest maps. The name Division Car Road was

sometimes used east of Twp 50-20.

- In 50-22, the segment is named the Elk Creek Road (Car Road). Thereafter, it is the “Car Road.”
- These are shown on the Forestry Maps.

Telephone lines

- Sessional Paper 1923 pg 155-56: “The new headquarters of the Fort a la Corne forest reserve were connected with the reserve system by the construction of ten miles of new line. The same headquarters were given connection with the Glenmary Rural Telephone Company’s system, so that the reserve can now be reached [from] the inspector’s off.”
- The 1928, 1931 and 1936 Forest maps show a network of telephone lines between the major forestry cabins.
- The Division Telephone Line was the major east/west line running the length of the reserve. The name was also applied to the adjoining major “Car Road”.
 - The Whitefox telephone line followed the 8 mile Whitefox Road north from the main route northeast of English Cabin.
 - The Beaver House line was the eastern terminus.
 - The Lars telephone line, along the Lars Road, branched southwest from the main line in sect 8 50-20.
 - The Fort House telephone line ran south from English Cabin, across the Saskatchewan River, and four miles south to Fort House along Tepee Road. The River House telephone line followed the River Road three miles south from the Division Road in Section 23 50-17.

Elk Creek Road

- These are shown on the Forestry Maps.
- see Division Road

Elk Hay Trail

Description

- These are shown on the Forestry Maps.
- This is a 2 mile segment in the northwest portion of the Forest Reserve. It may have been associated with Barnetts Mill shown on the early Forest Reserve maps in Section 23 Twp 50 Rg 22.

English Creek Trail

Description

- These are shown on the Forestry Maps.
- This is the southern portion of the Torch River - Fort a la Corne Trail. It is marked on the Forestry maps linking the main Candle Lake trail with English Cabin on Division Road.

Gertrude Trail

Description

- These are shown on the Forestry Maps.
- The Gertrude Trail is a forestry trail between Gertrude and Campbell Lakes joining the Division Road and the Cumberland Trail.
- There were two Gertrude Lake trails: The Gertrude Pack Trail and the Gertrude Lake Trail. They ran north from the Division Road on either side of Gertrude Lake in the northeast corner of the Reserve.

Fishing Lake/Hudson Bay and Pacific Railway Trail

Description

- This trail ran northeast of Prince Albert to Big Sandy Lake. It was originally cut in 1910 by surveyors marking out a proposed route for a railway project that was then abandoned. Although the trail lies to the north of the Forest Reserve, part of it may have followed a pre-existing, traditional trail leading north from La Corne.

References

Abrams 1966: 176

- ... the company surveyed 150 miles in a direct line from Prince Albert towards Churchill in 1910. By the end of that year, it had obtained approval of 60 miles of its route by the Dominion Government ...

Sessional Papers 1913 Vol XLVI, No. 19. Paper No. 25b

Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch. Appendix No. 42.

Abstract of the Report of E W Robinson, DLS

- In Sect 35, Rge 18 Twp 56, the Base line crossed “the located line of the Hudson Bay Pacific railway, which commences at Prince Albert ... At present the only means of access is by a wagon road leading from Fort a la Corne. This road crosses the Base line in section 33, range 18 [Twp 56], and passes south through a rolling sand-ridge country....

D of Int Sess 1915 Vol 20 Pap 25b

Martindale 1915

- pg 144- The railway trail runs NE of P.A. crossing 14th Base line in Rge 21, the 15th in Rge 18, and the 16th in Rge 16. The end of the trail is reported to be about 15 miles north of its crossing of the 16th Base line. “ This road has practically been never used, except by a few trappers since it was cut. It is joined a few miles north of Torch River by a road from Fort a la Corne.”

SAB R 183.I.113 William Christie

- memo. Christie to Deville, Sept. 25, 1915, Prince Albert

- re Twp 52 Rg 21: the location line of the Hudson’s Bay and Pacific Railway crosses the Twp from sect 6 to sect 36; a wagon road was opened by the railway surveyors also crosses the Twp parallel to the railway line. “In places their road is good while in others it is very bad”.

The Village of Love

<http://www.sasktelwebsite.net/lovesask/History.html>

- A third trail known as the “Big Bear Road”, ran north from the Junction of the Fishing Lakes and Narrow Hills Trails, to Big Sandy Lake. This trail was sometimes referred to as the “CPR” or “Hudson Bay” Trail, since it was cleared in the early 1900’s by surveyors from the Canadian Pacific Railroad and the Hudson Bay Company.
- The two companies were trying to establish a railroad route that would run from Prince Albert through to Port Churchill, Manitoba. The Hudson Bay planned to build a big trading post along the way at Big Sandy Lake, which at that time was known as Big Bear Lake. The plan failed, however, when engineers encountered large muskegs at the south end of Big Sandy. They were forced to transfer their efforts to a new route farther east, but the clearing of the trail created access to the area for trapping and fishing.
- Old-timers relate stories of the hardships and tragedy which befell the surveyors when storms and dwindling supplies caused the loss of many of their horses. Broken boards and harnesses can still be found to this day in the bogs south of Big Sandy.
- There has been little permanent settlement in the Fishing Lakes region. This is largely because the main water routes of the Churchill and Saskatchewan Rivers bypass it. However, the area, with its abundant wildlife, has always been a rich source of livelihood for all who used it.
- The first records date from the early 1900’s, when as many as twenty families from Fort a la Corne and Little Red River, located on the southern fringes of the forest belt, made annual winter trips up to upper Fishing Lake by horse and travios. Others made their treks from the west, around East Trout Lake and Nipamew Lake.
- Such people as Joe and William Head, Sam Brittain and Alex Daniels used the

Narrow Hills and Fishing Lakes trails to reach the area. Once there, they camped on the Jack pine ridges to hunt, fish and trap throughout the winter months. They know the Narrow Hills as "Elk Mountain" and it has been said that one hundred and thirty-five Elk were taken in one winter.

- These annual treks were continued until 1945. Often the men left their families at Upper Fishing Lake and moved North to trap the Churchill River country, bringing the furs south to sell to the traders at Fort a la Corne. These treks were not without a great price, however. One of these early trappers, a man by the name of Sam Brittain, saw his young children die of pneumonia here. He buried them close to the east shore of Upper Fishing Lake. The graves remained there up until 1974, when new rights of way were cleared to straighten the Hansen Lake road. The Department of Highways moved the graves to Fort a la Corne.
- During the great depression, when the lean years hit the prairies, more people headed north to the Narrow Hills area to trap. But even by the early part of the 1920's, several white trappers had joined the Native Indians in the area.

Lars Car Road

Description

- This is marked only on the Forestry maps.
- There was a telephone line along this road which connected the Lars Headquarters, south of the river, with the main Division Road about 8 miles north.

Pack Trail

References

D of Int Sess 1908 Vol 13 Pap 25b

Wallace 1908

surveying twps along 14th Base line

- pg 265: Twp 52 Rge 18: A pack trail from Whitefox river to Torch river crosses section 36.

NOTE: This is the trail that leaves north from the main La Corne - Torch/Cumberland trail in the SE corner of 51 - 18. It is shown on the 1923 Land Classification map but not on the Sectional maps.

Prince Albert - Whitefox River Trail

Description

- McCloskey in 1920 describes the trail leading east from Meath Park along the north side of the Whitefox River to Candle Lake - Fort a la Corne Trail in 51-20.

From here McCloskey cut a trail east into Range 19. This trail to the west must be

a recent trail, after the village of Meath Park was established, since it is not indicated on the Sectional Maps.

References

SAB R.183.I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert.”

Ottawa, March 30, 1921

[fieldwork done in 1920]

- pg 11: The Whitefox River country is reached by following a wagon trail leading easterly from Meath Park, crossing the Whitefox at a ford on the N.W. quarter of section 21 township 51 range 22. From here the trail runs easterly along the north side of the river. It is in fairly good condition as far as Kyle’s ranch, on section 20 township 51 range 20 where it formerly terminated. From this point we opened out the trail as far as the east boundary of section 21 township 51 range 19.

Torch River – Fort a la Corne Trail

Description

- These trails are shown on the 1918 Sectional map, the 1923 Soil map and the 1928, 1931 and 1936 Forestry Maps: 3.5 miles NE of English Cabin, the main trail from the south (probably the original historic trail) branches, the northeasterly one, named the Torch River Trail leaving the Twp in sect 25. The other, the Division Road, runs easterly, leaving in sect 24.
- On the Forestry Maps, the Torch River Trail continues through the NW corner of 50-18, into 51-18 where it continues NE along the Whitefox River, crossing it in sect 19, 51-17.
- This trail is marked on the 1911 and later Sectional Maps and the Forestry Maps.
- This trail separates from the main Candle Lake Trail in 49-20 running northeast across English Creek.
- English Creek was the later location for the Forestry Tower and English Cabin. This would suggest a traditional camp ground.
- Immediately after English Creek the trail branches; one leading north and north west to join the Candle Lake Trail again just south of Whitefox River.
- Several miles further another trail branched off leading eastward out of the reserve. This portion of the trail later became part of the Division Road.
- The Torch River trail, after the previous junction, continues northeast to the Whitefox River. where it again divides. One trail follows south of the Whitefox River and is called the “Cumberland Trail” on some maps. The other branch, follows the north side of of the Whitefox River to Kelsey Creek where it strikes northeast overland to the Torch River.



Additional References

SAB R.183 I.290 M.D. McCloskey

“Land Classification Survey in the district north of Prince Albert. Ottawa, March 30, 1921”
[fieldwork done in 1920]

White Fox Trail

Description

- This does not appear on the sectional maps.
- It shows on the Forestry Maps and follows the north side of the Whitefox River west along the north boundary of the reserve.
- It may have been the traditional travel route along the Whitefox.

The Fort a la Corne Forest Area: a Survey of the Historical Documents

Appendix 3: Section 2: Cabins

*Prepared For
Shore Gold*

*Prepared By
Amanda Boechler &
Dale Russell*

Western Heritage Services, Inc

*322 Duchess Street
Saskatoon, SK S7K 0R1
tel: 306-975-3860
fax: 306-934-2572*



August 2007



Table of Contents

Barnetts Mill	1
Beaver House: Original Site	1
Beaver House: Second Site.....	2
Elk House.....	2
Elk House Tower.....	3
English Cabin: Original Site	3
English Cabin: Second Site.....	3
English Cabin Tower.....	4
Fort House Cabin and Tower Site	5
Game Guardian Cabins	5
Jail Camp	6
Lars Headquarters Cabin and Tower.....	6
Lars Tower	7
Melfort Ferry, Old, Gronlid	8
Poplar Creek Cabin	9
River House: Original Site.....	9
River House: Second Site	10
Stable Site, Old	11
Torch River Cabin.....	11



Twin Lakes Cabin	12
Wapiti Cabin	12
Wapiti Campsite.....	13
White Fox Cabin	13

Barnetts Mill

Description

An old mill is shown on the early Forest Reserve maps in Section 23 Twp 50 Rg.22. Nothing more is known of it.

Beaver House: Original Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 1 Twp 51 Rg 16 (this is a 1/4 mile outside the northeast corner of the Forest Reserve)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5914630.816

EAST: 552053.673

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 22 41.59 N

LON: 104 13 2.98 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 23

BEAVER HOUSE: (Original Site)

- “A patrol cabin and fire tower were established here in 1926. Today, only an open area with surrounding spruce remains.”

Garrick History Committee, 1990

- pg 39: [Because of the increase in the number of fires due to settlement, a small log cabin was built in NE1/4 1-51-16 W2 in 1924. Apparently, Jack Brown was the first ranger and he named it after the P.O. four miles east. A phone line went to Kinistino and Prince Albert. Seemingly there were signs that a squatter had been there earlier, perhaps just before the war.
- pg 39 (photo): “Beaver house (built in 1927). Burnt, 1987.”
- pg 40: “In 1927, a new house was built and the steel tower was moved from River House to Beaver House. This tower stood, a landmark, for over 50 years. It was taken down in the mid-eighties. A replica stands in the Regional Park at Nipawin. The original log cabin is also in the park.”

[mentions emergency phone line “from River House, English Cabin, Kinistino”.

- pg 40: [by at least 1964, the field headquarters were at Beaver House

Beaver House: Second Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Twp 50 Rg 17 (This is too recent to show on any of the forestry maps)

[Hartwell identifies this location as being close to Hwy. 6. about 10 miles west of the original Beaver House]

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5910455.319

EAST: 536271.040

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 20 31.22 N

LON: 104 27 18.77 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 22

BEAVER HOUSE: (MOST RECENT LOCATION)

- “During the summer of 2001, strong winds had blown down the fire tower. Currently, it is uncertain whether or not the tower will be replaced.”

Saskatchewan Environment 1999, Chapter Two: no pagination

- “In the plan area, a district office was established at English Cabin in 1924, and at Beaver House in 1926. Patrol cabins were set up at Poplar Creek, River House and Wapiti”

Elk House

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 8 Twp 50 Rg 22

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5905829.694

EAST: 487003.822

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 18 5.44 N

LON: 105 11 42.05 W



Description

- Elk Ranger Station with a 80’ steel tower was in NW 1/4 sect 8 50-22 and is on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 forest maps.

- it is shown on the 1939 Fire map as “Elk Tower & cabin”.
- The 1928/31 map shows it was then outside the reserve but within the proposed addition marked on the 1938 map.
- A “Lookout” is shown here on the 1966 NTS topo. map and “Fire” on the 1985 NTS topo map.

References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 16

- “Originally, this site featured a patrol cabin and fire tower. No remains were found at the site.”

Elk House Tower

References

DNR History 1994: 77

Grant Fladager: in summer of 1948 was at Elk House firetower

English Cabin: Original Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 9 Twp 50 Rg 19

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5905433.612

EAST: 518737.587

LATITUDE-LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 17 52.00 N

LON: 104 43 7.88 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 26

ORIGINAL ENGLISH CABIN SITE

- “Found near the junction of Inland Road and Division Road, a foundation of a cabin remains.”

English Cabin: Second Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 9 Twp 50 Rg 19

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5905037.045

EAST: 518450.932

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 17 39.21 N

LON: 104 43 23.45 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 27

ENGLISH CABIN SITE

- “A log structure was built here in 1924 and was often used by settlers as a stop-over point. The site was used as a picnic area and still has significant local interest. A sign acknowledges the area.”

Saskatchewan Environment 1999, Chapter Two: no pagination

- “In the plan area, a district office was established at English Cabin in 1924, and at Beaver House in 1926. Patrol cabins were set up at Poplar Creek, River House and Wapiti”

English Cabin Tower

Description

English Cabin and its 80’ tower is shown on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 forestry maps and the 1939 fire map.

References

Garrick History Committee, 1990

- pg 40: [In 1964, William Matthews was stationed as Towerman at English Cabin Tower. He mentions a “jail crew” based three miles east.

DNR History 1994: 204

- re Jack McGunigal: was at English Cabin in winter of 1947/48

NR 5.2.B.3.g Memo. W. W. Whelan, Chief Inspector to R. T. Cook, DNR. July 24th, 1935.

- [Whelan says in his report “last winter” to the Deputy Minister, that he had recommended “to put a full-time man at English cabin.”

DNR History 1994: 315

- re Henry Weigel: was a towerman at English Cabin in 1974. Supposedly there was a ghost at old English Cabin but it was torn down by the time he started there. During Weigel’s period, the tower was moved five miles south and west to a higher location, thus eliminating Fort House and Lars towers.

Fort House Cabin and Tower Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 27 Twp 48 Rg 19 (South of the Saskatchewan River)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5890518.417

EAST: 520079.234

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 9 49.17 N

LON: 104 41 58.80 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 3

FORT HOUSE TOWER: CABIN SITE

- “In 1915, Fort House Tower was established. Then, in 1918 to 1920, it was destroyed by fire. Later, an adjacent picnic site was established in 1967 and then closed in 1981. Today, only caragana and spruce surround the site.”

DNR History 1994: 20

- mentions Axel Bergren at Fort Tower in 1950 where Axel continued for 14 or 15 years with his wife, Ethel Bergren, the only female tower watcher in the Prince Albert District until 1969. Fort Tower was closed about 1983.

DNR History 1994: 315

- re Henry Weigel: was a towerman at English Cabin beginning in 1974. During Weigel’s period, the tower was moved five miles south and west to a higher location, thus eliminating Fort House and Lars towers.

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2006: 4

FORT HOUSE TOWER: TOWER SITE

- The tower was located just uphill from the cabin. No structural remains were found.

Game Guardian Cabins

Description

There is almost no information about DNR activities in the reserve except for several locations identified as cabins on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 Forestry Maps.

A Game Guardian Cabin was located in the centre of sect 20-51-19, on the south shore of

the river, opposite the White Fox Forestry Cabin.

Another Game Guardian Cabin was located on the north shore of the Forks, in the middle of sect 24-49-22.

Jail Camp

Location from Hartwell 2001

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5906750.120

EAST: 521277.161



LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 18 34.26 N

LON:104 40 50.39 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 18

JAIL CAMP

- “Established in 1955, “Operation Pine Tree” was set up by the Provincial Corrections Branch. The inmates conducted forestry related work, reforestation, release work of unwanted poplar and mistletoe slashing. In 1963-64 it was phased out and moved to White Gull Creek. Today, several structures remain, including a few cement foundations and a loading ramp.”

Lars Headquarters Cabin and Tower

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 35 Twp 48 Rg21 (this is south of the Saskatchewan River)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5892296.301

EAST: 501823.585

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 10 48.05 N

LON: 104 58 21.77 W



References

Sessional Paper 1923

- pg 155-56: “The new headquarters of the Fort a la Corne forest reserve were connected with the reserve system by the construction of ten miles of new line. The



same headquarters were given connection with the Glenmary Rural Telephone Company's system, so that the reserve can now be reached [from] the inspector's off."

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 7

LARS HEADQUARTERS: BUILDING LOCATION

- "A patrol cabin and fire tower were built here in the early 1900's. Then, in the 1930's, a picnic site was constructed just west of the headquarters featuring an outdoor dance floor. However, in 1944, a cyclone destroyed the tower. The tower was later rebuilt, then closed in 1983. Only an open space surrounded by spruce and pine remains today."

Glen Mary, Horseshoe Bend Historical Society, 1980:

In 1907, Lars Hendricks operated a sawmill west of the forestry house

- pg 33: "This is how Lars Headquarters got its name. The first forestry building in here, was on the site of the cairn on the picnic grounds today. This was just a cabin This building was later moved to the headquarters and used as an office. [The first headquarters was at River House, built in 1915, but in 1920, a fire burnt it down and, in 1921, it was moved to "the present headquarters north of Kinistino in Glen Mary..."]"
- pg 35: "During the Depression the staff of the forestry was cut down to one forest ranger, the rest were laid off. [various buildings were sold off] "the only original building left is the residence occupied by the present ranger, Axel Bergren. [lists the various rangers, including Hal Knudson]."
- "In 1944 the tower was wrecked by a cyclone and had to be rebuilt. "

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 8

LARS HEADQUARTERS: TOWER LOCATION

- A portion of the cement foundation and guide-wires (three or four) remain. The tower site is located adjacent to main road which passes through the building site.

Lars Tower

References

DNR History 1994: 315

- re Henry Weigel: was a towerman at English Cabin beginning in 1974. During Weigel's period, the tower was moved five miles south and west to a higher location, thus eliminating Fort House and Lars towers.

Melfort Ferry, Old, Gronlid

Location from Hartwell 2001

(these locations place it at the “Gronlid” crossing):

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5897086.472

EAST: 519715.547

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 13 21.76 N

LON: 104 42 16.92 W



Description

The unnamed ferry crossing, north of Gronlid, is shown on Hwy #6 at the neck of land on the Prince Albert 73 H 1:250 topo map. This supposedly shows “Information depicted current as 1955”.

References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell 2001: 2

OLD MELFORT FERRY

- “Built in 1931, the ferry house and most of the ferry itself were destroyed when the river-ice broke-up in 1952. No structural remains of the crossing were found. Only an open area surrounded by caraganas exists today.”

Gronlid and District Historical Society, 1991

- pg 31: [at the end of the war, Hwy #6 was extended to Gronlid from Melfort] With the destruction of the old Melfort Ferry in the 1952 river ice jam, north of Lars Tower [?] in the Fort a la Corne Reserve, there was a prolonged period, where there was no summer access to the north country. [With the development of the Hanson Lake Road north of Smeaton] “people in this area felt neglected by not having a suitable river crossing anymore. ... In 1960, the government partially met the demand by designating a spot where the ferry was eventually to be and built a road on either side of it, in so much that at least there was a winter access from the south to the town of Choiceland. The ferry was put into service in 1964.... In 1978, a contract was let out to construct the George Willis Bridge, opening in 1980, one mile west of the ferry crossing. [And the highway was rerouted]
- Note: there are two photos: “Melfort Ferry, Fort a la Corne, aftermath of the 1952 ice jam”, “Typical summer traffic at the Gronlid Ferry”.
- pg 96/97: Timeline of local events:
 - 1945 - request highway through Gronlid
 - 1953, 1956 - request ferry across the Sask River
 - 1960 - “Road started to the Saskatchewan River”



1964 - "Gronlid ferry officially opened"

Glen Mary, Horseshoe Bend Historical Society, 1980

- pg 36: [1952] "This was the year that ... the ferry at Gronlid and two sawmills were destroyed."

Poplar Creek Cabin

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 23 Twp 50 Rg 18 (this is on the Division Road)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5909590.255

EAST: 531610.727

LATITUDE-LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 20 4.60 N

LON: 104 31 31.06 W

Description

Poplar Creek Patrol Cabin is shown on the 1928, 1931, 1936 and 1939 forestry maps.

References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 29

POPLAR CREEK CABIN

- "Just west of the original English Cabin, Poplar Creek Cabin was built. The cabin was later destroyed by fire. No remains of the cabin were found." [Hartwell apparently is in error, the site is just east of English Cabin]

Saskatchewan Environment 1999, Chapter Two: no pagination

- "In the plan area, a district office was established at English Cabin in 1924, and at Beaver House in 1926. Patrol cabins were set up at Poplar Creek, River House and Wapiti"

River House: Original Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 12 Twp 50 Rg 17 (on the north shore of the Saskatchewan River)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5905129.585

EAST: 542287.067

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 17 37.28 N

LON: 104 21 56.05 W

References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 24

RIVER HOUSE: Original Site

- “Established in 1913 by Federal Forestry as a patrol cabin and tower, it moved in 1926 to Beaver House. The original two story log cabin burnt down in the 50’s. A second cabin was built and often used by snowmobilers in the 80’s then burned down in 1993-94. Today, a partial cement foundation remains (secluded in trees adjacent to access road) along with an unofficial camp site within close proximity to foundation. Near the edge of the hill facing the river, a partial cement foundation features a hole where a flag pole was standing.”

Sessional Papers 1916:

- pg 43-45: “Orders have been [in 1914-15] given to construct a wooden lookout tower at the River Cabin.”

Garrick History Committee, 1990

- pg 39: At River House there was “a large two-storied log house and barn which was built in 1910.”
- pg 40: [William Matthews, stationed at English Cabin Tower in 1964, says that “The patrol cabin at River House was maintained in a habitable condition.”
- pg 40: “In 1927, a new house was built and the steel tower was moved from River House to Beaver House. This tower stood, a landmark, for over 50 years. It was taken down in the mid-eighties.”

River House: Second Site

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 12 Twp 50 Rg 17 (on the north shore of the Saskatchewan River)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5905216.291

EAST: 542465.149

LATITUDE-LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 17 40.04 N



LON: 104 21 46.39 W

References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 25

RIVER HOUSE SITE: Second Site

- “This site is located previous to the original River House site. Only a cement foundation remains today.”

Saskatchewan Environment 1999, Chapter Two: no pagination

- “In the plan area, a district office was established at English Cabin in 1924, and at Beaver House in 1926. Patrol cabins were set up at Poplar Creek, River House and Wapiti”

Stable Site, Old

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 1 Twp 49 Rg 21 (this is on the north side of the Saskatchewan River at the beginning of Lars Road across from Lars Headquarters)

UTM ZONE 13

NORTH: 5893579.080

EAST: 503619.844

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE

LAT: 53 11 29.53 N

LON: 104 56 44.96 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 19

- “This site is found approximately 1KM west of the main entry road.”

Torch River Cabin

Location

Section 10 Twp 51 Rg 18

Description

The 1939 Fire Protection Map (appendix 1 Map 39) shows the “Torch River Cabin” in section 10 Twp.51 Rg 18. It is not marked on any of the 1928, 1931, or 1936 Forestry Maps. No other Information could be located.

Twin Lakes Cabin

Location from Hartwell 2001
Section 18 Twp 50 Rg 20

UTM ZONE 13
NORTH: 5909389.652
EAST: 503853.445

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE
LAT: 53 20 1.16 N
LON: 104 56 31.68 W



Description

Twin Lakes Cabin is on the 1928, 1931, 1936 and 1939 forest maps. It was located on the Division Road near the middle of the north edge of sect 18, 50-20.

References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 17
TWIN LAKES CABIN

- Hartwell 2006:17 has no background information on this cabin. He simply says, “this site is believed to be the most likely location of where a patrol cabin was built.”

Garrick History Committee, 1990

- pg 40: William Matthews, stationed at English Cabin Tower in 1964, says that “The cabins at Twin Lakes and Poplar Creek were still standing but not maintained.”

Wapiti Cabin

Location from Hartwell 2001

Section 25 Twp 49 Rg 18 (north side of the Saskatchewan River. It is not marked on any of the forestry maps)

UTM ZONE 13
NORTH: 5901718.464
EAST: 532373.690

LATITUDE - LONGITUDE
LAT: 53 15 49.42 N
LON: 104 30 52.71 W



References

SERM Report. Curt Hartwell. 2001: 10

WAPITI CABIN

- “Wapiti Cabin was originally established as a patrol cabin.”

Saskatchewan Environment 1999, Chapter Two: no pagination

- “In the plan area, a district office was established at English Cabin in 1924, and at Beaver House in 1926. Patrol cabins were set up at Poplar Creek, River House and Wapiti”

Wapiti Campsite

References

Garrick History Committee, 1990

- pg 40: William Matthews, stationed at English Cabin Tower in 1964, says that in 1965 Wapiti Campsite “across from the Gronlid Ferry” was built in 1965 with several DNR employees assisted by a “jail crew” then located three miles east of English Cabin.

White Fox Cabin

Description

The Whitefox forestry cabin was on a quarter section on the north side of the Whitefox River. It was later abandoned, around 1939. It was close to the major river crossing of the Candle Lake trail.

- it is on the 1928, 1931 and 1936 Forestry Maps but not the 1939 Fire protection map.
- the 1918 Sectional map shows a trail crossing here joining the two branches of the Candle Lake Trail. leading NW to the
- Hartwell, 2001 does not include this site.

References

NR 5.2.B.3.g

Letter from James Hoglin. March 19, 1930

[wants permission to squat on and later take up a homestead on NE 1/4 Sect 19, 51, 19, W.2nd]

- “There are some cabins - forestry cabins, on this quarter which I would buy if you consent to sell”

Letter Finlayson, Director of Forestry to District Forest Inspector at PA. April 2, 1930

- Finlayson thinks they should keep the above land as “it is used as an administra-



tive site even though it is north of the Whitefox River.”

Letter. J Smart to the Director of Forestry. April 15, 1930

- He doesn't want to give up the property: “The White Fox Ranger station (one of the most important stations of the Fort a la Corne districts during the summer months) is located on this land.”

NR 5.2.B.3.g

Letter. District Superintendent to Director of Forests, Nov 15, 1938

- re: portions of NE 19 and SE 19 - 51 - 19 W2nd, lying north of the Whitefox River]
- He now recommends that this property be withdrawn from the Forest Reserve and be made available for settlement.
- An Inspector's report is included in the file which shows the following structures, both in poor condition, in the centre of the NW of NE 1/4 sect 19 - Tp 51 - Rg 19 W2nd:
 - 14' x 16' log shingled cabin
 - 14' x 14' log shingled barn

The Fort a la Corne Forest Area: a Survey of the Historical Documents

Bibliography

Section 1: Published Sources

Section 2: Other Consulted Sources



August 2007



BIBLIOGRAPHY. SECTION ONE: Published Sources

- Abrams, Gary
1966 Prince Albert: the first century. 1866-1966. Saskatoon: Modern Press.
- Allan, George T.
1841 Journal of a voyage from Fort Vancouver, Columbia to York Factory, Hudson's Bay, 1841. B.C. Archives A/B/40/A15.3A (typescript).
- Back, George (C. Stuart Houston, editor), ed.
1994 Arctic artist : the journal and paintings of George Back, midshipman with Franklin, 1819-1822. Montréal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Beaumont, Raymond M.
1992 Origins and influences: the family ties of the Reverend Henry Budd. Prairie Forum 17(2):167-200.
- Belyea, Barbara
2000 A year inland: the journal of a Hudson's Bay Company Winterer. Waterloo: Wilfred Laurier Press.
- Bird, James
1815 Sketch of Carlton District by Jas. Bird. Undated [1815] HBC Archives. G.1/27.
- Brown, Jennifer S. H.
1979 George Sutherland. In Dictionary of Canadian Biography. F.G. Halpenny, ed. Pp. 726-727, Vol. Volume IV, 1771 to 1800. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Budd, Henry (Katherine Pettipas, editor),
1974 The diary of the Reverend Henry Budd, 1870-1875. Winnipeg: Hignell.
- Burpee, Lawrence J.
1908b The search for the western sea : the story of the exploration of North-Western America / by Lawrence J. Burpee. London: Alston Rivers.
- Burpee, Lawrence J. (editor)
1907 York Factory to the Blackfeet Country: The Journal of Anthony Hendry [sic], 1754-55. Proceedings and Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada Series III 1(2):307-361.
1908a An Adventurer from Hudson Bay: Being the Journal of a Journey Performed by Matthew Cocking, 1772-1773. Proceedings and Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada, Third Series 2 (2):91-121.
- Butala, Sharon
2005 Lilac moon : dreaming of the real West. Toronto: HarperCollins.
- Butler, Sir William Francis
1968a The Great Lone Land. Rutland: Charles E. Tuttle.
1968b The Wild North Land; Being the Story of a Winter Journey, with Dogs, across Northern North America. Edmonton: Hurtig.Canada



- 1913 The Canada Gazette. Supplement. Chap. 18. An Act to amend the Dominion Forest Reserves and Parks Act, pp. 22-24. June 21, 1913.
- 1973 Map Shewing Mounted Police Stations & Patrols 1888. Commemorating Royal Canadian Mounted Police Centennial 1873-1973. Ottawa: Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. Survey and Mapping Branch.
- Canada. Department of Indian Affairs
- 1885 Plan, Indian Reserve, Chief James Smith, at Fort a la Corne. Treaty No. 6, Carlton District. I.R. No. 100. Certified correct, A.W. Ponton, Dominion Land Surveyor, Indian Office, Regina, March 19th, 1885.
- Canada. Department of the Interior
- 1925-1930 Annual reports of the Department of the Interior. Bound in one volume. Ottawa.
- Canada. Parliament
- 1907-1925 Sessional Papers ... of the Dominion of Canada.
- Champagne, Antoine
- 1971 Nouvelles Etudes sur Les La Vérendrye et le Poste de l'Ouest. Volume Vol.17. Quebec: Les Cahiers de L'Institute D'Histoire. Les Presses de l'Université Laval.
- CMS, Church Missionary Society, London
- 1849-1875 Church Missionary Intelligencer and Record. Vol. 1 - 15, 1849-1864; New Series Vol 1 - 11 (1865 - 1875).
- CMS Reel, (Church Missionary Society)
- Church Missionary Society Archive. Section V: Missions to the Americas. Part 2: North-west Canada, 1821-1880. Journals, letters and reports. Microfilm.
- Cottrell, Michael
- 2005 George Sutherland (fl. 1744-99). In Encyclopedia of Saskatchewan. Pp. 917. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, University of Regina.
- Coues, Elliott, ed.
- 1965 New Light on the History of the Greater Northwest: The Manuscript Journals of Alexander Henry and of David Thompson. Reprint (original 1897). Minneapolis: Ross & Haines.
- Douglas, David
- 1914 Journal kept by David Douglas during his travels in North America 1823-1827 : together with a particular description of thirty- three species of American oaks and eighteen species of Pinus, with appendices containing a list of the plants introduced by Douglas and an account of his death in 1834, pub.under the direction of the Royal horticultural society. London: W. Wesley.

- Drummond, George P.
1886 Descriptions of the townships of the North-West Territories, Dominion of Canada. Vol. 2. Between the third and fourth initial meridians. Ottawa: Dept. of the Interior.
- Drummond, Thomas
1830 Sketch of a journey to the Rocky Mountains and to the Columbia River in North America . Extract from Botanical Miscellany (ed. by Sir William Jackson Hooker), v. 1. [microform CIHM/ICMH ; no. 16840].
- Dubreuil, Lorraine
1988 Sectional maps of western Canada, 1871-1955: An early Canadian topographic map series. Ottawa: Association of Canadian Maps Libraries and Archives.
- Epp, Henry, ed.
1993 Three hundred prairie years: Henry Kelsey's "Inland country of good report". Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre/Saskatchewan Archaeological Society.
- Ermatinger, Edward
1912 Edward Ermatinger's York Factory express journal, being a record of journeys made between Fort Vancouver and Hudson Bay in the years 1827-1828. With introduction by Judge C.O. Ermatinger and James White. In Royal Society of Canada. Proceedings and Transactions. Third series, Vol. 6 Sect 2: 67-132.
- Fidler, Peter
(1816?) Peter Fidler's map of Rupert's Land. Beaver River and North and South Saskatchewan Rivers. 1792-1816. In Shortt Library: MSS C500/2/4.3 [Oversize].
- Fleming, R. Harvey, ed.
1940 Minutes of Council, Northern Department of Rupert Land, 1821-31. Volume III. London: The Hudson's Bay Record Society.
- Franchère, Gabriel
1969 Journal of a voyage on the North West coast of North America during the years 1811, 1812, 1813 and 1814. Volume 45. Toronto: Champlain Society,
- Franklin, Sir John
1970 Narrative of a Journey to the Shores of the Polar Sea in the Years 1819, 20, 21, and 22. Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle.
1971 Narrative of a Second Expedition to the Shores of the Polar Sea in the Years 1825, 1826, and 1827. Edmonton: M. G. Hurtig Ltd.
Franklin, Sir John (Richard C Davis editor)
1995 Sir John Franklin's Journals and Correspondence: The First Arctic Land Expedition, 1819-1822. Toronto: The Champlain Society. Vol. LIX.



- 1998 Sir John Franklin's Journals and Correspondence: The Second Arctic Land Expedition, 1825-1827. Toronto: The Champlain Society. Vol. LXI. Great Britain. Parliament. House of Commons. Select Committee on the Hudson's Bay Company
- 1857 Report from the Select Committee on the Hudson's Bay Company : together with the proceedings of the Committee, minutes of evidence, appendix and index. London: Ordered, by the House of Commons, to be printed, 31 July and 11 August 1857.
- Harmon, Daniel Williams
- 1957 Sixteen years in the Indian country : the journal of Daniel Williams Harmon, 1800-1816. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada.
- Hartwell, Curt (compiler)
- 2001 Historic sites of Fort a la Corne: Forest Ecosystems Branch, Saskatchewan Environment and Resource Management, Prince Albert, Saskatchewan.
- Henry the Elder, Alexander
- 1969 Travels and Adventures in Canada and the Indian Territories between 1760 and 1776. Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle.
- Henry the Younger, Alexander
- 1965 New Light on the History of the Greater Northwest: The Manuscript Journals of Alexander Henry and of David Thompson. Minneapolis: Ross & Haines.
- 1992 The Journal of Alexander Henry the Younger, 1799-1814. In two volumes. Volume II. The Saskatchewan and Columbia Rivers. Toronto: The Champlain Society.
- Hind, Henry Youle
- 1971 Narrative of the Canadian Red River exploring expedition of 1857 and of the Assiniboine and Saskatchewan exploring expedition of 1858. Edmonton: M. G. Hurtig.
- Hood, Robert
- 1974 To the Arctic by Canoe, 1819-1821, Journal and Paintings of Robert Hood, Midshipman with Franklin. Edited by C. Stuart Houston. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Hubble, E. W.
- 1911 [E W Hubble's fieldwork in 1909]. Sessional Papers 1911 Vol XLV, No. 17. Paper No. 25b. Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch. Appendix No. 23. p 94.
- 1912 Abstract of the Report of E W Hubbell, DLS. Sessional Papers 1912 Vol XLVI, No. 19. Paper No. 25b. Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch. Appendix No. 27. p 96.

- Hudson Bay & District Cultural Society
1982 Valley Echoes. Life along the Red Deer River Basin, 1900-1980. Winnipeg: Inter-Collegiate Press.
- Indian Claims Commission
2007 James Smith Cree Nation: treaty land entitlement inquiry. February, 2007. Ottawa.
- Johnson, Alice Margaret, ed.
1967 Saskatchewan journals and correspondence: Edmonton House 1795-1800; Chesterfield House 1800-1802. London: Hudson's Bay Record Society. Publications, Vol. 26.
- Kane, Paul
1968 Wanderings of an Artist among the Indians of North America. Edmonton: Hurtig.
- Kelsey, Henry
1929 The Kelsey papers, with an introduction by Arthur G. Doughty & Chester Martin. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada and the Public Record Office of Northern Ireland.
1994 The Kelsey papers with an introduction by John Warkentin and including the Introduction to the 1929 edition by A.G. Doughty and C. Martin. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, University of Regina.
- Klimko, Olga
1982 Fur Trade History of the Saskatchewan River 1760-1850. In Regional Overview and Research Considerations. D. Burley and D. Meyer, eds. Pp. 116-149, Vol. 3. Saskatoon: Nipawin Reservoir Heritage Study. Saskatchewan Research Council. Publication No. C-805-25-E-82.
1982 The Steamboat Era and Settlement Pattern of the Nipawin Region to 1924. In Regional Overview and Research Considerations. D. Burley and D. Meyer, eds. Pp. 244-270, Vol. 3. Saskatoon: Nipawin Reservoir Heritage Study. Saskatchewan Research Council. Publication No. C-805-25-E-82.
- Klotz, Otto J.
1884 Fieldbook. National Archives of Canada. MG 30 B13 1884 Vol.1. May 21 - June 1, 1884.
1885 Report on Exploratory Survey to Hudson's Bay, 1884. Sessional Papers 1885, Vol VII. No. 13. Dept of the Interior. pp.13-33.
- La Vérendrye, Pierre Gaultier de Varennes, sieur de
1927 Journals and letters of Pierre Gaultier de Varennes de La Vérendrye and his sons : with correspondence between the governors of Canada and the French court, touching the search for the western sea. Volume 16. Toronto: The Champlain Society.

- Lefroy, Capt. John Henry
1853 On the probable number of the native Indian population of British America: Captain J. H. Lefroy, Royal Artillery. *The Canadian Journal* April, 1853:193-198.
- Lefroy, Capt. John Henry (edited by W.S. Wallace)
1938 Sir Henry Lefroy's journey to the North-west in 1843-4. *Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada* 3rd ser., vol. 32, sect.ii:67-96.
- Legardeur de Saint-Pierre, Jacques Repentigny Legardeur de
1887 *Memoir or Summary Journal of the Expedition of Jacques Repentigny Legardeur de Saint-Pierre ... Charged with the Discovery of the Western Sea. Report on Canadian Archives* 1886 Note C:xlvi-lix.
- M'Gillivray, Duncan
1929 *The journal of Duncan M'Gillivray of the North West Company at Fort George on the Saskatchewan, 1794-5 / with introd., notes and appendix by Arthur S. Morton.* Toronto: MacMillian Co. of Canada.
- MacGregor, J. C.
1966 *Peter Fidler: Canada's Forgotten Surveyor, 1769-1822.* Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Ltd.
- Mackenzie, Sir Alexander
1971 *Voyages from Montreal ... through the Continent of North America to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans, in the Years 1789 and 1793. [original 1801].* Edmonton: M G Hurtig.
- Mandelbaum, David, G.
1979 *The Plains Cree: An Ethnographic, Historical, and Comparative Study.* Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre.
- Martindale, E. S.
1915 *Sessional Papers* 1915 Vol. 20, Paper 25b. Dept. of the Interior. pp. 142-147.
- McDougall, E. G.
1913 *Report of E. G. McDougall on lands near Fort a la Corne , Saskatchewan.* Ottawa January 4, 1912. *Sessional Papers* 1913 Vol XLVII, No. 18. Paper No. 25. Appendix No. 25. Dept of Interior. Forestry and Irrigation. Annual Report for 1911. pp 99-100.
- McInnes, William
1908 *Pasquia Hills and Lower Carrot River Region.* *Sessional Papers* 1908 Vol XIII, No 26, Dept of the Interior, pp. 41-47.
1913 *The Basins of the Nelson and Churchill Rivers: Memoir No. 30, Geological Survey, Department of Mines.* Ottawa.
1913 *Map 58A. Nelson and Churchill rivers, Saskatchewan and Manitoba.* Issued 1914. In McInnes 1913. *Memoir #30. Endmap.*

- Meyer, David and Olga Klimko
1986 The James Smith Archaeological Survey. Saskatoon: Saskatchewan Research Council. E-903-5-E-86.
- Meyer, David and Dale Russell
1994 Resources tales and trails : a biographical history of the Saskatchewan Department of Natural Resources. Prince Albert, Sask.
1999 Aboriginal cultural groups. In Atlas of Saskatchewan. Ka-iu Fung, ed. Pp. 22. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
2004 "So Fine and Pleasant, Beyond Description": The Lands and Lives of the Pegogamaw Crees. *Plains Anthropologist* 49(191):217-252.
2006 The Pegogamow Crees and their ancestors: history and archaeology in the Saskatchewan Forks region. *Plains Anthropologist* 51(199):303-324. Department of Natural Resources History Book Committee
in press "Through the Woods where Thare ware now track ways"; Kelsey, Heday and trails in east central Saskatchewan. *Canadian Journal of Archaeology*.
- Meyer, David and Paul Thistle
1995 Saskatchewan River rendezvous centers and trading posts: continuity in a Cree social geography. *Ethnohistory* 42(3):403-444.
- Montgomery, R. H.
1909 Summary of report R H Montgomery, D L S 1906. Sessional Papers 1909 Vol XLIII, No. 14. Paper No. 25b. Dept of Interior. Topo Surveys Branch. Annual Report 1907-08. p 255.
- Morton, Arthur Silver
1943 Fort aux Trembles, better known as Isaac's House: a McGill-Frobisher post. In *Proceedings and Transactions*. Third series. Pp. 131-142, Vol. 37 (2). Ottawa: Royal Society of Canada.
1973 *A History of the Canadian West to 1870-71*. Second edition. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- National Map Collection
1981 Maps of Indian reserves and settlements in the National Map Collection. Volume II. Alberta, Saskatchewan, Manitoba, Yukon Territory, Northwest Territories. Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services Canada.
- Nemeth, Rosemary
n.d (ca 1977) Nipawin Provincial Park. manuscript. author's collection.
- Palliser, Captain John (Irene M. Spry ed.)
1968 The Papers of the Palliser Expedition 1857-1860. Volume XLIV. Toronto: The Champlain Society.
- Peel, Bruce B.
1972 Steamboats on the Saskatchewan. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Book Service.

- Poulin, Guy and Francine Cadieux
1974 Index to township plans of the Canadian west. Ottawa: National Map Collection. Public Archives of Canada.
- Rich, E.E., ed.
1951 Cumberland House Journals and Inland Journals 1775-1779. First Series. Volume XIV. London: The Hudson's Bay Record Society.

1952 Cumberland House Journals and Inland Journals 1779-1882. Second series. Volume XV. London: The Hudson's Bay Record Society.
- Richardson, Sir John
1851 Arctic searching expedition : a journal of a boat-voyage through Rupert's land and the Arctic sea, in search of the discovery ships under command of Sir John Franklin, with an appendix on the physical geography of North America. London: Longman, Brown, Green, and Longmans.
1984 Arctic ordeal : the journal of John Richardson, surgeon-naturalist with Franklin, 1820-1822. C. Stuart Houston, ed. Kingston, Ont.: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Robinson, E. W.
1913 Abstract of the Report of E W Robinson, DLS. Sessional Papers 1913 Vol XLVI, No. 19. Dept of Interior, Topo Surveys Branch. Paper No. 25b Appendix No. 42 pp. 135-38.
- Ronaghan, Allen
1984 Kelsey's Journal of 1691 Reconsidered. Saskatchewan History 37:25-31.
1993 Reconstructing Kelsey's Travels. In Three Hundred Prairie Years. H. Epp, ed. Pp. 89-94. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, University of Regina.
- Russ, C. J.
1974 La Corne, Louis de. In Dictionary of Canadian Biography. F.G. Halpenny, ed. Pp. 331-332, Vol. Volume III, 1741-1770. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Russell, A L
1878 Appendix No. 2. Report by A L Russell, Nov 24th, 1877. Sessional Papers 1878 Vol II, No. 10. Paper No. 8. Dept of the Interior.
- Russell, Dale
1991 Eighteenth-Century Western Cree and their Neighbours. Volume 143. Ottawa: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
1997 Traditional Use. Background Document 13. Saskfor MacMillan Limited Partnership Twenty-year Forest Management Plan and Environmental Impact Statement for the Pasquia-Porcupine Forest Management Area: Prepared by Western Heritage Services, Inc. for Saskfor MacMillan, Hudson Bay.

- 1999 Fur trade journeys, 1691-1808. In Atlas of Saskatchewan. Ka-iu Fung, ed. Pp. 31-32. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- 1999 Organized expeditions: 1819 - 1910. In Atlas of Saskatchewan. Ka-iu Fung, ed. Pp. 36-37. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- Russell, Dale and David Meyer
- 1999 The history of the fur trade, ca 1682 - post 1821. In Atlas of Saskatchewan. Ka-iu Fung, ed. Pp. 33. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- 1999 Territorial changes of Aboriginal cultural groups, 1690s to 1850s. In Atlas of Saskatchewan. Ka-iu Fung, ed. Pp. 21. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- 1999 Trading posts: pre-1759 - post 1930. In Atlas of Saskatchewan. Ka-iu Fung, ed. Pp. 34-35. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- Saskatchewan Environment
- 1999 Fort a la Corne integrated forest use plan. Background information. October, 1999.
- Selwyn, Alfred R. C.
- 1874a Observations in the North West Territory on a Journey across the Plains from Fort Garry to Rocky Mountain House Returning by the Saskatchewan River & Lake Winnipeg. In Report of Progress for 1873-74. Pp. 17-62. Montreal: Geological Survey of Canada.
- 1874b Notes on a journey through the Northwest Territory from Manitoba to Rocky Mountain House. The Canadian Naturalist and Quarterly Journal of Science VII(No. 4):193-216.
- Simpson, George, Sir (Frederick Merk editor),
1968. Fur trade and empire : George Simpson's journal entitled Remarks connected with the fur trade in the course of a voyage from York Factory to Fort George and back to York Factory 1824-25, with related documents. Cambridge, Mass: Belknap Press of Harvard University Press.
- Smythe, T.
- 1968 Thematic Study of the Fur Trade in the Canadian West, 1670-1870: Historic Sites and Monuments Board of Canada.
- Stewart, W. M.
- 1936 David Thompson's surveys in the North-west. Canadian Historical Review 17(3):289-303.
- Thistle, Paul C.
- 1986 Indian-European trade relations in the Lower Saskatchewan River region to 1840. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press.
- Thompson, David (J B Tyrrell ed.)
- 1916 David Thompson's Narrative of his Explorations in Western America 1784-1812. Volume XII. Toronto: The Champlain Society.



- Thompson, David
1962 David Thompson's Narrative. Richard Glover, ed. Volume XL. Toronto: The Champlain Society.
- Tyrrell, J. B., ed.
1934 Journals of Samuel Hearne and Philip Turnor. Volume XXI. Toronto: The Champlain Society (reprint 1968).
- Voligny, L. R.
1917 Report of the Survey of the North Saskatchewan River from Edmonton to Lake Winnipeg. 1910-1915. Three volumes. Prince Albert: Department of Public Works.
- Wagner, H. R.
1955 Peter Pond, Fur Trader and Explorer. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Library.
- Warkentin, John, and Richard I. Ruggles
1970 Historical Map of Manitoba: Manitoba Historical Society.
- Whillans, J. W
1955 First in the west: the story of Henry Kelsey, discoverer of Canadian prairies. Edmonton: Applied Arts Products.
- Wilson, James S.
1982 Archaeology and History. In Environmental baseline study of the Saskatchewan River, Saskatchewan, in the vicinity of Choiceland and the 'Forks'. A.E. Pipe, ed. Saskatoon: Saskatchewan Research Council.
- Wilson, James S., Valerie Hall-Donahue and Jacqueline Carter.
1979 An archaeological condition report on Fort Aux Trembles (Isaac's House). Saskatoon: Prepared for the Department of Culture and Youth. Saskatchewan Research Council.
- Wolvengrey, Arok
2001a Cree Words. Volume 1: Cree- English. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, University of Regina.
2001b Cree Words. Volume 2: English - Cree. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, University of Regina.

=====

SAB: MAPS. [Saskatchewan Archives Board]

- A11/8 Prince Albert North. Sectional Map No. 319. 8th ed. 1918.
- A11/37 Prince Albert South. Sectional Map No. 269. 1911.
- A32 A.1 A. S. Morton. Historical Geography of the Canadian West to 1870 (1928 - 1945, mss. 15 vols.).
- A 1/22 Forestry Map. Fairy Glen. 1953.
- A 11 Prince Albert North. Sectional Map No. 319. 8th ed. 1918.
- A 12 #48 Plan of Township No. 48, Range 20, West of Second Meridian. 1888.
- A 12 #49 Plan of Township No. 49, Range 20, West of Second Meridian. 1883.
- A 13/4 Soil Types. No. 203. District Northeast of Prince Albert. 1922.
- A 13/5 Map of District Northeast of Prince Albert. Classification of Lands by Quarter-sections for Settlement Purposes. 1923. Department of the Interior.
- A 16/2 Prince Albert Land District. 1909. Department of the Interior.
- A 26/83 J A Cote's Map of Summer and Winter Routes from Prince Albert to Beaver Lake Mining Area. n.d. [ca. 1913-19].
- A 48/49 Route through townships 45 - 50 and ranges 12 - 18 W2M.
- A 96/2 Map of District Northeast of Prince Albert. 1922.
- A 463 NWT. Sketch Map of Saskatchewan Valley: Prince Albert to Fort a la Corne. Accompanying preliminary report Sec. No. 1 Special Survey. A. L. Russell, DLS., 21 Oct. 1878.
- A 468 Plan of the Hon. Hudson's Bay Co.'s Reserve at Fort a la Corne (Nov 25, 1873). W S Gore, DLS. Ottawa 1874.
- B 1/5 Fire Protection Map, Prince Albert District. Plan F 509. 1939. Saskatchewan. Dept of Natural Resources. Surveys Branch.
- B 1/8 Fire Protection Map for Prince Albert District. 1941: rev. ed.
- B 2/9 Soil Survey of Prince Albert North - Carrot River. 1950.
- B 12/4 Saskatchewan. Map Showing Disposition of Lands. Thirteenth edition. Canada. Department of the Interior. 1915.
- B 12/12 Saskatchewan Map Showing Disposition of Lands. 1928, 19th ed.
- B 15/33 Saskatchewan. 1938. Conservation Districts.
- B 20/58 Active Timber Berths.
- B 36/13 Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve. 1928 (Revised 1920, 21, 22, 26. Boundary revised 1926, 28).
- B 36/17 Fort a la Corne Provincial Forest West of the 2nd Meridian. 1936. Rev. ed.
- B 62 Fort a la Corne Provincial Forest. Department of Natural Resources, Saskatchewan. 1931 (Boundary revised to April 13, 1932).

- B 70/1 Sketch Survey of the Saskatchewan River from Rocky Mountain House to Cumberland Lake to Illustrate the Report of Mr. Alfred R C Selwyn. 1873.4.
- B 121/2 Central Saskatchewan. Prairie Fires. n.d.
- Micro 6.6 Topographical Survey Sheets.

SAB: FILES [Saskatchewan Archives Board]

- NR 5.2 B.3.g Affidavit. Baptiste Umperville, July 19, 1935, Fort a la Corne. Land in the Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve.
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Letter. Bishop Lloyd, Diocese of Saskatchewan to J Smart, Forestry Branch. Prince Albert, July 17, 1929. [re La Corne].
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Letter. Bishop Lloyd, Diocese of Saskatchewan. Prince Albert, July 22, 1929. [re La Corne].
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Memo. E H Finlayson, Forest Service, Dept of the Interior to Acting District Forest Inspector, Prince Albert. Sept. 18, 1930. [re Synod of the Diocese of Saskatchewan].
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Memo. L C Paterson to J R Hill. Regina, March 4th, 1939. Portions of Townships 48 and 49, Ranges 18, 19 and 20 W2nd. Half-breeds, Fort a la Corne Reserve.
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Memo. To the Deputy Minister from the Director of Forests . Regina, July 26, 1935. Inspector Whelan's Report Dated July 24, 1935, Reservation of lands in Fort a la Corne Forest Reserve for Glen Mary halfbreeds.
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Order-in-Council P.C. 1762. August 5, 1930. [re Synod of the Diocese of Saskatchewan].
- NR 5.2 B.3.g Report. To R T Cook from W W Whelan . Prince Albert, July 24, 1935.
- NR. 1/1. F-400-F Forestry Branch Records. Provincial Forests, 1931.
- NR. 5. B. 6. e Forestry Branch Records. Geography 1917-1952. Forest Cover Map: Fort a la Corne, n.d.
- NR. 5. B. 12. g. 3. (h) Forestry Branch Records. Maps. Fort a la Corne.
- NR. 5. X. 1. b Forestry Branch Records. Miscellaneous. Prince Albert District, 1943.

SAB: DLS files [Dominion Land Survey]

- R 183.I.005 Abrey, G. B. 1904/05.
- R 183.I.024 Belanger, P. R. A. 1900/01.
- R 183.I.025 Belanger, P. R. A. 1901/03.
- R 183.I.113 Christie, Wm. 1914/16.
- R 183.I.113 Christie, Wm. Report Jan 11, 1916 (2 pp).
- R 183.I.114 Christie, Wm. 1915/17.
- R 183.I.114 Christie, Wm. Subdivision surveys (n.d. 2 pp).



- R 183.I.115 Christie, Wm. 1917/18.
R 183.I.116 Christie, Wm . 1918/19.
R 183.I.118 Christie, Wm. 1922/23.
R 183.I.170 Ellis, H D . 1882/84.
R 183.I.237 Hubbell, E W. 1908/09.
R 183.I.238 Hubbell, E. W. 1909/10.
R 183.I.238 Hubbell, E. W. Inspection of contracts. Feb 20, 1910 (6 pp).
R 183.I.239 Hubbell, E. W. 1910/11.
R 183.I.283 Lonergan, G. J. 1926/27.
R 183.I.290 McCloskey, M. D. 1920/21. Land Classification north of Prince Albert.
R 183.I.352 Montgomery, R.H. 1906.
R 183.I.353 Montgomery, R.H. 1907/08.
R 183.I.354 Montgomery, R.H. 1908/09.
R 183.I.373 Norrish, W. H. 1916/17.
R 183.I.373 Norrish, W. H. 1916/17. Letter report (6 pp).
R 183.I.377 Ogilvie, Wm 1910/12.
R 183.I.387 Patrick, L. 1881/84.
R 183.I.414 Reid, J.L. 1889/91.
R 183.I.415 Reid, J.L. 1891/92.
R 183.I.423 Reilly, W. R. 1906/10.
R 183.I.424 Reilly, W. R. 1908/09.
R 183.I.425 Reilly, W. R. 1909/10.
R 183.I.522 Wallace, J.N. 1906/07.
R 183.XIII.3 McCloskey, M. D. 1921/22. Land Classification Northeast of Prince Albert.

HBCA [Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Winnipeg. Microfilm]

B.2/a/1 -12

1851-1929 Fort a la Corne. Journals. Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.

B.2/e/1-4

1888-1901 Fort a la Corne. District Reports: Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.

B.27/a/1 - 15

1795-1816 Edmonton House. Journals. Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.

B.27/a/1 - 23

1795-1839 Carlton House. Journals. Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.



- B.27/d/1 - 12
1810-1836 Carlton House. Account Books. Hudson's Bay Company Archives.
Public Archives of Manitoba.
- B.49/a/32b-53
1814-1839 Cumberland House. Journals. Hudson's Bay Company Archives.
Public Archives of Manitoba.
- B.197/a/1
1798-99 Setting River. Journal. Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public
Archives of Manitoba.
- B.239/a/52-69
1763-1774 York Factory. Journals. Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public
Archives of Manitoba.
- B.239/z/10
1837-38 "Indian populations of sundry districts." York Factory.
Miscellaneous. Hudson's Bay Company Archives. Public Archives of
Manitoba.
- B.332/e/1-11
1887-1891 Prince Albert. District Reports: Hudson's Bay Company Archives.
Public Archives of Manitoba.
- E.2/4
ca. 1754-1769 "Observations on Hudson's Bay". Andrew Graham. Hudson's Bay
Company Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.
- E.2/11
ca. 1754-1790 "Observations on Hudson's Bay". Andrew Graham. Hudson's Bay
Company Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.
- E.3/1
1792 A Journal from York Fort Hudson's Bay to Cumberland. Hudson's,
Manchester & Buckingham Houses - up the Saskatchewan River by
way of Lake Winnipeg in 1792 by Peter Fidler. Hudson's Bay Company
Archives. Public Archives of Manitoba.

LOCAL HISTORY BOOKS. Saskatoon Public Library, Local History Room

Birch Hills History Committee

- 1990 Birch Hills (Harperview), Coolidge, Heatherdell : the people and the history.
Birch Hills, Sask.: Birch Hills History Committee.

Candle Lake History Book Committee

- 1991 Furs, Fish and Forest: A Candle Lake Legacy, 1912-1990. Candle Lake SK:



- Candle Lake History Book Committee,.
Choiceland Historical Society
1984 Log Cabin Tales and Changing Trails; History of Choiceland and District.
Choiceland, SK: Choiceland Historical Society.
- Garrick History Committee
1990 From Forest to Farmland; History of Garrick and District. Garrick, SK:
Garrick History Committee.
- Glen Mary, Horseshoe Bend Historical Society
1980 In Kelsey's footsteps : "the land of good report" : Pahonan, Glen Mary,
Horseshoe Bend: Glen Mary, Horseshoe Bend Historical Society.
- Gronlid and District Historical Society
1991 Our courageous pioneers : history of Gronlid and surrounding districts of
Argus, Athol, Edenbridge, Freedom, Maryville, Murphy Creek, Sandhill
Creek, Taelman, Taras, Teddington. Gronlid, Sask.
- Love History Book Committee
1987 Love at First Sight. Love, SK: Love History Book Committee.
- North Weldon History Book Club
1978 Trails we trod. Weldon SK: North Weldon History Book Club.
- Smeaton Historical Society
1987 North to New Beginnings: Smeaton, Shipman and Districts. Smeaton, SK:
Smeaton Historical Society,.
- Snowden History Book Committee
1979 Snowden: Looking Back. Snowden, SK: Snowden History Book Committee.
- Weirdale Senior Citizens History Book Committee
1984 Axes and Ploughshares, 1912-1984: Weirdale and District. Meath Park, SK:
Weirdale Senior Citizens History Book Committee.
- Weldon & District Historical Society
1980 Leaves Green and Gold: Weldon, Shannonville, Windmere. Weldon, SK:
Weldon



November 2010

CELEBRATING
50
YEARS
in 2010

APPENDIX II

Shore Gold Inc. Star-Orion South Diamond Project Baseline Archaeological Data

Submitted to:
Ethan Richardson
Shore Gold Inc.
Suite 300, 224 - 4th Avenue South
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan
S7K 5M5

REPORT



A world of
capabilities
delivered locally

Report Number: 10-1361-0045

Distribution:

- 1 Copy - Shore Gold Inc.,
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan
- 1 Copy - Heritage Resources Branch,
Regina, Saskatchewan (+CD)
- 1 Copy - Royal Saskatchewan Museum,
Regina, Saskatchewan
- 2 Copies - Golder Associates Ltd.,
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan





Credits

Senior Review Grant Clarke, M.A.

Project Manager Brad Novecosky, M.A.

Permit Holder Brad Novecosky, M.A.

..... Patrick Young, M.A.

Report Author Brad Novecosky, M.A.

..... Patrick Young, M.A.

..... Michael Markowski, M.A.

..... Katie Zdunich, B.A.

Field Investigator Brad Novecosky, M.A.

..... Patrick Young, M.A.

..... Michael Markowski, M.A.

..... Katie Zdunich, B.A.

..... Kris Sullivan, B.A.

..... Luke Ryalls, B.A.

..... Steve Killick, B.A.

..... Alan Korejbo, B.A.

..... Frank Constant (James Smith Cree Nation)

Technical Assistance Amanda Karras, B.Sc.

..... Scott Bailey, B.A.

..... Michael Dennis

..... David Hipwell

..... Leona Gates



Executive Summary

Golder Associates Ltd. conducted a Heritage Resources Impact Assessment of the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project, located in the Fort à la Corne Provincial Forest. This included the assessment of 10 preliminary project components including the Star Open Pit, Orion South Pit, Overburden Storage, Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility, Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage, Plant Site, Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond, Sewage Lagoon, and Runoff Pond. The objective of the study was to complete an assessment of the proposed project footprint and create a heritage resources site inventory of all known archaeological sites found in potential conflict.

This Baseline Report compiles the data collected as a result of all heritage assessments carried out in the project area between 2004 and 2010. As a result of these assessments, 108 heritage resources have been identified in the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Mine Project footprint. The sites are dominated by artifact scatters (n=57) and artifact finds (n=47) representing small lithic reduction sites. Two artifact/feature combination sites are also present in the project area. This includes sites that either have a concentration of fire-cracked rock or soil staining that may indicate the presence of a hearth and more intensive camping activities. Eleven of the Precontact sites produced diagnostic projectile points ranging from Early Side-notched to non-distinct Late Side-notched points spanning approximately 7,500 to 300 years ago. The remaining two sites are historic feature/artifact scatter sites consisting of cabin features and refuse dating to the 20th Century.

The 108 heritage resources identified in the proposed project footprint were evaluated and given a heritage significance rating based on their potential interpretive value. The vast majority of sites (N=80 or 74%) are considered to have low potential and no further work is recommended. These sites are considered adequately mitigated through previous assessment programs, collection of formed tools, site mapping, and submission of Saskatchewan Archaeological Resource Record forms to the Heritage Resources Branch. However, the remaining 28 sites are considered to have high (N=9) and moderate (N=19) interpretive potential. These sites were selected based on the presence of a significant surface scatter with the potential for, or evidence of, intact deposits; the presence of a variety of artifact classes or diagnostic tools; or evidence for potential features such as hearths or boiling pits. Additional information regarding Precontact lifeways could be obtained from further excavation at these sites.



Table of Contents

- 1.0 INTRODUCTION..... 1**
- 2.0 STUDY AREA..... 1**
 - 2.1 Project Location and Local Environment 1
 - 2.2 Project Description..... 3
 - 2.2.1 Star Open Pit 5
 - 2.2.2 Orion South Pit..... 5
 - 2.2.3 Overburden Storage..... 5
 - 2.2.4 Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility 6
 - 2.2.5 Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage 6
 - 2.2.6 Plant Site..... 6
 - 2.2.7 Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond 6
 - 2.2.8 Sewage Lagoon 6
 - 2.2.9 Runoff Pond 7
- 3.0 CULTURAL SETTING 7**
 - 3.1 Fort à la Corne Sand Hills Palaeoenvironment and Geomorphology..... 7
 - 3.2 Culture History 8
 - 3.2.1 Early Precontact Period (ca. 11,500 - 7,500 rcybp) 9
 - 3.2.2 Middle Precontact Period (ca. 7,500 - 2,000 rcybp) 13
 - 3.2.3 Late Precontact/Woodland Periods..... 16
 - 3.2.3.1 Woodland Period (ca. 1,500 - 200 rcybp) (Boreal Forest Cultural Chronology)..... 17
 - 3.2.3.2 Late Precontact Period (ca. 2,000 - 200 rcybp) (Northern Plains Cultural Chronology)..... 21
 - 3.2.4 Protohistoric Period..... 25
 - 3.2.5 Historic Period..... 25
- 4.0 ARCHAEOLOGICAL FIELDWORK METHODOLOGY 26**
- 5.0 ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEYS..... 27**
 - 5.1 2004 Golder Permit No. 04-102..... 28
 - 5.2 2005 Golder Permit No. 05-038..... 28
 - 5.3 2005 and 2006 Western Heritage Permit Nos. 05-87 and 06-103..... 28



5.4 2006 Golder Permit No. 06-064 29

5.5 2007 Golder Permit Nos. 07-053, 07-245, 07-259, 07-292, 07-305, and 07-341 29

5.6 2008 Golder Permit Nos. 08-92, 08-093, 08-094, 08-139, 08-145, and 08-175 29

5.7 2010 Golder Permit Nos. 10-208 and 10-237 30

6.0 HERITAGE RESOURCES 30

6.1 Star Open Pit 30

6.1.1 FhNe 11 30

6.1.2 FhNe 13 31

6.1.3 FhNe 14 31

6.1.4 FhNe 17 33

6.1.5 FhNe 21 33

6.1.6 FhNe 47 34

6.1.7 FhNe 49 34

6.1.8 FhNe 50 34

6.1.9 FhNe 53 34

6.1.10 FhNe 73 34

6.1.11 FhNe 86 35

6.1.12 FhNe 87 35

6.1.13 FhNe 88 35

6.1.14 FhNe 89 36

6.1.15 FhNe 90 36

6.1.16 FhNe 91 36

6.1.17 FhNe 93 37

6.1.18 FhNe 94 37

6.1.19 FhNe 95 38

6.1.20 FhNe 96 39

6.1.21 FhNe 97 39

6.1.22 FhNe 98 39

6.1.23 FhNe 99 41

6.1.24 FhNe 102 41

6.1.25 FhNe 103 43



6.1.26 FhNe 105 43

6.1.27 FhNe 110 44

6.1.28 FhNe 111 45

6.1.29 FhNe 112 45

6.1.30 FhNe 113 46

6.1.31 FhNe 114 47

6.1.32 FhNe 115 47

6.1.33 FhNe 116 48

6.1.34 FhNe 117 49

6.1.35 FhNe 118 49

6.1.36 FhNe 119 50

6.1.37 FhNe 120 52

6.1.38 FhNe 124 53

6.1.39 FhNe 132 53

6.1.40 FhNe 135 54

6.1.41 FhNe 136 54

6.1.42 FhNe 137 55

6.1.43 FhNe 141 55

6.1.44 FhNe 142 57

6.1.45 FhNe 144 57

6.1.46 FhNe 145 58

6.1.47 FhNe 146 59

6.1.48 FhNe 147 59

6.1.49 FhNe 148 61

6.1.50 FhNe 149 61

6.1.51 FhNe 150 63

6.1.52 FhNe 151 63

6.1.53 FhNe 153 63

6.1.54 FhNe 154 65

6.1.55 FhNe 155 65

6.2 Orion South Pit 67



6.2.1 FhNe 10 67

6.2.2 FhNe 12 68

6.2.3 FhNe 22 69

6.2.4 FhNe 23 70

6.2.5 FhNe 57 70

6.2.6 FhNe 58 71

6.2.7 FhNe 58 73

6.2.8 FhNe 59 73

6.2.9 FhNe 92 74

6.2.10 FhNe 131 76

6.3 Overburden Storage 77

6.3.1 FhNe 24 77

6.3.2 FhNe 25 78

6.3.3 FhNe 26 78

6.3.4 FhNe 27 78

6.3.5 FhNe 30 79

6.3.6 FhNe 31 79

6.3.7 FhNe 32 80

6.3.8 FhNe 33 80

6.3.9 FhNe 34 81

6.3.10 FhNe 36 81

6.3.11 FhNe 45 81

6.3.12 FhNe 44 82

6.3.13 FhNe 46 82

6.3.14 FhNe 74 82

6.3.15 FhNe 75 82

6.3.16 FhNe 76 82

6.3.17 FhNe 77 82

6.3.18 FhNe 78 83

6.3.19 FhNe 79 84

6.3.20 FhNe 80 84



6.3.21 FhNe 81 85

6.3.22 FhNe 82 85

6.3.23 FhNe 83 85

6.3.24 FhNe 138 85

6.3.25 FhNe 139 86

6.3.26 FhNe 143 87

6.3.27 FhNe 159 87

6.3.28 FhNe 160 89

6.3.29 FhNe 161 89

6.3.30 FhNe 164 90

6.3.31 FhNe 165 90

6.3.32 FhNf 50 92

6.3.33 FhNf 59 92

6.3.34 FhNf 62 93

6.3.35 FhNf 63 93

6.3.36 FhNf 64 93

6.3.37 Recent Cabins 93

6.4 Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility 96

6.4.1 FhNe 152 96

6.4.2 FhNe 156 96

6.5 Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage 97

6.5.1 FhNe 157 97

6.5.2 FhNe 162 98

6.6 Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond 98

6.6.1 FhNe 64 99

6.6.2 FhNe 65 99

6.6.3 FhNe 163 99

6.7 Sewage Lagoon 100

6.8 Plant Site 100

6.8.1 FhNe 126 100

6.9 Runoff Pond 102



7.0 SUMMARY OF HERITAGE RESOURCES..... 102

8.0 HERITAGE RESOURCE EVALUATION 105

9.0 CLOSURE..... 109

10.0 REFERENCES..... 110

TABLES

Table 1: Star Diamond Project Components 3

Table 2: Archaeological Cultures of Saskatchewan 8

Table 3: Archaeological Investigation Permits Issued in the Fort à la Corne Provincial Forest Study Area 27

Table 4: Metric Attributes for FhNe 95 Hafted Retouched Flake 39

Table 5: Metric Attributes for FhNe 98 Early Side-notched Point 41

Table 6: Metric Attributes for FhNe 102 Biface..... 43

Table 7: Metric Attributes of Tools from FhNe 119..... 52

Table 8: Metric Attributes for FhNe 145 Avonlea Point 59

Table 9: Metric Attributes for FhNe 146 Biface..... 61

Table 10: Metric Attributes for FhNe 155 End Scraper..... 66

Table 11: Metric Attributes of Tools From FhNe 126..... 102

Table 12: Summary of Heritage Resources Found in Star-Orion South Project Footprint 103

Table 13: Summary of Heritage Resources by Site Type in Project Area 104

Table 14: Summary of Precontact Heritage Resources in Project Area with Culturally Diagnostic Projectile Points 105

Table 15: Summary of Heritage Resources Potential in Project Area 107

Table 16: Summary of High and Moderate Potential Heritage Resources Located in Project Area 107

FIGURES

Figure 1: Location of Proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project 2

Figure 2: Star-Orion South Diamond Project Facilities Footprint..... 4

Figure 3: Regional Chronology Southern Saskatchewan..... 10

Figure 4: Regional Chronology of the Mixed Wood Boreal Forest of Northern Saskatchewan 12

Figure 5: Location of Known Heritage Resources in Star-Orion South Diamond Project 32

PHOTOS

Photo 1: View of FhNe 13 33

Photo 2: View of FhNe 93 37



Photo 3: View of FhNe 95 38

Photo 4: Hafted Retouched Flake from FhNe 95 39

Photo 5: View of FhNe 98 40

Photo 6: Early Side-notched Projectile Point from FhNe 98 40

Photo 7: View of FhNe 99 42

Photo 8: View of FhNe 102 42

Photo 9: Biface Fragment from FhNe 102 43

Photo 10: View of FhNe 105 44

Photo 11: View of FhNe 110 45

Photo 12: View of FhNe 112 46

Photo 13: View of FhNe 113 47

Photo 14: View of FhNe 116 48

Photo 15: View of FhNe 118 49

Photo 16: View of FhNe 119 50

Photo 17: Retouched Flake (left) and End Scraper (right) from FhNe 119 51

Photo 18: Ovoid Biface from FhNe 119 51

Photo 19: View of FhNe 120 52

Photo 20: View of FhNe 124 53

Photo 21: View of FhNe 135 54

Photo 22: View of FhNe 136 55

Photo 23: View of FhNe 137 56

Photo 24: View of FhNe 141 56

Photo 25: View of FhNe 142 57

Photo 26: View of FhNe 144 58

Photo 27: Avonlea Projectile Point from FhNe 145 58

Photo 28: View of FhNe 145 59

Photo 29: View of FhNe 146 60

Photo 30: Biface from FhNe 146 60

Photo 31: View of FhNe 147 61

Photo 32: View of FhNe 148 62

Photo 33: View of FhNe 149 62

Photo 34: View of FhNe 150 63

Photo 35: View of FhNe 151 64



Photo 36: View of FhNe 153 64

Photo 37: View of FhNe 154 65

Photo 38: View of FhNe 155 66

Photo 39: End Scraper from FhNe 155 66

Photo 40: View looking across FhNe 10 (2004) 67

Photo 41: View across FhNe 12..... 68

Photo 42: View of cook stove with maker's mark 69

Photo 43: View looking south across FhNe 22..... 70

Photo 44: View looking north across FhNe 23 71

Photo 45: View looking west toward excavated ridge where part of FhNe 57 is located 72

Photo 46: Testing along FhNe 57 ridge..... 72

Photo 47: Testing FhNe 57 at the base of the ridge 73

Photo 48: View looking southwest across FhNe 58 74

Photo 49: View looking south across FhNe 59..... 75

Photo 50: View of shack from FhNe 92..... 75

Photo 51: View of can midden from FhNe 92..... 76

Photo 52: View looking south across FhNe 131..... 77

Photo 53: View of FhNe 30 79

Photo 54: View of FhNe 32 80

Photo 55: View of FhNe 78 83

Photo 56: Recent garbage from FhNe 78 84

Photo 57: View of FhNe 138 86

Photo 58: View of FhNe 139 87

Photo 59: View of FhNe 143 88

Photo 60: View of FhNe 159 88

Photo 61: View of FhNe 160 89

Photo 62: View of FhNe 161 90

Photo 63: View of FhNe 164 91

Photo 64 View of FhNe 165 91

Photo 65: View of FhNf 50 92

Photo 66: View of FhNf 62 94

Photo 67: View of FhNf 64 94

Photo 68: Cabin 1 95



Photo 69: Cabin 2 95

Photo 70: View of FhNe 152 96

Photo 71: View of FhNe 156 97

Photo 72: View of FhNe 157 98

Photo 73: FhNe 162 99

Photo 74: View of FhNe 163 100

Photo 75: View of FhNe 126 101

Photo 76: End Scraper (left) and Biface (right) from FhNe 126..... 102

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A

Summary of Known Heritage Resources in Conflict with the Star-Orion South Diamond Project



1.0 INTRODUCTION

Golder Associates Ltd. (Golder) was retained by Shore Gold Inc. (Shore Gold) to conduct a Heritage Resources Impact Assessment (HRIA) of the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project, located in the Fort à la Corne (FALC) Provincial Forest. Two open pits are being considered, one at the Star Kimberlite and a second potential pit at the Orion South Kimberlite. Both open pits and preliminary locations of associated infrastructure are referenced collectively as the Star-Orion South Diamond Project.

Archaeological surveys were carried out between 2004 and 2008, and again in 2010 in the Star-Orion South Diamond Project area. As a result of these surveys, 108 heritage resources are known to occur within the proposed project footprint. This baseline report summarizes the archaeological work done to date and all known heritage resources found within the proposed project footprint.

Section 2 describes the study area and project footprint. Section 3 provides an overview of the culture history for the region. Section 4 discusses archaeological field survey methods. Section 5 summarizes all archaeological surveys carried out in the project area. Section 6 details known heritage resources, and a summary and evaluation of known heritage resources is provided in Sections 7 and 8 respectively. A table of all sites in conflict with the Star-Orion South Diamond Project is located in Appendix A.

2.0 STUDY AREA

2.1 Project Location and Local Environment

The Star-Orion South Diamond Project is situated approximately 60 km east of Prince Albert, Saskatchewan within the FALC Provincial Forest (Figure 1). The project will encompass several sections immediately north of the Saskatchewan River valley in Townships 49-19 W2M and 49-20 W2M. The FALC Provincial Forest is located within the Boreal Transition Ecoregion. Within Saskatchewan, this ecoregion encompasses an area of some 5,403,000 ha or 8% of the provincial land mass (Acton et al. 1998). This area is an ecological transition zone between the Mid-Boreal Upland and Aspen Parklands Ecoregions, marked by a mosaic of northern and southern species grading from a treeless expanse of grassland to mixed-wood boreal forest.

The Boreal Transition Ecoregion is characterized by rolling aspen (*Populus tremuloides*) covered hills, some white spruce (*Picea glauca*) and jack pine (*Pinus banksiana*), and to a lesser extent, poorly forested level peatlands with black spruce (*Picea mariana*) (Acton et al. 1998). The ecoregion provides forage for a number of large ungulates like moose (*Alces alces*), white tailed deer (*Odocoileus virginianus*), mule deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*), and elk (*Cervus elaphus*) (Acton et al. 1998). Other available species include black bear (*Ursus americanus*), wolves (*Canis lupus*), coyotes (*Canis latrans*), beaver (*Castor canadensis*), and various small mammals. Dominant fish species include northern pike (*Esox lucius*), whitefish (*Coregonus clupeaformis*), walleye (*Stizostedion vitreum*), and perch (*Perca flavescens*) (Scott and Crossman 1973). Areas along the Saskatchewan River, as well as other wetlands within the forest, provide habitat for ducks, geese, and sandhill cranes (*Grus canadensis*) (Saskatchewan Environment 1999).



Figure 1: Location of Proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project



The study area occurs within the La Corne Plain Landscape Area, which is situated along the Saskatchewan River east of the forks, and includes the FALC Provincial Forest (Acton et al. 1998). The FALC Provincial Forest is 132,502 ha in size. It is 67 km from west to east, 34 km from north to south, and has an elevation of approximately 458 m above sea level (Saskatchewan Environment 1999). The land rises quickly from the Saskatchewan River into plateau-like terrain. The north half of the area is drained by the White Fox River through several small creeks and muskeg draws. The White Fox River marks the transition from the FALC Provincial Forest and agricultural lands. In the central and southern portions, English Creek and several other locally named creeks and muskeg draws drain into the Saskatchewan River.

Within the FALC Provincial Forest, sandy deposits support extensive stands of jack pine. The sandy areas are typified by Brunisolic soils, while the finer textured sand and silty deposits exhibit Gray Luvisolic soils. As a result of the Henderson Fire of 1989, large portions of the forest are in various stages of regeneration. Examples of the common plant communities within the FALC Provincial Forest (Saskatchewan Environment 1999) include the following:

- jack pine/bearberry (*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*)/rose (*Rosa acicularis*)/lichen
- jack pine/aspens/bunchberry (*Cornus canadensis*)/snowberry (*Symphoricarpos occidentalis*)/feather moss (*Pleurozium schreberi*)/lichen
- aspen/alder (*Alnus* spp.)/currant (*Ribes* spp.)/bedstraw/feather moss
- aspen/white spruce/alder/willow (*Salix* spp.)/twinlineflower (*Dyschoriste oblongifolia*)/feather moss
- black spruce/labrador tea (*Ledum palustre*)/cranberry (*Vaccinium oxycoccos*)/feather moss
- willow shrub fen/nettle (*Urtica* spp.)/sedge/grass

2.2 Project Description

The proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project consists of two open pits (Star and Orion South) and associated infrastructure including the Overburden Storage area, Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility (PKCF), Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage (CPKS), Plant Site, Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond, Sewage Lagoon, and Runoff Pond (Table 1; Figure 2). These project components are discussed further below.

Table 1: Star Diamond Project Components

Component	Approximate Size (ha)
Star Open Pit	512
Orion South Pit	378
Overburden Storage	2,247
Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility	494
Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage	240
Plant Site	37
Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond	73
Sewage Lagoon	3
Runoff Pond	6
Total	3,990



Figure 2: Star-Orion South Diamond Project Facilities Footprint



2.2.1 Star Open Pit

The proposed Star Open Pit is centered on the Star Kimberlite and is approximately 2.7 km in diameter, 512 ha in size, and will be excavated to approximately 320 m below ground surface. At its nearest point, the southern boundary of the pit will be situated approximately 800 m northwest of the Saskatchewan River.

A drainage referred to locally as the East Ravine bisects the eastern portion of the proposed pit. This spring fed ravine originates approximately 6.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River, where it begins as a shallow draw in the upland, and eventually develops into a broad, deeply incised valley at its confluence with the Saskatchewan River. Numerous beaver dammed ponds are found in the bottom of the valley. The headwater of a second water course, known as the West Ravine, drains a muskeg located near the southwest boundary.

The topography within the proposed pit ranges from gently undulating to hummocky terrain. The well-drained soils support a jack pine forest consisting of dense, regenerating jack pine. Low, moist areas in the ravines and adjoining coulees typically support trembling aspen and a variety of shrubs that result in a more dense vegetation cover. The Star Kimberlite has been the focus of intensive exploration, as a result, much of the proposed Star Open Pit area has been impacted through drilling pads, access roads, bulk sample shaft, and various other infrastructure.

2.2.2 Orion South Pit

The proposed Orion South Pit will encompass approximately 378 ha and is located approximately 5 km north of the Saskatchewan River and 1 km west of the East Ravine. The local topography ranges from gently undulating to hummocky, typical of the stabilized sand dune environment in the area. An unnamed tributary of the East Ravine is found near the northeast boundary of the pit, and a muskeg that forms the headwaters of the 101 Ravine is found toward the south boundary. Vegetation consists primarily of an open floor jack pine forest in varying stages of regeneration, which is attributed to previous forest fires. Aspen and thick shrubs occur along low-lying areas and drainages.

The Orion South Kimberlite area has been the focus of intensive exploration activities. This has resulted in the construction of numerous drill pads and associated access roads, primary access roads (including the Shore Road and 101 Road), the Orion South Shaft operations, and ancillary infrastructure such as water and mud pits.

2.2.3 Overburden Storage

The proposed Overburden Storage area is located to the west of the Star Open Pit. It is approximately 2,247 ha in size and the southern boundary begins 2.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. Overburden from both open pits will be re-deposited at this location.

A drainage referred to as the 101 Ravine is found near the east boundary of the Overburden Storage area. This water course begins as a shallow draw in the upland, where it drains a large muskeg. It then runs approximately north-south for 6 km, then turns at an almost 90 degree angle and heads east for 3 km to the Saskatchewan River. Numerous smaller drainages feed into the ravine, which eventually develops into a broad, deeply incised valley at the confluence with the Saskatchewan River. Numerous beaver dammed ponds are found in the bottom of the valley.

The topography within the Overburden Storage is similar to other areas; however, a ridge of prominent hills is found towards the north boundary. The northern half of this area has been less affected by fires and consists of a mature stand of jack pine with an open, park-like forest floor. Low, moist areas in the ravines and adjoining



coulees typically support trembling aspen and a variety of shrubs that result in a more dense vegetation cover. A broad, low-lying area of muskeg is found along the west side of the 101 Ravine. The Lars Road, an old logging road, passes through the middle of the Overburden Storage area providing access to old harvest blocks, and eventually leads to the Saskatchewan River.

2.2.4 Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility

The proposed PKCF is located northeast of the Star Open Pit. It is approximately 494 ha in size and located 3.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River. An old logging trail passes through the middle of this area that provides access to the Saskatchewan River.

A drainage referred to as the Duke Ravine is found along the western boundary of the area. At the headwaters of this drainage, there is a large muskeg that extends from the creek east to the edge of the existing trail. As the ravine proceeds south, it develops into a significant valley. A tributary of the English Creek is located near the east boundary of the PKCF. Numerous ponds created by beaver dams are found in the bottom of both drainage valleys. The topography between the drainages is generally flat and has been subject to previous forest fires and harvesting activities. The topography of the south half is more rugged with thick regenerating jack pine ridges leading down to a low muskeg area.

2.2.5 Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage

Located immediately south of the PKCF is the proposed CPKS area. It is approximately 240 ha in size and situated 1 km north of the Saskatchewan River. Most of the area encompasses a large muskeg that serves as the headwaters for local drainages referred to as the FALC Ravine and Wapiti Ravine. The north and west half of the area consists of undulating upland terrain supporting both regenerating jack pine and open grassland areas in remnant harvest blocks. The area to the south consists of a thick aspen and shrub forest that surround the margins of the muskeg, which eventually transitions into mature jack pine in elevated areas rising towards the Saskatchewan River valley crest. Portions of the old Melfort Ferry Road follow along the south and east boundary. At the time of assessment, the FALC Ravine was a dry, shallow draw, while the Wapiti Ravine was deep with standing water.

2.2.6 Plant Site

The proposed Plant Site is located 1 km northeast of the Star Open Pit. It is approximately 37 ha in size and begins 3 km north of the Saskatchewan River. It is located 200 m to 400 m east of the East Ravine valley crest. The terrain is characterized by undulating to hummocky topography that supports thick regenerating jack pine.

2.2.7 Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond

The proposed Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond are located approximately 1 km east of the Star Open Pit and approximately 1.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The reservoir and pond encompass a combined area of approximately 73 ha situated within the Duke Ravine valley. Most of this area consists of the valley bottom and side slopes of the ravine. Vegetation consists of trembling aspen, black spruce and willow in the valley, with open jack pine present on the valley crest.

2.2.8 Sewage Lagoon

The proposed Sewage Lagoon is located immediately southwest of the Polishing Pond. The lagoon will be approximately 6 ha in size and situated 2.2 km north of the Saskatchewan River and 300 m west of the Duke



Ravine. The terrain is characterized by undulating to hummocky topography that supports a mixture of jack pine and aspen.

2.2.9 Runoff Pond

The proposed Runoff Pond is located within the East Ravine approximately 700 m north of the Star Open Pit. It is approximately 4.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River, and will encompass approximately 6 ha of the ravine bottom and valley slope. Vegetation consists of trembling aspen, black spruce and willow in the valley, with open jack pine present on the valley crest.

3.0 CULTURAL SETTING

Prior to discussing the culture history of the project area, it is pertinent to consider the palaeoenvironment and how its evolution through time may have influenced past peoples living in what we know today as the FALC Provincial Forest.

3.1 Fort à la Corne Sand Hills Palaeoenvironment and Geomorphology

Most of the FALC Sand Hills area remained inundated by glacial Lake Agassiz until about 12,700 radiocarbon years before present (rcybp). After this time, the western shoreline of glacial Lake Agassiz was positioned east of the sand hills area, in response to the retreating glacial ice mass (Dyke et al. 2003). Pollen stratigraphy in Saskatchewan suggests that a spruce dominated boreal forest followed the retreating ice, which took place from ca. 15,000 to 12,800 rcybp. Between ca. 13,000 and 10,200 rcybp, the central Saskatchewan boreal forest biomes were replaced by parkland, and then by grassland (Dyke et al. 2004).

This transition was followed by a period of peak aridity in the mid-Holocene. The grassland biome was at its northern maximum extent as early as ca. 9,000 rcybp (Dyke et al. 2004). At this time, the FALC Sand Hills resided on the northern grassland and parkland margins.

Cooler climatic conditions occurred after the mid-Holocene. In southern Saskatchewan, moister conditions are evident between ca. 6,300 and 4,400 rcybp (Vance et al. 1995). A drier and/or warmer period occurred between ca. 2,400 and 1,400 rcybp, with comparatively more humid and/or cooler conditions thereafter, except between ca. 900 to 800 rcybp and in the last ca. 500 rcybp, where warmer and/or drier conditions were evident.

The stabilized parabolic dunes present within the FALC Sand Hills occur over a series of north-south trending ridges that are separated by deeply incised stream valleys terminating at the Saskatchewan River. These ridges were derived from a large glaciolacustrine delta (Saskatchewan Research Council 1987).

Two distinct periods of past dune activity has been elucidated from optical ages derived from stabilized sand dunes in the FALC Sand Hills. Optical dating measures the time elapsed since mineral grains were last exposed to sunlight, which usually corresponds to the time since the grains were buried (Wolfe et al. 2005). The first period of dune activity was in the early Holocene (ca. 12,800 to 8,400 rcybp) during a transition from boreal to parkland-grassland dominated biomes) and the second was in the mid-Holocene (ca. 7,500 to 4,500 rcybp). Both periods are associated, at least in part, with parkland/grassland vegetation cover (Wolfe et al. 2005).

The mid-Holocene dune activity was likely related to a period of increased aridity and associated reduction in vegetation cover via a northward migration of grassland and parkland biomes (Wolfe et al. 2005). Known as the Altithermal or Hypsithermal, this period was characterized by a general increase in temperature and a decrease in available moisture with a corresponding shift from winter to summer dominated precipitation. Lake size and



stream flow decreased significantly (Bobrowsky et al. 1990). Another result of this warming trend was that the Boreal Forest - Parkland border retreated by as much as 100 km north of its present day position.

The onset of a final stable phase by about 5,000 rcybp in the FALC area appears to have been synchronous with the development of Parkland-Boreal vegetation and less arid conditions in the late Holocene (Wolfe et al. 2005). With the recognition that the most recent phase of Aeolian activity in the FALC Sand Hills occurred between 7,500 and 4,800 rcybp, the dunes currently present in this area are considered to be relict, mid-Holocene features.

3.2 Culture History

The southern, mixed-wood boreal forest has been open for human habitation for approximately the last 10,000 years (Burley et al. 1982). Nomadic hunting and gathering cultures moved into what is now central Saskatchewan shortly after the retreat of the Wisconsin continental glacier. Subsequent Saskatchewan prehistory is divided into three major stages: the Early, Middle, and Late Precontact/Woodland Periods (Table 2). While these periods correspond to phases of cultural development that are marked by changes in the weapon systems used, they also reflect complex cultural evolutionary processes.

Table 2: Archaeological Cultures of Saskatchewan

Years Ago	Period	Mixed-Wood and Coniferous Forest Cultures	Northern Plains and Parklands Cultures
1000		Selkirk; Buffalo Lake; Rainy River	Mortlach
	Woodland	Blackduck; Laurel; River House	Old Women's
2000	Late Precontact	Avonlea	Avonlea
		Besant	Besant
3000			Pelican Lake
4000		Plains Influences	McKean
	Middle Precontact	Pelican Lake; Oxbow	
5000		McKean; Early Side-notched	Oxbow
6000			Mummy Cave
7000			Angostura
		Angostura/Nipawin	
8000			Cody
9000	Early Precontact	Agate Basin	Agate Basin/Hell Gap
10000			Folsom
11000			Clovis

Adapted from Meyer (1993) and Dyck (1983).

The archaeology of the southern mixed-wood boreal forest of central Saskatchewan reflects a utilization of the region by both plains-adapted and forest-adapted peoples (Table 2). The prehistory of this region is one marked by influences from the plains cultures to the south and from woodlands cultures to the east. Because of the proximity of the FALC project area to the transition zone between the open grasslands and the boreal forest, vegetation patterns and associated fauna were subject to change during periods of climatic transition. It follows, then, that as the southern edge of the forest migrated in response to these fluctuations, so did the people dependent on the impacted resources.



South of the forest edge along the Saskatchewan River basin, plains adapted groups followed the bison herds through their annual migration cycle. Because of the abundance of plant and animal resources associated with the Saskatchewan River and its tributaries, it would also have been influential in attracting people to the region. Similarly, after the boreal forest migrated south to its modern limits around ca. 2,500 rcybp, forest adapted people would have begun to enter into the Saskatchewan River basin. Later, as populations grew in the eastern woodlands and the technology developed allowing for a more efficient utilization of boreal forest resources, these groups expanded their territory. All pottery producing cultures in Saskatchewan's boreal forest appear to have originated in the east, moving through the mixed-wood boreal forest into what is now Saskatchewan during the last 1,500 years.

3.2.1 Early Precontact Period (ca. 11,500 - 7,500 rcybp)

The Early Precontact Period coincides with the retreat of the Wisconsin continental glacier from northern Saskatchewan (Walker 1999). Current evidence suggests that the glaciers were relegated to far northern Saskatchewan by 9,000 rcybp (Bobrowsky et al. 1990). During the Early Precontact Period, highly nomadic hunting groups are thought to have employed long throwing or thrusting spears to hunt the big game animals of the region. Initially, these hunters focused on an exploitation of the large megafauna of the Late Pleistocene, primarily mammoth. However, with the disappearance of North American Pleistocene megafauna species (Martin 1984), bison became the main prey pursued on the Northern Plains. During the remaining part of the Early Precontact Period, the people relied on an extinct form of bison called *Bison antiquus* for many of their needs. This ancestor to the modern bison was considerably larger than the contemporary species.

Stone spear points associated with occupation during this period are distinctive. They lack notches, are lanceolate in form, and are considerably larger than during later periods. Occupations from this period are rare in the boreal forest region of Saskatchewan and, to date, consist of surface finds. However, when present, the diagnostic artifacts of the Early Precontact cultures are indistinguishable from those identified on the plains.

Clovis and Folsom

Clovis and Folsom projectile points (Figure 3) have precise thinning flakes taken off of the basal end, leaving flutes that facilitate hafting the spearhead to the spear shaft. Evidence from the High Plains indicates that the Clovis culture (ca. 11,500 to 10,900 rcybp) represented a highly nomadic band society who relied on the megafauna of the Late Pleistocene for survival (Frison 1978). Sites that have been excavated in the High Plains in the United States suggest that Clovis people primarily hunted mammoth, although camel, antelope, bison, and other large mammals have also been identified (Agenbroad 1984).

After the extinction of the megafauna in North America, bison became the main source of food. Folsom and later hunters of the Early Precontact Period primarily hunted the larger, extinct forms of bison. There are very few buried sites containing fluted points on the Canadian grasslands, and surface finds of these spear points have not yet been identified in northern Saskatchewan. Clovis points have been recovered near Cold Lake, Alberta.



Figure 3: Regional Chronology Southern Saskatchewan



Agate Basin and Hell Gap

Following Folsom, flutes are no longer found on projectile points. Agate Basin (ca. 10,500 to 9,500 rcybp) and Hell Gap (ca. 10,000 to 9,500 rcybp) points are typically lanceolate in overall form and exhibit grinding on their basal lateral edges to facilitate hafting to spear fore-shafts (Figure 3). Agate Basin points are smoothly lanceolate with straight to slightly rounded basal edges. Hell Gap points are widest at the mid-section. From this point to the base, the lateral edges taper presenting a slightly stemmed appearance (Dyck 1983). In Canada, most of these lanceolate points are found in surface contexts (Walker 1999). The radiocarbon dates associated with their presence on the Northern Plains are based primarily on buried sites that have been excavated in the United States.

The earliest occupation of central Saskatchewan is evidenced by the recovery of a small number of surface collected Agate Basin projectile points. These have been identified in Prince Albert National Park (Forsman 1972) and west and southwest of Nipawin by avocational archaeologists (Burley et al. 1982).

Based on these limited recoveries, it appears that central Saskatchewan at this time was only marginally exploited by a relatively small number of people. While Agate Basin points represent the first movement of people into the boreal forest region of Saskatchewan, it is on a quite sporadic basis.

Cody Complex

Following Agate Basin and Hell Gap, projectile points such as Alberta, Scottsbluff, and Eden (ca. 9,500 to 8,400 rcybp) appear, and are classified together as the Cody Complex (Figures 3 and 4). These projectile points exhibit a stemmed basal morphology to facilitate hafting to a spear shaft. Cody Complex points exhibit fine parallel flaking and a diamond-shaped cross section.

The Heron Eden site, a bison processing area located in southwestern Saskatchewan, is one of the few intact Cody sites found in the province (Corbeil 1995). Radiocarbon dated to 9,000 rcybp, it is also one of the oldest archaeological sites in Canada. The small number of animals represented in the Heron Eden site is consistent with a hunting regime based on stalking methods or the comparatively small communal hunting of 10 to 20 animals. Evidence from kill sites in the High Plains indicates that people took advantage of natural features such as bogs, arroyos, and sand hills to surround and kill the animals (Frison 1978).

Analysis of the features and artifacts collected from the Heron Eden site indicates that people were already familiar with the abundant uses of the bison (Corbeil 1995). Collected tools such as end scrapers are linked to the processing of the bison hide. The hide could be used to make clothing, tents, or various utilitarian items such as bags. Lithic cutting tools such as bifaces were used to remove the meat; especially desirable were the tongue, hump, and shoulder sections. Stone mauls were likely utilized in breaking the long bones to extract the inner marrow. Hearths would be used to cook and smoke the meat. Features and tools such as these would continue to be used for the remainder of the Precontact era in Saskatchewan.

As with Agate Basin/Hell Gap projectile points, few points of this time period have been recovered in central Saskatchewan, and those that have were primarily from a surface context. One Cody site has been identified in the FALC Provincial Forest. A single Cody knife was found on the surface of a trail at FhNe 54 (Golder 2005).



Figure 4: Regional Chronology of the Mixed Wood Boreal Forest of Northern Saskatchewan



Late Lanceolate/Angostura

The latter part of the Early Precontact Period throughout central and east-central Saskatchewan is characterized by a resurgence of lanceolate projectile points similar to the Angostura type (8,500 to 7,500 rcybp). The number of sites identified is suggestive of a more intensive usage of the Saskatchewan River valley area than by previous cultures (McKeand 1995). Classified as the Nipawin phase by Meyer (1977), these projectile points represent the first consistent occupation of the Saskatchewan River valley. They are manufactured from local lithic materials, exhibit grinding on lateral basal edges, have straight to concave bases, and are basally thinned. Unlike more southerly Angostura, these points do not often display parallel oblique flaking or fine craftsmanship, possibly due to the use of local materials such as Swan River Chert (SRC) and quartz (Meyer 1977).

Surface recoveries of these points have been made at five locations in the Nipawin and Gronlid Ferry area: the Windrow site (FhNa 93), Running Elk site (FhNa 41), Breaking site (FhNa 81), Horudko site (FhNb 60), and FhNc 26. Thirteen more have been found in the Carrot River district in close proximity to streams and creeks (Meyer 1970:9-10). Fragments of lanceolate Early Precontact points have also been recovered at 10 sites in the vicinity of the forks of the South and North Saskatchewan Rivers near Choiceland (Wilson 1982), as well as FfNk 7 near St. Louis, Saskatchewan (Amundson et al. 2005).

3.2.2 Middle Precontact Period (ca. 7,500 - 2,000 rcybp)

The beginning of the Middle Precontact Period coincides with the Altithermal Climatic Interval (ca. 7,500 to 2,000 rcybp). During the Middle Precontact Period, projectile points exhibit notches near the basal end, allowing them to be more securely bound to the shaft (Figures 3 and 4). These projectile points are associated with the atlatl, a type of spear thrower (Frison 1978). The atlatl was a major technological advance in that it amplified the speed and thrust of the weapon by increasing the length of the throwing arm. This allowed the hunter to distance himself from the prey.

Along with the atlatl/dart weapon system, the early Middle Precontact Period saw the development of several cultural traits that persisted through the remainder of prehistory (Reeves 1990). Chief among these is the use of large-scale communal hunting methods, which generated large meat surpluses and required complex processing and storage techniques.

Evidence of Middle Precontact Period material culture is quite regularly found in the mixed-wood boreal forest. For instance, components are well represented at aggregating centres such as Pehonan, Nipawiwinihk, and Opaskeweyaw along the Saskatchewan River system (Meyer and Thistle 1995). As this region was part of the Prairie Ecozone during the Altithermal Climatic Interval, the culture history of what is now the southern Boreal Transition Ecoregion is essentially that of the Northern Plains Culture Area through the Middle Precontact Period.

Early Side-notched

The occupants of the Northern Plains during the height of the Altithermal are referred to archaeologically as the Mummy Cave or Early Side-notched series (Figures 3 and 4) (Walker 1992). Evidence of these people is comparatively rare, and date from ca. 7,500 to 5,000 rcybp (Walker 1992). It has been suggested that the decrease in precipitation and the increase in temperatures associated with the Altithermal resulted in a decrease in human and ungulate populations across the Northern Plains (Reeves 1990). Others argue that the Altithermal did not result in a lower population density; rather, the absence of sites from this region is more the result of



changes in climate that were not conducive to the burial and preservation of archaeological sites (Walker 1980 and 1992).

Analysis of the excavated materials from the Gowen sites (FaNq 25 and 32) south of Saskatoon has found the first evidence of pemmican manufacture in the Precontact record dates to Early Side-notched sites (Walker 1992). Pemmican is made by mixing the grease boiled from bison bones with a bison jerky that has been previously pounded into flour. Dried chokecherries and Saskatoon berries could be added for flavouring.

Pemmican will keep for up to two years, thus providing a dependable food source when hunting became more challenging in the late winter and early spring. As well, pemmican served to reduce the weight of food. A single kilogram of pemmican has the nutritional equivalent of 2 kg of meat.

Early Side-notched projectile points have been found at numerous locations in the modern mixed-wood boreal forest. For instance, excavations at the Stuart Lake site (GbNf 6) produced two large side-notched points that form part of the Mummy Cave Complex (Hjermstad 1998). The points were recovered in an occupation that was once a grassland environment (Hjermstad 1998).

Early Side-notched points have been found at 16 sites in the Nipawin Reservoir study area, two of which were found in context (i.e., FhNa 110 and FhNd 16) (McKeand 1995). A total of 13 sites in the vicinity of the Saskatchewan River forks were noted as producing Early Side-notched points, including a buried component at the Below Forks site (FhNg 25) (Kasstan 2004; Johnston 2005). Reconnaissance in Prince Albert National Park has also produced an Early Side-notched projectile point surface find (Forsman 1972).

Oxbow and McKean

Following the Early Side-notched/Mummy Cave occupation of the Northern Plains were the cultures known as Oxbow and McKean. Based on radiocarbon dates for the two complexes, Oxbow and McKean may have been coeval for a period of time on the Northern Plains (Morlan 1993).

Evidence from the excavation of a number of sites from this period suggests a continuing reliance on bison hunting and processing. However, there is for the first time strong evidence that this diet was supplemented by other animals such as antelope, mule deer, rabbit, fox, and waterfowl.

The Oxbow Phase is present on the Northern Plains from ca. 4,700 to 3,000 rcybp (Dyck 1983; Walker 1999). It is identified by the presence of relatively large dart points that have a concave basal edge and broad, shallow side-notches (Figures 3 and 4). The basal corners of the points are rounded, giving them an “eared” appearance. It has been proposed that the Oxbow Phase developed directly from Mummy Cave (Prentice et al. 1983). Oxbow points are found over an expansive territory including the grasslands, parklands, and mixed-wood boreal forest.

One of the defining features of the Northern Plains peoples is the tipi. The first evidence of this feature is found approximately 5,000 years ago during the Oxbow Phase (Balcom and Hoffert 1990). The tipi is recognized archaeologically as stone circles, cobbles arranged in a circle ranging in size from 2 m to 8 m diameter (Kehoe 1960). These cobbles were used to hold down the flaps of the tipi and would be abandoned when the residents left the site. The limited amount of excavation that has been conducted so far at these sites has found only a minor amount of artifacts suggesting that these features were used for brief periods of time by highly nomadic peoples.



Another important feature that first appears during the Oxbow occupation of the Northern Plains is the Medicine Wheel (Calder 1977). Research has identified several forms of these ceremonial structures on the Northern Plains. All Medicine Wheels share two of three common features: a stone circle, a central cairn, and interior or exterior spokes (Brumley 1990). The Medicine Wheel's exact function remains unknown; they may have been used for ceremonies such as the Sun Dance or burials (Grinnell 1922; Brumley 1990).

One of the most important burial sites on the Northern Plains is the Gray site in southwestern Saskatchewan. This cemetery dates between 3,500 and 1,500 B.C. and contains upwards of 300 interred individuals (Wright 1995a). While predominantly an Oxbow burial site, evidence indicates that McKean Complex groups might also have used the cemetery. As Wright (1995a:325) suggests:

[n]ot only was the Gray Burial site a Middle Plains culture sacred place where the remains of the deceased were brought for final burial over a period of 2,000 years but the cemetery also likely functioned as a band territorial marker. Its length of use provides some appreciation of the degree of social and territorial stability within the band or bands responsible for the cemetery.

The Oxbow culture is well represented in the southern edge of the boreal forest. This partially relates to the fact that many of these sites would have been in the grasslands at the time of occupation. However, some researchers postulate that the widespread presence of the Oxbow culture is a reflection that some groups adapted to a forest subsistence strategy, possibly outlasting the plains Oxbow groups (Burley et al. 1982).

Oxbow is the first intensive occupation of the Nipawin area; 14 such sites were identified in a 1976 reconnaissance of the region. Nine more were identified during the 1982 and 1983 reconnaissances, one of which, Hamilton site (FhNc 5), produced buried components (McKeand 1995). Oxbow points are numerous finds in the vicinity of the forks of the North and South Saskatchewan Rivers as well, with 19 being found during the Forks reconnaissance (Wilson 1982). Further north, Forsman (1976) recovered an Oxbow point in a buried context at a site on Montreal Lake (GcNj 2) and on the surface at two nearby locales.

Following the Oxbow Phase was the cultural tradition known as the McKean Complex (ca. 4,100 to 3,100 rcybp). McKean Complex appears across the Canadian grasslands and overlaps in time and space with the Oxbow Phase. It is comprised of two projectile point types known as the McKean and Hanna type dart points (Davis and Keyser 1999). McKean points are lanceolate with a deeply concave base (Figures 3 and 4). Hanna points have extremely large notches or a flared stem, commonly with a basal indentation (Figures 3 and 4).

Like Oxbow, McKean Complex remains have been located within the mixed-wood boreal forest and may represent adaptations to different environmental ecozones (Prentice et al. 1983). Several McKean Complex sites are situated in the vicinity of the Saskatchewan River and southern boreal forest. Thirty-one sites were recorded as containing McKean Complex materials during the Forks reconnaissance (Wilson 1982) while 15 were documented in the Nipawin Reservoir study area (McKeand 1995). For example, McKean and Hanna projectile points have been recovered from occupations at the Crown site (FhNa 86) while Hanna points have been found in excavations at the Broken Axle site (FhNc 81). As well, McKean Complex materials were recovered *in situ* at site GcNj 2 on Montreal Lake (Forsman 1976).

Further recoveries are noted from the James Smith Reserve reconnaissance (Meyer and Klimko 1986) and the Prince Albert National Park reconnaissance programs (Forsman 1972; Gryba 1974).



Pelican Lake

The final culture represented in the Middle Precontact Period is the Pelican Lake Phase (3,000 to 2,000 rcybp). Diagnostic artifacts are based on a wide variety of Corner-notched projectile points (Figures 3 and 4), as well as notched biface and uniface knife forms (Wright 1995b). Bison jumps and pounds are a common Pelican Lake hallmark, as are stone circle features (Burley et al. 1982). Pelican Lake sites have produced exotic materials such as obsidian, Knife River Flint, and native copper indicating the development of relatively far-reaching exchange networks (Wright 1995b).

This culture is significant in that it may be the first on the Northern Plains to utilize the bow and arrow (Brumley and Dau 1988:34). This is recognized archaeologically by a reduction in the size of the projectile point. This reduction, especially around the neck, is a result of the arrow shaft being of smaller diameter than the atlatl dart shaft. The bow and arrow allowed for more effective and efficient exploitation of large mammal species because of its superior rate of fire, range, and accuracy (Reeves 1990). However, it does not appear that the atlatl was fully supplanted by the bow and arrow until midway through the Late Precontact Period.

Based on palynological evidence, the environment in the vicinity of the Saskatchewan River valley during Pelican Lake occupation was that of a mixed-wood forest zone (Prentice et al. 1983). The presence of Pelican Lake material culture has been postulated as a seasonal occupation of the boreal forest fringe by plains adapted bison hunters (Burley et al. 1982). For instance, Meyer (1977) has suggested that Pelican Lake groups along the Saskatchewan River valley near Nipawin were focusing on bison herds, which were available in the upper regions of the river valley at this time, rather than resources within the valley. There are few sites of this culture that have been encountered within the valley itself (Burley et al. 1982).

Corner-notched points are found at nine sites, including three buried components, in the vicinity of Nipawin. These include components at the Gravel Pit site (FhNa 61), the Trail's Edge site (FhNa 107), and the Broken Axle site (FhNc 81). At Montreal Lake, Pelican Lake materials were recovered in buried context at site GcNj 2. Wilson (1982) notes that 27 sites produced Pelican Lake points in the Forks reconnaissance, while reconnaissances on the James Smith Reserve (Meyer and Klimko 1986) and in Prince Albert National Park (Forsman 1972) also identified similar materials.

3.2.3 Late Precontact/Woodland Periods

The culture history of the study region, until the Late Precontact/Woodland Periods and the introduction of pottery, was primarily that of the Northern Plains. It is in the Late Precontact period that the archaeological record shows the first manifestation of boreal forest cultural affinities rather than Northern Plains influenced cultural materials.

This coincides with the expansion of the southern edge of the boreal forest to its modern position and developments in technology and population growth in the Eastern Woodlands. While Northern Plains cultures did continue to utilize the southern edge of the boreal forest on an intermittent basis over the last 2,000 years (Meyer and Epp 1990), the archaeological remains of the region are mainly characteristic of boreal forest adapted peoples. As a result, this portion of the culture history overview is broken into two sections: the Woodland Period of the boreal forest (ca. 1,500 to 200 rcybp) and the Late Precontact Period of the Northern Plains (ca. 2,000 to 200 rcybp).



3.2.3.1 Woodland Period (ca. 1,500 - 200 rcybp) (Boreal Forest Cultural Chronology)

At ca. 1,500 rcybp, cultures adapted primarily to the southern boreal forest environment appear in the archaeological record. Specifically, the Woodland Period is characterized by the introduction of pottery via populations from the eastern woodlands of Manitoba and Minnesota (Meyer 1983). In Saskatchewan, the Woodland period includes Middle Woodland and Late Woodland cultures (Figure 4). Middle Woodland groups produced pottery vessels that were conoidal in form, while Late Woodland groups produced globular or complex profile vessels.

Aside from the introduction and use of pottery and the bow and arrow, boreal forest adapted peoples developed specialized transportation such as birch bark canoes, toboggans, and snowshoes to traverse the region in summer and winter. While these items do not readily preserve in the archaeological record, the wood working tools (i.e., adzes, celts, and wedges) used to manufacture them have (Meyer 1993). Overland travel in the thickly vegetated boreal forest is difficult at best and these groups recognized the utility of following waterways. In fact, most sites in the boreal forest have been identified along the margins of waterways, the proverbial highways of the north.

Woodland Period groups that adapted to life in the boreal forest show a diverse utilization of forest food resources. This includes an annual round based on intercepting seasonal concentrations of certain resources such as fish, migratory waterfowl, and berries. At such times, typically in the spring and fall, large multi-family gatherings called aggregations or rendezvous took place. People would return to the same location over several generations, if not millennia, to engage in trade, economic and social activities, spiritual ceremonies, and to look for suitable marriage partners (Paquin 1999). During the remainder of the year, these large regional bands would break into smaller, extended family groupings to harvest the widespread resources.

Middle Woodland Cultures: Laurel

Laurel ware pottery is the hallmark of the Middle Woodland Period (Meyer 1999). The time-depth of Laurel ware in Saskatchewan is uncertain, though it may have been introduced into eastern Saskatchewan as early as 1,500 rcybp and lasted until ca. 800 rcybp. The Laurel Composite, within which are several regional and temporal complexes, is best known in northern Minnesota and adjacent Ontario and Manitoba, where it is associated with burial mounds, bone tools such as harpoons, native copper artifacts, and stemmed and side-notched projectile points. The earliest dates from the eastern boreal forest for Laurel cluster at ca. 2,100 rcybp (Syms 1977). The widespread occurrence of Laurel ware pottery across Manitoba and into Saskatchewan might be indicative of the development of more efficient means of utilizing boreal forest resources and a concomitant increase in population compared to earlier boreal forest cultures (Meyer 1993).

Laurel ware is typified by conoidal vessels made by the coiling technique with walls that thin towards the lip (Figure 4). Decoration is known to consist of punctates, bosses, and/or cord-wrapped tool, dentate and pseudo-scallop shell impressions. The exterior surface of Laurel ware vessels is smooth (Meyer 1983). Laurel ware components in northern Manitoba and Saskatchewan also produce small side-notched and triangular projectile points.

Laurel ware found in the southern edge of the boreal forest appears to be different from that found deeper in the forest. Specifically, the more southerly pottery exhibits cord-wrapped tool impressed decoration and bossed decoration while the northerly pottery exhibits dentate impressions. Both are Laurel ware, in that they are manufactured by coiling, are conoidal and have smooth exterior surfaces. The southerly Laurel ware is



frequently associated with net impressed pottery and is considered as a constituent of the River House Complex (Meyer 1987 and 1998).

Laurel ware in the southern boreal forest has been identified by Gryba (1974) from a reconnaissance of the Prince Albert National Park, and has also been recovered at the Peterson Creek site (FhNb 72) during the Nipawin Reservoir reconnaissance (McKeand 1995). However, Laurel ware assemblages *per se* are typically a more northerly phenomenon, found on the Churchill, Sturgeon Weir, and Reindeer Rivers (Meyer 1983). Additional recoveries of Laurel ware in the southern boreal forest will be discussed in the context of the River House Complex below.

Middle Woodland Cultures: River House

The River House Complex is contemporaneous with Laurel (ca. 1,000 A.D.), and occurs from the lower North Saskatchewan River valley east to Manitoba (Meyer et al. 2008). The River House Complex occupies a large region of the outer boreal forest of east-central Saskatchewan and west-central Manitoba and includes two pottery wares. One is similar to Laurel ware pottery found further north in Saskatchewan in that it is manufactured by coiling and has a plain surface. However, it exhibits cord-wrapped tool impressions and punctate and boss decoration, but not dentate impressed decorations (Meyer et al. 2008). The second ware exhibits a net impressed exterior surface and a conoidal shape and is identified as Rock Lake ware (Figure 4) (Meyer et al. 2008).

Associated with these two pottery wares are small side-notched and triangular arrow points, small ground celts, and adzes. At present, the River House Complex is dated in a period ca. 800 to 1,200 A.D. (Meyer et al. 2008). In Saskatchewan, therefore, Blackduck would border this culture on the east and south, while Avonlea and/or Old Women's would border it to the west and southwest, and a late form of Laurel would border it to the north. The similarity of this complex to components described in southern Manitoba has led Meyer et al. (2008) to hypothesize that the River House Complex originated in Manitoba.

Several sites have been identified in the southern boreal forest in proximity to the Prince Albert study area that is part of the River House Complex (Meyer et al. 2008). These include components at the Crown site (FhNa 86), River House site (FhNc 6), and the Peterson Creek site (FhNb 72).

Late Woodland Cultures: Blackduck

Blackduck pottery represents the beginning of the Late Woodland Period in Saskatchewan, as recognized by pottery vessels with a globular or complex profile (Figure 4). Blackduck ware (ca. 1,000 to 700 rcybp in Saskatchewan) has a rounded body with gentle shoulders, constricted neck, outflaring upper neck and a vertically oriented sprang/cord impressed exterior surface treatment. Horizontal and diagonal cord-wrapped tool impressions and punctate motifs between the neck and lip of vessels are typical of Blackduck pottery. The Blackduck culture overlaps in time with terminal Avonlea, Laurel, and Besant.

Only a small amount of Blackduck pottery has been identified in Saskatchewan. For instance, shards have been recovered at the Mollberg site (FhNa 1), the Goldsworthy site (FdMw 1), and in the vicinity of Birch Hills at FgNi 50 (Meyer 1998; Meyer and Epp 1990; Prentice et al. 1983). Though it occurs over a relatively broad region, the Blackduck culture is poorly known in the southern Saskatchewan boreal forest and adjacent parkland region (Meyer 1978 and 1998). When found, it occurs with small triangular and side-notched projectile points. Blackduck is more strongly expressed in northern Minnesota, adjacent Ontario, and Manitoba where the pottery



is associated with burial mounds that have produced tubular pipes, harpoons, and copper artifacts (Syms 1977; Meyer 1983).

Late Woodland Cultures: Rainy River

The Rainy River Composite is a grouping of complexes first identified in southern Manitoba, northern Minnesota, and adjacent Ontario. It is primarily comprised of pottery that had been considered as late Blackduck or part of the Selkirk composite (Meyer 1998). At present, three regional and/or temporal complexes have been recognized within the composite: Duck Bay, Bird Lake, and Winnipeg River (Lenius and Olinyk 1990). The Rainy River Composite is hypothesized to have originated from a coalescence of Blackduck and Laurel cultures at ca. 950 rcybp. In Saskatchewan, the Rainy River Composite has been recognized based on Duck Bay ware pottery recovered in eastern and east-central Saskatchewan.

Vessels classified as Rainy River Composite exhibit a complex profile with a globular body, constricted neck, and vertical to outflaring upper necks and vertically oriented exterior surface fabric impressions (Figure 4). Vessels may be either undecorated or decorated. Decoration includes multiple rows of stamps between the lip and shoulder, and lip decoration consisting of notches, cord-wrapped tool, or other tool impressions. The lip thickness of such pots is less than the upper neck thickness. The Rainy River Composite is not well known in Saskatchewan at present and is undated. It may be contemporaneous with materials in the Swan River valley, which have been dated in the 1300s and 1400s (Meyer 1998).

The bulk of the vessels from the Goldsworthy site (FdMw 1), an aggregating location on the Barrier River along the edge of the boreal forest, are reflective of the Rainy River Composite and Duck Bay ware in particular (Meyer 1998). Specifically, Duck Bay Notched, Decorated Lip, and Undecorated type vessels are represented in the assemblage.

Late Woodland Cultures: Buffalo Lake

In northwestern Saskatchewan, a pottery producing culture has been recognized in the Buffalo Narrows region that appears roughly coterminous with Blackduck and Rainy River (Meyer 1999). The material remains of this culture, termed the Buffalo Lake Complex (Young 2006), are represented by both pottery and small side-notched projectile points. Accelerated Mass Spectrometry dating of pottery residue dates the culture to 710 to 480 calibrated rcybp (Young 2006). The pottery, termed Narrows Fabric Impressed Ware, is commonly conoidal to slightly globular with subtle shoulder and neck inflections (Figure 4). The vessels are primarily sand tempered with sprang fabric exterior surface treatment. Decoration is limited to an exterior encircling line of punctates on or above the neck and a variety of tool impressions on the lip surface or interior edge. Although currently only recognized in the headwaters of the Churchill River, this complex shares traits with both Selkirk and Rainy River Composites, and may have an as yet unrecognized distribution that extends further across the southern boreal forest of Saskatchewan.

Late Woodland Cultures: Selkirk

The Selkirk Composite (ca. 650 to 200 rcybp) is a grouping of regional pottery complexes in the mixed-wood boreal forest across northern Ontario, Manitoba, and Saskatchewan. In general, globular vessels exhibiting a twined textile impressed exterior and grit tempered, commonly laminated paste typify Selkirk ware. A single row of punctate decoration around the vessel neck or upper neck, as well as lip decoration of cord-wrapped and other tool impressions occurs on a high percentage of Selkirk ware vessels (Meyer and Russell 1987). This suite of decorative traits, particularly the punctate row, on simple globular vessels is the basis of the most



common vessel type of the Selkirk Composite - the Clearwater Lake Punctate type (Figure 4). This type occurs in high frequencies for all complexes. Small side-notched and triangular projectile points, bone tools, and ground stone tools are commonly found in Selkirk components.

Selkirk components are widespread throughout the boreal forest of Saskatchewan and four complexes have been identified to date: Clearwater Lake, Grass River, Kisis, and Pehonan (Paquin 1995). Given the extensive occurrence of Selkirk ware in the boreal forest, and recognition of several complexes, it has been postulated that the Selkirk Composite represents a significant population increase in the boreal forest compared with preceding Laurel and Blackduck periods (Meyer 1978).

The two complexes present in central Saskatchewan are Clearwater Lake and Pehonan. Components of the Clearwater Lake Complex are noted over a wide area in the southern boreal forest. Investigations along the Churchill, Reindeer, and Sturgeon Weir Rivers, Lac La Ronge, and Montreal Lake have resulted in the discovery of pottery-bearing sites dominated by the Clearwater Lake Punctate type (Meyer 1978; Wilson and Light 1980; Forsman 1976).

The Pehonan Complex is the most southerly of the Selkirk composite, identified primarily from spring/summer sites along the Saskatchewan River valley. In addition to producing vessels with the above morphological attributes, pottery from Pehonan components exhibit morphological traits such as angled shoulders, and angled and S-rim profiles. Decorative traits, such as fingernail/finger pinching and interior punctates are also noted (Meyer 1981). These traits are hypothesized as the result of sharing ideas with Northern Plains pottery making groups, such as Mortlach, during long-distance visiting along the southern edge of the boreal forest (Meyer 1981). While present in small amounts, plains pottery is present in components with Selkirk ware further indicating a connection with southern groups.

Associated with the pottery are small side-notched or triangular points, ground stone adzes, ground mauls, notched schistose slabs, and bone harpoons (Meyer 1981 and 1983). The presence of materials such as Knife River Flint indicates a connection with southern groups. Northern Mortlach sites also show evidence of Selkirk traits (i.e., syncretism) or contain Selkirk rim shards. In general, evidence does not point to an overlap of territories for these two cultures but, rather, long-distance visiting and inter-marriage. Selkirk groups, specifically those who produced Pehonan pottery, gathered at large fisheries on the Saskatchewan River in the southern forest edge during spring and early summer then wintered deeper in the boreal forest, while Mortlach groups wintered in the parklands and spent summers hunting bison on the grasslands.

Large scale excavations at the Bushfield West site (FhNa 10) in the vicinity of Nipawin suggest that Pehonan Complex groups made use of the Saskatchewan River valley during the spring and utilized numerous food resources while camped at this fishery (McKeand 1995). For instance, the remains of bison, moose, elk, bear, canids, mustelids, rabbits, and hares, migratory waterfowl and game-birds, and numerous fish species were recovered from excavations at FhNa 10. It has been noted that many large Selkirk Composite sites have been located at major fisheries and contain great amounts of pottery (Meyer 1993).

Other sites that have produced Selkirk materials along the Saskatchewan River valley include Mollberg (FhNa 1), Francois (FhNa 3), Bushfield East (FhNa 13), and Lloyd (FhNa 35) (McKeand 1995). Sites FgNe 6 and 11, identified in the James Smith Reserve reconnaissance (Meyer and Klimko 1986) may be associated with an aggregating centre in the FALC area.



Aggregating centres are sites at which members of several regional aboriginal bands assembled on an annual or semi-annual basis for intensive social interaction and religious ceremonies (Meyer and Thistle 1995). Six of these have been documented in the Saskatchewan River valley. The aggregating centre in the FALC area was named Pehonan or “the waiting place” and was part of the landscape utilized by the Pegogamaw Cree (Meyer and Thistle 1995; Meyer and Russell 2004).

The distribution of sites or components containing Selkirk materials is thought to signify occupation of the mixed-wood boreal forest by the ancestors of the historically known Western Woods Cree. Selkirk Composite sites, some with Euro-Canadian artifacts, are found in areas the Cree inhabited at the time of contact with Euro-Canadians traders and explorers (Ray 1974; Russell 1991). There is also historic, ethnographic, and linguistic evidence of the Cree’s familiarity with ceramics (Meyer 1987; Paquin 1995).

3.2.3.2 Late Precontact Period (ca. 2,000 - 200 rcybp) (Northern Plains Cultural Chronology)

The beginning of the Late Precontact Period (2,000 to 200 rcybp) on the Northern Plains coincides with slightly cooler and moister conditions (Vance 1991). This period is marked by the introduction of pottery and the final replacement of the atlatl by the bow and arrow (Meyer and Hamilton 1994). There was also a significant intensification of bison communal hunting on the grasslands during this period (Reeves 1990).

Ceramic vessels make their first appearance in the Saskatchewan grasslands at ca. 1,900 rcybp (Scribe 1997; Meyer and Rollans 1990). This technology was likely introduced from the Eastern Woodlands/Missouri River region (Dyck 1983). As with the pottery of the boreal forest, Northern Plains ceramics were unglazed, manufactured by hand and fired in open fires. Pottery vessels were often decorated with incisions or impressions in the clay on the upper portion of the containers.

The parkland belt was a zone of seasonal use by groups adapted to the grasslands to the south; in some instances these groups interacted with forest adapted cultures. This is evidenced by the presence of archaeological remains of Late Precontact Period plains cultures that followed migratory bison herds into the aspen parkland during the winter. To this end, Meyer and Epp (1990:323) present the following hypothesis:

The predominant Late Precontact human occupation of the central Saskatchewan parklands was by plains bison hunters, with cultural contact between plains and boreal forest peoples usually restricted to the southern edge of the forest.

Others disagree, arguing that the boreal forest was used exclusively by the Woodland Cultures (Malainey and Sheriff 1996).

For some boreal forest adapted groups, little or no interaction occurred with the plains cultures, possibly due to a seasonal cycle that distanced them from the cultures entering the forest. In other instances, interaction occurred in the form of long-distance visiting and trading, though the participating cultures’ territories did not necessarily overlap (Meyer and Epp 1990). Forays and interactions such as these are known to have occurred along major river systems such as the North Saskatchewan and the Saskatchewan.

Late Precontact Period: Besant

The Besant Phase existed from ca. 2,000 to 1,150 rcybp and has been characterized as containing Besant Side-notched projectile points and cord-roughened or smooth conoidal pottery vessels decorated with punctates



below the lip (Figure 3). The earliest pottery recovered on the Northern Plains occurs in Besant occupations (Meyer and Rollans 1990; Scribe 1997). Syms (1977) notes that Besant assemblages are often dominated by the lithic material Knife River Flint, a material only available from North Dakota. Besant habitation structures include the tipi and the wickiup. Besant is a transitional phase between the Middle and Late Precontact Periods because, though pottery use is evident, Besant Side-notched projectile points (Figure 3) are typical of atlatl darts, not arrows (Dyck 1983).

The Besant peoples were highly efficient communal bison hunters. Reeves (1990) has gone so far as to call the Besant period the fluorescence of bison hunting on the Northern Plains. The Besant people were very successful at killing mass numbers of bison in operations that must have involved the cooperation of hundreds of people. As this form of hunting entails the collaboration of a number of different bands, it is the strongest evidence yet that tribal leaders had emerged, if only for a temporary amount of time.

The Besant culture utilized at least two forms of communal hunting techniques, bison jumps, and bison pounds. At the bison jumps such as the Gull Lake site (EaOd 1) in Saskatchewan, bison were run off the edge of cliffs (Kehoe 1973). Pound sites such as Fitzgerald (EINp 8) in central Saskatchewan employed a temporary corral where the bison could be gathered and killed (Golder 1996). The animals would be funnelled into the corral or over the cliff by hunters arranged along the edge of long drive lanes. Processing sites indicated that bison were heavily utilized for their meat, marrow, and grease (Golder 1996; Clarke et al. 1997).

Besant sites and artifacts are found across the aspen parkland and into the boreal forest edge (Meyer and Epp 1990). Eleven sites documented during the Forks reconnaissance were identified as Besant (Wilson 1982), while eight were noted in the Nipawin vicinity. One of these sites, Boggy View (FhNa 111), produced Besant points in buried context (McKeand 1995). The difficulty in assigning surface sites to the Besant Phase is that points found out of context look remarkably similar to Mummy Cave Series Side-notched points. Besant pottery appears to be restricted to the grasslands, with one occurrence noted in the northeastern portion of the parklands at the Mudrick Springs site (Meyer and Rollans 1990).

Late Precontact Period: Avonlea

At ca. 1,750 rcybp, the Avonlea Horizon appears across the Saskatchewan grasslands and into the edge of the boreal forest, overlapping in time with the Besant culture. It is during this period that the prehistory of the southern boreal forest region exhibits material culture and adaptations separate from the grasslands. Avonlea hunters appear to be the first culture on the Northern Plains to exclusively use the bow and arrow (Figure 3). Avonlea ceramics are typically conoidal and sparsely decorated (Figure 3). When present, decoration consists of a single row of punctates, cord-wrapped tool, or incised marks along the rim of the vessel just below the lip. There are four Avonlea wares recognized in Saskatchewan - Rock Lake (net impressed exterior), Truman (parallel grooved exterior), Ethridge (cord-roughened exterior), and Avonlea Plain (Walde and Meyer 2003).

Meyer and Walde (2009) have proposed that the traditional Avonlea Phase be re-examined as a Horizon composed of four regional phases: Morkin, Upper Kill, Sjøvold, and Lebret. This is based on the co-occurrence of four pottery wares with Timber Ridge Side-notched projectile points in Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, Montana, and North Dakota. For the purposes of this culture history overview, the Lebret Phase will be discussed. The remaining three phases are more typical of open grassland occupations.

The Lebret Phase of the Avonlea Horizon consists of sparsely decorated Rock Lake Ware found in parkland and southern boreal forest sites in Manitoba and Saskatchewan. Rock Lake Ware is pottery with a conoidal



morphology exhibiting a net-impressed exterior surface that is commonly undecorated but is known to possess a single row of punctates impressed below the lip. The bands that produced this material culture followed a seasonal round that included utilizing bison as well as fish (Meyer and Walde 2009).

While highly successful bison hunters, Avonlea groups did not seem to have relied as heavily on the bison for subsistence as earlier cultures on the Northern Plains. Saskatchewan Avonlea sites such as Hartley (Clarke 1995), Lebret (Smith and Walker 1988), and Long Creek (Wettlaufer 1960) contain a wide variety of faunal species. For instance at the Hartley site (FaNp 19), wolf, dog, coyote, fox, jackrabbit, snowshoe hare, badger, a variety of rodents, and waterfowl and fish were hunted and consumed (Clarke 1995). The Lebret site, for which the Lebret Phase is named, is an Avonlea fishing location in the Qu'Appelle valley (Smith and Walker 1988).

Avonlea Horizon sites producing Rock Lake ware have been identified at several locations in the northern parkland/southern boreal forest of Saskatchewan. These include collections from the Birch Hills/Muskoday Reserve area and excavated artifacts from the Gravel Pit site (FhNa 61), Wallington Flat site (FhNa 112), and Mineral Creek site (FhNc 53) (Meyer and Walde 2009). Avonlea (Timber Ridge Side-notched) points have also been recovered from sites in the Nipawin vicinity, on the James Smith Reserve, in Prince Albert National Park and the Forks region (Burley et al. 1982; Forsman 1972; Meyer and Klimko 1986; Wilson 1982).

Rock Lake ware has been excavated from sites along the Saskatchewan River valley in association with a southern variety of Laurel ware at the River House, Peterson Creek, and Crown sites, but not with Timber Lake Side-notched points. In this regard, the net impressed pottery is considered part of the River House Complex and separate from the Avonlea Horizon represented in the above mentioned sites (Meyer et al. 2008).

Late Precontact Period: Old Women's Phase/Prairie Side-notched

The last 1,200 years on the Northern Plains were dominated by the Old Women's Phase (Reeves 1983). One of the principal hallmarks of the Old Women's Phase are buffalo jumps. Sites like Gull Lake (Kehoe 1973), Head-Smashed-In (Brink and Dawe 1989), and Old Women's (Forbis 1962) exhibit extensive use over the last 1,600 years. Bison pound sites are also recognized from this time period and in Saskatchewan include Tschetter (Linnamae 1988) and Estuary (Adams 1977).

Old Women's Phase camp sites such as Mortlach (EcNI 1) "*consist of massive middens of macerated bone, fire-cracked rock, numerous hearths, and boiling pits*" (Reeves 1990:170). The sheer density of heavily butchered faunal deposits from these sites suggests that the primary motive for the hunt was the processing and redistribution of large caches of food, what Kehoe (1973:195) has termed the "industrialization" of the hunt. Old Women's Phase occupations are widely distributed across southern Saskatchewan (Walker 1999), with a limited presence in the northern parkland-southern boreal forest interface (Wilson 1982; Meyer and Epp 1990).

Old Women's Phase components in Saskatchewan dating between 1,200 and 650 rcybp have produced Prairie Side-notched projectile points (Figure 3) in association with globular cord roughened or textile impressed pottery (Meyer 1988; Walker 1999). Prairie Side-notched points (Figure 3) are small, crudely made points with shallow side-notches located close to the basal edge (Dyck 1983). Plains Side-notched points (Figure 3) replace Prairie Side-notched points in late Old Women's Phase occupations dating to between 700 to 200 rcybp. Plains Side-notched points are well made triangular points with square bases and deep narrow side-notches.



Pottery associated with early Old Women's Phase components is globular with rounded or angular shoulders and somewhat flattened bases (Figure 3) (Meyer 1988). Vessels have thick, often blocky walls with cord-wrapped paddle impressed, fabric-impressed or, less frequently, smoothed exteriors. These pots are occasionally decorated, usually with punctates, incised lines, or cord-wrapped tool impressions between the lip and shoulder apex. After 650 rcybp, these vessels are found only in the Alberta and the western Saskatchewan plains (Meyer 1988).

Although Old Women's Phase pottery has been previously identified from a handful of sites in the boreal forest (Meyer 1988; Paquin 1995), these identifications have been reconsidered and are now regarded as woodland pottery (Young 2006). Instead, Old Women's Phase pottery is more likely to be recovered from parkland sites such as Lucky Strike (Wilson 1984) and Hartley (Clarke 1995) and across the grasslands. It appears then, that the Old Women's Phase occupation of the southern forest region was tentative.

However, small side-notched points have been recovered from numerous sites along the North Saskatchewan and Saskatchewan River valleys and throughout the southern boreal forest. Given the widespread use of these culturally ambiguous points during the last 1,000 years by several pottery producing groups, designating such finds as part of the Old Women's Phase must be done with caution when not recovered in association with pottery.

Late Precontact Period: Mortlach Phase/Plains Side-notched

From 650 A.D. through to the protohistoric period, Old Women's Phase components are not well represented in Saskatchewan. Instead, Plains Side-notched projectile points (Figure 3) are usually found in association with Mortlach Phase pottery on the Saskatchewan plains (Meyer 1988). Meyer (1993:64) describes Mortlach pottery as follows:

Vessels generally have globular bodies, sometimes with strong, even angular shoulders. The complex profiles of these vessels are formed by constricting necks and a variety of rim shapes. The latter may simply flare out slightly, or may be vertical (straight), angled, or S-shaped. These rims (and occasionally the shoulders) are elaborately decorated with pinches, incisions, cord-wrapped tool impressions, and punctates. These decorations occur in a variety of motifs.

Given the elaborate decoration and wide variety of surface treatments and vessel profiles, archaeologists have had difficulty establishing types and wares for Mortlach pottery, as well as clarifying or delineating regional expressions. Pottery exhibiting the above mentioned traits has been found at Saskatchewan sites such as Mortlach (EcNI 1), Lake Midden (EfNg 1), Stoney Beach (EdNh 1), and Broadway Avenue (FaNp 1) (Walker 1999). Mortlach sites are often sizeable, containing dense deposits of cultural materials. These include large amounts of pottery and intensively processed bison bone (Meyer 1993).

Mortlach pottery shares a number of attributes with that of Middle Missouri villages, and includes other elements of their material culture such as ice gliders and slot knives (Meyer 1993; Walde 1995). Mortlach components in southern Saskatchewan often include a high percentage of Knife River Flint and fused shale. Given their connection to Middle Missouri villages, Mortlach groups were able to access European trade goods as they became available. Iron projectile points, clay pipes, and trade beads are some of the European materials that have been recovered in Mortlach components (Meyer 1993). There is a paucity of absolute dates for Mortlach components; at present, most suggest a temporal span of ca. 550 rcybp through to the protohistoric period.



Mortlach sites are found throughout the grasslands and the southern parklands of Saskatchewan, bounded to the west by late variant Old Women's Phase, the south by Middle Missouri village cultures, and the north by the Selkirk composite (Walde 1995). It is possible that some bands spent winters near the grassland/parkland interface and summers on the open prairie. While interacting with boreal forest adapted Pehonan culture groups, Mortlach groups did not utilize the southern edge of the boreal forest as part of their territory (Meyer and Epp 1990). It has been hypothesized, based on the distribution of Mortlach pottery and early historic accounts of where different First Nations were situated, that the Mortlach culture could represent the historically known Hidatsa and Atsina (Malainey 1991) or the Assiniboine (Walde 1995).

Mortlach pottery and Plains Side-notched projectile points have been found in the southern edge of the boreal forest, most notably in the Nipawin region. However, a true Mortlach occupation in this area is lacking. The presence of these artifacts in this area has instead been interpreted as a result of long distance visiting and intermarriage between the plains adapted Mortlach groups and forest adapted Selkirk groups at Selkirk camp sites (Meyer and Epp 1990). The influence of Mortlach culture in the southern boreal forest can be seen by the presence of plains pottery traits such as angled shoulders and rims, S-shaped rims and fingernail/finger pinching decoration on shoulders and rims on Selkirk ware vessels. In addition, a small amount of Mortlach pottery has been recovered in association with Pehonan materials (Meyer 1981; Meyer and Epp 1990). These are noted at the Bushfield West (FhNa 10), Francois (FhNa 3), and Mollberg (FhNa 1) sites.

3.2.4 Protohistoric Period

During the Protohistoric Period (ca. 1750 - 1874), First Nations groups often incorporated European goods into their material culture, though they may not have been in direct contact with European traders. Indirect trade through middlemen in contact with Europeans would result in the presence of manufactured items in a region long before the initial establishment of trading posts (Burley et al. 1982). European trade goods such as glass beads, clay pipes, and metal trade points have been recovered in archaeological assemblages in association with lithic and ceramic recoveries (Meyer 1993; Rollans and McKeand 1992; Walde 1995). In many instances, the higher quality manufactured goods replaced indigenous technologies; for instance, copper pots and kettles took the place of clay pottery vessels. Because of the disruptions to human populations caused by the introduction of horses, guns and diseases, the exact distribution of Aboriginal groups at the beginning of the Protohistoric period remains controversial.

3.2.5 Historic Period

The first European to see Saskatchewan was the Hudson's Bay Company fur trader Henry Kelsey who entered the area in the winter of 1690/91. Following this, several fur trade journeys followed the Saskatchewan River system. For instance, Anthony Henday travelled through the Forks area in 1754/55; Joseph Smith and William Pink between 1763 and 1770; David Thompson between 1786 and 1788; and Peter Fiddler in 1792 (Russell 1999).

The first known fur trade posts in the area were built on the Saskatchewan River south of project area in the mid-1700s by French traders. These included the French post Fort St. Louis I, which operated from 1753 to 1757. This was built by Captain Louis Luc de la Corne. Subsequent to the French posts, a series of posts were constructed by the Hudson's Bay Company, the Northwest Company, and various independent traders (Meyer and Thistle 1995).



William Pink, participating on a series of four journeys between 1766 and 1770 with Cree groups along the Saskatchewan and North Saskatchewan Rivers, left canoes abandoned at FALC (Fort St. Louis I). Following this, Matthew Cocking visited the old FALC area in 1772. Fort la Jonquière, which operated in 1751, may also have been in the vicinity (Russell and Meyer 1999).

FALC I operated from 1850 to 1885 as a Hudson's Bay Company post (Russell and Meyer 1999). This was at the location of the previous French Fort St. Louis (Canadian Forts 2005). FALC II operated from 1885 to beyond 1930 as a Hudson's Bay Company post (Russell and Meyer 1999). This was situated at the previous site of French Fort des Prairies (also known as Nepawi House) (Canadian Forts 2005).

It is worthy of note that many of the trading posts along the Saskatchewan River were established at important aggregating centres, such as Opaskweyaw, Paskwatinow, Nipawiwinihk, and Pehonan (Meyer and Thistle 1995). These are sites at which members of several regional aboriginal bands assembled on an annual or semi-annual basis for intensive social interaction and religious ceremonies (Meyer and Thistle 1995). The placement of the forts can be seen as an effort by the traders to insert their economic ventures into the existing social geography of the regional Cree bands.

The FALC area was the location of the aggregating centre Pehonan, which means "the waiting place", and was part of the landscape utilized by the historically recognized Pegogamaw Cree (Meyer and Thistle 1995; Meyer and Russell 2004). Networks of trails led to resource areas and spiritual places surrounding these aggregating centres (Meyer and Russell 2004). The aggregating centres have produced artifacts representative of human occupation dating back several millennia and are, thus, of considerable antiquity (Meyer and Thistle 1995).

By the 1850s the Canadian government began discussing the construction of a railroad in to the northwest in order to facilitate colonization. In the early 1860s an expedition headed by John Palliser was sent by the Royal Geographical Society to discover routes and assess the suitability of the land for agriculture. In 1872 the government passed the *Dominion Lands Act*, which gave ownership of land to any settler who paid a 10 dollar registration fee and maintained residency for three years on an unoccupied quarter-section of land. The arrival of the Northwest Mounted Police, primarily as a result of the illegal whiskey trade, brought Saskatchewan under the jurisdiction of Dominion of Canada in the late 19th Century (Archer 1980).

4.0 ARCHAEOLOGICAL FIELDWORK METHODOLOGY

The HRIA for the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project was completed by Golder using standard archaeological procedures. This included systematic pedestrian reconnaissance and sub-surface test exploration. Pedestrian surface reconnaissance is the most common method used by archaeologists to identify sites within a project area (Ruppé 1966). Visual inspection of the ground is particularly effective in areas with good surface visibility, such as regions of limited soil development and sparse vegetation (Schiffer et al. 1978). Shovel probes are used by archaeologists to locate and identify subsurface archaeological deposits, and are useful in areas of poor surface visibility (Krakker et al. 1983; Nance and Ball 1986; Kintigh 1988). Shovel probes can also provide important information on the integrity, dimensions, and density of cultural materials found at archaeological sites (Kintigh 1988).

Field crews consisted of between four and eight members at any given time. Designated areas of the project footprint were assessed using pedestrian transects that were typically spaced at 25 m to 40 m intervals. Several passes were made within a project boundary until the area was assessed. Sparse vegetation cover and



exposure of the sandy surface resulted in good surface visibility in the jack pine upland areas. Visibility was limited in ravines and low lying areas.

To determine the presence of buried archaeological deposits, shovel probes were judgmentally excavated during the surface reconnaissance. The placement of shovel probes took into account knowledge of the correspondence between landform features (i.e., ravine valley crest, hilltops) and the location of previously documented sites in the project area as well as the southern boreal forest generally. As such, areas that exhibited higher heritage potential were subject to more intense and systematic shovel testing than locations with lower potential. All shovel probes measured 40 cm by 40 cm and were excavated to between 50 cm and 100 cm below surface. The backdirt and wall profile from each test or probe was carefully examined with a trowel for evidence of cultural materials.

When subsurface cultural remains were encountered, shovel probes were placed at 5 m intervals surrounding the first positive subsurface test. This spacing continued until negative shovel probes were excavated. The goal of this testing procedure was to determine the horizontal extent of a site and the density of the cultural assemblage(s) within the area. Handheld GPS units, including GARMIN® GPS 12 and GPS map 60Cx, were used to record all shovel probe locations, as well as specific cultural, topographic, and project features.

5.0 ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEYS

HRIAs associated with advanced kimberlite exploration have been ongoing in the FALC Provincial Forest since 2004. This included work conducted by Golder in the Joint Venture Property and Star Kimberlite, as well as work conducted by Western Heritage Services Inc. (Western Heritage) in areas associated with the exploration of the Star Kimberlite. This culminated in HRIAs specifically for the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project footprint in 2008 and 2010. Prior to these assessments, no HRIAs had been carried out in the project area. However, it should be noted that previous HRIAs were conducted as early as 1994 on behalf of the Rhonda Mining Corporation's Diamond Exploration Program in areas adjacent to the current project area (Sentar Consultants Ltd. 1994 and 1995). A total of 19 Archaeological Investigation Permits have been issued between 2004 and 2010 in relation to diamond exploration in the FALC Provincial Forest (Table 3). A brief summary of HRIAs conducted under these permits is presented below.

Table 3: Archaeological Investigation Permits Issued in the Fort à la Corne Provincial Forest Study Area

Permit No.	Permit Holder	Project Components
04-102	Golder	Kimberlite bodies, geological anomaly pads, various drill pads, water pits, mud pits, access road right-of-way
05-038	Golder	General landscape survey in Joint Venture Property, kimberlite bodies, project specific disturbances (i.e., drill pads, mud pits)
05-087	Western Heritage	Post-impact assessment of various drill pads
06-064	Golder	Orion and Star West bodies, drill pads, access road right-of-way
06-103	Western Heritage	Infrastructure access roads, various drill pads
07-053	Golder	Orion South Shaft
07-245	Golder	Kimberlite Body 120, 140/141, drill pad
07-259	Golder	Drill Pad SPF-29
07-292	Golder	East Ravine survey and LDD pads
07-305	Golder	Drill Pad SPF-29
07-341	Golder	Drill Pad SPF-85



08-092	Golder	LDD pad expansions in Kimberlite Bodies 118, 122, and 150
08-093	Golder	HRIA of Orion South Pit
08-094	Golder	HRIA of Star Diamond Project
08-139	Golder	Orion - Star water line
08-145	Golder	HRIM of Star-Orion South Diamond Project
08-175	Golder	LDD expansions (Star Body)
10-208	Golder	HRIA of Star-Orion South Diamond Mine Project 2010 Facilities Footprint
10-237	Golder	HRIM of Star-Orion South Diamond Mine Project 2010 Facilities Footprint

LDD = Large Diameter Drill.

5.1 2004 Golder Permit No. 04-102

Golder began HRIA investigations in 2004 on proposed projects related to diamond exploration in the Joint Venture Property, located to the northwest of the Star Kimberlite. At this time, the Joint Venture consisted of De Beers Canada Inc., Kensington Resources Ltd., and Cameco Corporation. This work was conducted under Permit No. 04-102 (Golder 2005). During the course of this HRIA, approximately 270 ha including 12 kimberlite bodies, four geological anomaly pads, 33 drill pads, three drill pad extensions, one fuel depot, three water pits, five mud pits, and 4.7 km of access road right-of-way (ROW) were investigated. A total of 711 shovel tests and probes were excavated, and seven heritage resources were discovered as a result of these assessments: FhNe 8 to 12 and FhNf 26 to 27.

5.2 2005 Golder Permit No. 05-038

Golder continued with HRIAs in 2005 in the Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). This included assessment of project specific disturbances such as drill pads and trails occurring in 2005, and pre-impact assessments of kimberlite bodies that would be subject to future exploration activities. In addition, a general landscape survey was conducted in areas of high heritage potential. This assessment was completed as part of the long-term planning process for the Joint Venture within the FALC project area.

A total of 37, 1 ha drill pads were investigated and approximately 6.3 km of associated access roads. In addition, seven leases of less than 1 ha were assessed including lay down areas, water wells, mud pits, lagoons, and buildings. Fifteen kimberlite bodies or extensions of previously assessed kimberlite bodies were investigated, as well as approximately 17.5 km of associated access roads. Specific impact activities (drill pad leases and access road ROW) were assessed on the west portion of the Star Kimberlite extending into the Joint Venture Property.

As part of the general landscape survey, approximately 2,000 ha considered to be of moderate to high heritage potential were assessed along 40 km of creeks and ravine features. The majority of these areas were not in conflict with proposed exploration related activity.

During surface reconnaissance and excavation of more than 3,100 shovel tests and probes, 100 heritage resources were discovered as a result of the 2005 investigations. These newly recorded sites included FhNe 13 to 28, 30 to 34, 36, 38 to 42, 44 to 46, and 48 to 85 and FhNf 28 to 56 and 59 to 61.

5.3 2005 and 2006 Western Heritage Permit Nos. 05-87 and 06-103

Western Heritage also carried out HRIAs in the Star Kimberlite area over the course of a two year period. A search of the Heritage Resources Branch database of previously recorded sites indicate that 17 sites were



recorded during assessments conducted in 2005 under Permit No. 05-087 (FhNe 47 and 86 to 99 and FhNf 57 and 58), and 24 sites were recorded during assessments conducted in 2006 under Permit No. 06-103 (FhNe 102 to 114, 116, 118 to 120, and 124 to 130). These surveys focused on drill pad assessments within the Star Kimberlite, and a post-impact assessment of various infrastructure roads. A detailed assessment or excavation was carried out on seven (FhNe 86, 88, 90, 91, 108, 109, and 112) of these sites (Western Heritage 2006). A total of 58 m² were excavated and over 11,000 artifacts were recovered.

5.4 2006 Golder Permit No. 06-064

Golder conducted the 2006 HRIA in the Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 06-064 (Golder 2006b). Approximately 300 ha of terrain and 5.6 km of access road ROW were investigated during the HRIA. A total of 614 shovel tests and probes were excavated. Individual drill sites and road ROW as well as large areas within the Orion Cluster and the Star West Kimberlite body were assessed through pre-construction, post-construction, and construction monitoring phases.

Six previously unrecorded heritage resources were identified (FhNe 100, 115, 117, and 121 to 123), and 10 previously recorded heritage resources were revisited (FhNe 8, 9, 11 to 14, 26, 27, 54, and 55) in relation to proposed project activities.

5.5 2007 Golder Permit Nos. 07-053, 07-245, 07-259, 07-292, 07-305, and 07-341

Beginning in 2007 Golder began conducting HRIAs on behalf of Shore Gold in their Star Kimberlite property, in addition to the Joint Venture Property, whose partners now included Kensington Resources and Newmont Mining Corporation of Canada. The HRIAs were completed under Permit Nos. 07-53, 07-245, 07-259, 07-292, 07-305, and 07-341 (Golder 2007a, 2007b, 2007c, 2007d, 2007e, and 2007f).

Included in these assessments were the Orion South bulk sample shaft, remaining portions of Kimberlite Bodies 120 and 140/141, eight geotechnical drill pads surrounding the Star Kimberlite, the expansion or re-use of 10 drill pads in heritage sensitive areas along the East Ravine, and an HRIA of the East Ravine Road. A total of 7.8 km of access road, 109 ha of kimberlite bodies, 9.1 ha of drill pads were assessed, and 495 shovel probes were excavated.

Four new heritage resources were identified (FhNe 131 to 134) and 24 previously recorded sites were revisited (FhNe 49, 53, 86 to 91, 102 to 107, 110 to 111, 114, 116, 120, and 125 to 129).

5.6 2008 Golder Permit Nos. 08-92, 08-093, 08-094, 08-139, 08-145, and 08-175

HRIAs continued to be carried out by Golder in 2008 in relation to various small scale exploration activities and infrastructure projects. These were completed under Permit Nos. 08-92, 08-139, and 08-175 (Golder 2008a, 2008b, 2008c, and 2008d). Included in these assessments were Large Diameter Drill (LDD) pad expansions in the 118, 122, and 150 Kimberlites, the Orion South Kimberlite, a water line extending between the Orion South Shaft and the Star Kimberlite shaft, and LDD pad expansions in the Star Body. Approximately 20 ha of drill pads and 3.8 km of water line were assessed. No new heritage resources were identified during these assessments; however, two previously recorded sites were revisited (FhNe 14 and 21).



In 2008, assessment of the Star-Orion South Diamond Project also began. Nine previously recorded heritage resources located in the proposed Orion South Pit were assessed and evaluated under Permit No. 08-093 (Golder 2009). This included seven Precontact sites (FhNe 10, 22, 23, 57, 58, 59, and 131) and two Historic cabins (FhNe 12 and 92) dating to the 20th Century. The remaining proposed facilities footprint including the Star Open Pit, Overburden Storage, PKCF, Plant Site, Unprocessed Kimberlite Stockpile area, CPKS, East Ravine Reservoir and 101 Pond were assessed under Permit No. 08-094 (Golder 2010a). A total of 3,084 ha were assessed and 5,797 shovel probes excavated. The objective of the assessment was to completely examine the project areas to inventory known sites in conflict, as well as revisit previously recorded sites where additional data was required to determine their interpretive potential. Twenty-five previously unrecorded sites were identified (FhNe 135 to 157 and FhNf 62 to 64) and 35 known sites were revisited.

The inventory assessment was followed by mitigation of 22 sites in the project footprint identified as having moderate or high interpretive potential under Permit No. 08-145 (Golder 2010b). As a result of the mitigation program 365.25 m² were excavated and 58,809 artifacts were recovered.

5.7 2010 Golder Permit Nos. 10-208 and 10-237

In 2010 changes were made to the proposed facilities footprint. The East Ravine Pond, 101 Reservoir, and Unprocessed Kimberlite Stockpile area were eliminated; the Plant Area was reduced; expansions were made to the Overburden Storage area, and CPKS area; and the Duke Ravine/Polishing Pond and Sewage Lagoon were added. As a result, an HRIA was carried out of all previously unassessed footprint areas under Permit No. 10-208 (Golder 2010c). A total of 956 ha were assessed and 1,056 shovel probes were excavated. During the course of the assessment, seven previously unrecorded heritage resources (FhNe 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, and 165) were identified and one previously recorded site (FhNf 50) was revisited.

The HRIA was followed by mitigation of five previously recorded heritage resources located in the new or expanded footprint determined to have moderate to high heritage potential (FhNe 26, 27, 34, and 36, and FhNf 59). This resulted in the excavation of 43 m² and the recovery of 2,304 artifacts under Permit No. 10-237 (Golder 2010c).

6.0 HERITAGE RESOURCES

As a result of the HRIA programs carried out between 2004 and 2010, approximately 6,790 ha of the FALC Provincial Forest were assessed, including the excavation of 11,773 shovel probes. A total of 190 heritage resources were identified. Of these, 108 occur within the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project footprint. These heritage resources are discussed further below.

6.1 Star Open Pit

The proposed Star Open Pit has been subject to the greatest number of HRIAs as a result of advanced exploration of the Star Kimberlite between 2004 and 2008. A total of 55 heritage resources occur in this project footprint.

6.1.1 FhNe 11

FhNe 11 is located at the base of a prominent landform known locally as Spy Hill. Spy Hill itself is found along the eastern edge of an upland that provides a unique vantage point of the study area looking toward the East Ravine. The Saskatchewan River valley, located 3 km southeast, is also visible from this location (Figure 5).



Hummocky sand dune terrain is found to the west of the site, while the landscape southeast of the upland slopes toward a low muskeg located approximately 600 m away. Spy Hill and much of the surrounding terrain is in open grassland with sparse regenerating jack pine; however, an aspen bluff is located at the base of the hill.

The site was originally identified under Permit No. 04-102 during HRIA of a proposed drill pad and access road (Golder 2005). A dense debitage scatter was noted on a bladed trail that passed along the base of Spy Hill to Kimberlite Bodies 134 and 101. The scatter consisted of 180 debitage along with a core and fire-cracked rock (FCR). This included a cluster of approximately 150 artifacts dominated by SRC in a 1.5 m by 1 m area on a bench at the eastern base of Spy Hill. Four shovel tests produced 12 debitage comprised of SRC, Red River chert, quartzite, and unknown chert from 10 cm and 20 cm B.S.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 05-038 to conduct a shovel testing program to address continued use and upgrading of the trail. Twenty-three tests and probes were excavated along the access road in the FhNe 11 area. Four of the tests produced cultural materials, as did the screening of a road cut exposure. In total, 120 artifacts were recovered from the tests and road cut screening.

As a result of the positive shovel tests and dense artifact scatter, a recommendation was made to discontinue use of the trail. The trail was bermed off to limit vehicular access and prevent further impacts to FhNe 11.

6.1.2 FhNe 13

FhNe 13 is an artifact find site located approximately 100 m west of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine and 2.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-038. Four SRC debitage and one silicified sandstone pecking hammer were observed on the surface of a narrow jack pine ridge. Although the scatter itself was not assessed at the time, 10 shovel probes placed approximately 50 m to the northwest along the landform were negative for cultural remains.

FhNe 13 was revisited during the 2008 assessment under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 1). A SRC flake was observed on the surface in the area of the original artifact finds. To determine the presence of an intact component, 24 shovel probes were excavated along the ridge the original site was located on and another ridge complex to the south, in an area approximately 170 m long by 25 m wide. All probes were negative for cultural materials. The site appears to have a sparse artifact density and lacks a buried component as indicated by the negative shovel probes.

6.1.3 FhNe 14

FhNe 14 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 2.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River on the eastern edge a low-lying muskeg. The surrounding terrain is hummocky and vegetated with aspen and willow. The site is partially disturbed by a bladed trail.



Figure 5: Location of Known Heritage Resources in Star-Orion South Diamond Project



Photo 1: View of FhNe 13

FhNe 14 was identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) during an HRIA for a proposed exploratory drill pad. During the original assessment two SRC debitage were observed on a cleared trail. A total of 27 shovel probes were excavated in intact areas surrounding the artifact finds. Five probes were positive for cultural materials producing twelve lithic debitage of SRC, quartz, and chert. The surface finds and positive probes were identified in an approximately 30 m by 30 m area.

6.1.4 FhNe 17

FhNe 17 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located 3.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 1.3 km west of the East Ravine. The site was identified under Permit No. 05-038 in hummocky upland terrain. Two SRC debitage were observed on a narrow ridge along bladed access road. Five shovel probes were excavated in the immediate site area adjacent to the trail; however, no additional artifacts or buried soils were recovered.

6.1.5 FhNe 21

FhNe 21 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located 2.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River, and immediately adjacent to a muskeg that serves as the headwaters for the West Ravine. The site was identified under Permit No. 05-038.

Seven artifacts were identified on the surface in a disturbed drill pad within a 40 m by 10 m area. This included five SRC debitage (one primary flake, two secondary flakes, and two shatter) one quartz shatter and one chert biface. Five shovel probes were excavated in the scatter area; however, no additional artifacts were recovered. As such, it appears that FhNe 21 is a sparse lithic scatter of limited heritage significance.



6.1.6 FhNe 47

FhNe 47 is an artifact scatter site located 1.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 400 m west of the East Ravine. The site was originally recorded under Permit No. 05-087. A light scatter of lithics consisting of eight pieces of SRC debitage were observed in a 20 m by 20 m area on an old drill pad. It was apparent that the site was highly disturbed with no intact components remaining.

6.1.7 FhNe 49

FhNe 49 is located on a jack pine ridge on the east valley crest of the East Ravine and approximately 2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River valley. FhNe 49 was first identified by Golder (2006a) as a lithic scatter along a bladed trail and turn around area under Permit No. 05-038. The site consisted of 36 observed debitage in a 200 m by 65 m area. Eleven shovel probes were excavated in intact areas along the ridge adjacent to disturbed areas. One probe produced 30 pieces of debitage 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. In 2006, FhNe 104 (a lithic scatter) was recorded in the same area by Western Heritage under Permit No. 06-104. It was later determined that FhNe 49 and FhNe 104 represent the same site.

FhNe 49 was revisited again under Permit No. 07-292. A lithic scatter of 120 items was observed over an 85 m by 40 m area along the East Ravine Road and a disturbed area west of the road. Included was one biface fragment. SRC comprised the entire assemblage with the exception of one generic chert shatter. Given the extensive scatter observed along the trail, FhNe 49 appears to have been an extensive site. The one positive probe that produced 30 debitage may indicate an activity area.

6.1.8 FhNe 50

FhNe 50 is an artifact scatter site located on the west valley crest the East Ravine, 2.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was discovered under Permit No. 05-038. The scatter consists of 37 SRC debitage and one SRC biface fragment observed on the surface in a 120 m by 45 m area.

A total of 14 shovel probes were excavated in the immediate vicinity of the scatter; however, all probes were negative for cultural materials. Given that no artifacts were recovered during testing of the landform, it appears that FhNe 50 is represented by a sparse cultural component with no buried deposits.

6.1.9 FhNe 53

FhNe 53 is located approximately 2.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River and 150 m east of the East Ravine. The site was originally identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038. The site consisted of six SRC debitage in a 60 m by 20 m area in a bladed trail. Nine shovel probes were excavated in intact areas adjacent to the trail; all were negative for artifacts and buried soils.

FhNe 53 was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 during assessment of the East Ravine Road. One SRC secondary flake was observed approximately 55 m south of the original site UTM location. No additional testing was conducted. FhNe 53 is represented by a sparse scatter with no evidence of intact components.

6.1.10 FhNe 73

FhNe 73 is an artifact find site located 2.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 250 m east of the West Perimeter Ravine. The site was identified under Permit No. 05-038 along a bladed access road leading from Kimberlite Body 134 to the Star drilling area. The terrain in this region is level to gently rolling and vegetated with regenerating jack pine.



FhNe 73 consists of a single SRC secondary flake observed on the bladed trail. Four shovel probes were placed adjacent to the trail surrounding the artifact find; however, no buried soils were identified and no additional artifacts were recovered.

6.1.11 FhNe 86

FhNe 86 is located on a small point of land on the eastern valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 2.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. According to the Saskatchewan Archaeological Resource Record (SARR) form, the site was originally identified by Western Heritage during assessment of a proposed drill pad under Permit No. 05-087. Approximately 100 SRC debitage were collected from the surface and shovel probes were placed systematically across the landform. The site was subsequently destroyed during drill pad construction.

The following year, a post-impact assessment of the site was carried out under Permit No. 06-103 (Western Heritage 2006). A total of 23 m² were excavated within the disturbed drill pad. Over 12,000 debitage and 15 tools were recovered, including one Hanna projectile point.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094. The original excavation block was readily visible. However, the landform on which the site is located was extensively disturbed by the drill pad and adjacent developments along the East Ravine Road. As no intact areas remained adjacent to the drill pad, only limited data would be gained from further excavations at FhNe 86. Further communication with the Heritage Resources Branch (Ebert, 2008, pers. comm.) indicated that the original post-impact mitigation at FhNe 86 was adequate.

6.1.12 FhNe 87

FhNe 87 is located approximately 1.8 km north of the Saskatchewan River and 450 m east of the East Ravine. The site was originally identified as an artifact find under Permit No. 05-87. One SRC Pelican Lake point was observed in blade tillings along the edge of the East Ravine Road; however, the site was not assessed.

FhNe 87 was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 during assessment of the East Ravine Road. A scatter of lithics was observed in a 140 m by 30 m area along the road and the eastern edge of existing Drill Pad SPF 77. Included were one end scraper, two primary flakes, eight secondary flakes, and one shatter, all produced from SRC.

To determine the presence of intact archaeological deposits, five shovel probes were placed at 10 m intervals along the south side of the East Ravine Road adjacent to the scatter, and one was placed immediately south of the drill pad. No buried soils or artifacts were observed in any of the probes. Based on the results of the assessment, FhNe 87 is of limited scientific value.

6.1.13 FhNe 88

FhNe 88 is located approximately 1.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River on a narrow point of land extending west into the valley of the East Ravine. Vegetation consists primarily of an open stand of regenerating jack pine on the landform, with thick aspen and brush on the slopes and ravine below. A portion of the site has been previously disturbed by a 5 m wide bladed trail that bisects the point of land and leads down the steep slope to the ravine below. The site is immediately adjacent to the main East Ravine Road.

FhNe 88 was first identified under Permit No. 05-087 (Western Heritage 2005) and revisited under Permit No. 06-103 while conducting HRIA as part of Star Kimberlite exploration activities (Western Heritage 2006). The



equivalent of 9 m² was excavated, including 23 shovel tests and two test excavation blocks. This included a 2 m by 2 m block north of the trail, where a Besant point was recovered with over 100 debitage. The second 1 m by 2 m block was opened up approximately 48 m to the southwest, along the southern crest of the ravine, where FCR was exposed on the surface. A Pelican Lake point was recovered from this block in addition to FCR and debitage. In total, 2,200 artifacts were recovered. This included 646 debitage and cores, 1,559 FCR, two unidentifiable bone fragments, and the two diagnostic projectile points mentioned above. FhNe 88 appears to represent a large site with dense artifact concentrations, and potential activity/hearth area as represented by the FCR. The scientific value of this site is considered high.

6.1.14 FhNe 89

FhNe 89 is located approximately 1.6 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 150 m east of the East Ravine. The site is situated on gently undulating, sandy terrain near the crest of the valley. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-87, and is a lithic scatter consisting of 42 pieces of SRC that were observed along the bladed trail of the East Ravine Road. The site was revisited under Permit No. 06-103 where an additional 18 pieces of debitage were observed but not collected. No shovel testing was conducted during these visits.

FhNe 89 was revisited again under Permit No. 07-292 as part of the assessment for the Star 35 Drill Pad. To mitigate impacts to this site from the drill pad, a formal artifact collection and shovel testing program was carried out. A lithic scatter totalling 58 pieces of debitage and one biface fragment was collected within a 30 m by 15 m area.

Seven shovel probes were subsequently excavated in undisturbed areas along the eastern and southern boundary of the proposed Star 35 Drill Pad to determine if there were any intact components. No palaeosols or artifacts were noted in any of these probes.

6.1.15 FhNe 90

FhNe 90 is located in open level terrain along the eastern crest of the East Ravine. Vegetation consists of surrounding stands of mature jack pine with thick aspen and brush on the slopes of the ravine. The Saskatchewan River is located 1 km south of the site. The majority of the site had been previously disturbed by drill pad construction.

FhNe 90 is an artifact find that was identified under Permit No. 05-087 during an HRIA for Shore Gold's drilling program (Western Heritage 2005). A subsequent testing program of the site was carried out under Permit No. 06-103 after construction of the drill pad revealed a significant artifact scatter (Western Heritage 2006). A total of 14 shovel probes were excavated in three areas of artifact concentrations. The equivalent of 3.25 m² were excavated and 526 artifacts recovered primarily from a disturbed context. This included debitage (n=521), two bifaces, a scraper, hammer stone, and one re-worked Hanna projectile point collected from the surface (Western Heritage 2006).

6.1.16 FhNe 91

FhNe 91 is an artifact scatter site located 1 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River along the east valley crest of the East Ravine. The site was originally identified as an artifact scatter under Permit No. 05-087. Excavation was subsequently carried out by Western Heritage (2006) under Permit No. 06-103. A total of 13m² were excavated in two areas, and 932 artifacts were recovered. This consisted of 910 debitage dominated by SRC,



three cores, 10 pieces of FCR and two broken hammer stone fragments. A potential hearth was also noted, represented by small circular soil staining and charcoal. Seven small fragments of calcined bone were also recovered. FhNe 91 has potential activity/hearth area as represented by the debitage concentration, FCR and soil staining. The scientific value of this site is considered high.

6.1.17 FhNe 93

FhNe 93 is an artifact scatter site located on the eastern valley crest of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine, approximately 2.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-087 when a triangular SRC biface was collected from the surface. No shovel probes were excavated at this time.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 2). Approximately 17 SRC debitage and four core fragments were observed in an area approximately 115 m long by 100 m wide within the disturbed Drill Pad LDD 49. To determine the presence of intact deposits, shovel probes were placed in intact areas around the drill pad and along the valley crest. None of the 40 probes excavated in an approximately 3 ha area produced any cultural materials.



Photo 2: View of FhNe 93

6.1.18 FhNe 94

FhNe 94 is an artifact scatter site located 1.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 300 m west of the East Ravine. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-087. Twenty-one debitage, consisting primarily of SRC, were observed on a previously disturbed drill pad in an approximately 50 m by 75 m area. The site was highly disturbed with no intact components remaining.



6.1.19 FhNe 95

FhNe 95 is an artifact scatter site located on the east valley crest of the West Ravine, approximately 1.4 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-087. One SRC biface, six flakes, and seven shatter were collected from the surface of a disturbed drill pad. No shovel probes were excavated.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 3). Approximately 50 SRC and quartz debitage were observed on the surface of a disturbed drill pad in a 200 m by 75 m area. One retouched SRC flake (broken) was collected. This tool is unusual in that it is a large concave-convex flake with marginally retouched edges that has been notched at the proximal end as if to be hafted (Photo 4). Metric attributes are presented in Table 9.

To determine the presence of intact components, 22 shovel probes were excavated in undisturbed areas surrounding the scatter. Two shovel probes immediately south of the drill pad produced a total of three SRC debitage from 0 cm to 10 cm below surface; however, all remaining probes were sterile.



Photo 3: View of FhNe 95



Photo 4: Hafted Retouched Flake from FhNe 95

Table 4: Metric Attributes for FhNe 95 Hafted Retouched Flake

Cat. No.	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Shoulder Width (mm)	Base Width (mm)	Notch Width Left (mm)	Notch Width Right (mm)	Notch Depth Left (mm)	Notch Depth Right (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
6	7.8	40.61	33.44	25.21	7.91	9.91	2.36	2.72	6.33

6.1.20 FhNe 96

FhNe 96 is an artifact scatter site located 1.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 300 m west of the East Ravine. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-087. Six debitage consisting of SRC, quartzite and chalcedony, were observed on a previously disturbed drill pad in an approximately 20 m by 20 m area. The site was highly disturbed with no intact components remaining.

6.1.21 FhNe 97

FhNe 97 is an artifact scatter site located 1.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 200 m west of the East Ravine. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-087. Eleven debitage consisting of SRC, chalcedony, and possible basalt were observed on a previously disturbed drill pad in an approximately 20 m by 20 m area. The site was highly disturbed with no intact components remaining.

6.1.22 FhNe 98

FhNe 98 is an artifact scatter located on the west valley crest of the West Ravine, approximately 1.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-87. Nine SRC debitage were observed on the surface of Drill Pad SPF 002 in a 20 m by 20 m area. No shovel probes were excavated.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 5). The drill pad had been reclaimed, but surface visibility was excellent. A lithic scatter consisting of 27 SRC debitage was observed in an 80 m by 50 m area within the disturbed pad. Also noted was an Early Side-notched projectile point, which was collected from the access road



leading south of the drill pad (Photo 6). This point, manufactured out of SRC, is relatively thick, appears to be reworked, and has a ground base. Metric attributes can be found in Table 5.



Photo 5: View of FhNe 98

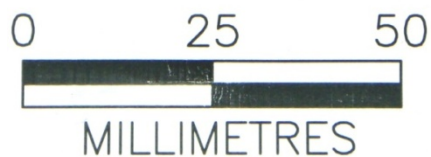


Photo 6: Early Side-notched Projectile Point from FhNe 98

**Table 5: Metric Attributes for FhNe 98 Early Side-notched Point**

Cat. No.	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Shoulder Width (mm)	Base Width (mm)	Notch Width Left (mm)	Notch Width Right (mm)	Notch Depth Left (mm)	Notch Depth Right (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
1718	3.5	27.1	20.1	16.25	8.4	8.27	1.62	1.72	6.48

A total of 32 shovel probes were placed in intact areas surrounding the drill pad in a one ha area. Two probes immediately south of the drill pad produced a total of five SRC debitage 20 cm to 30 cm below surface. Approximately 35 m north of this, two positive shovel probes were excavated off the northeast corner of the drill pad, along the valley crest of the West Ravine. One probe produced 57 SRC debitage representing the early and middle stages of lithic reduction, and the other probe located 10 m to the east produced one piece of shatter.

Intact components of FhNe 98 appear to exist adjacent to the previously disturbed drill pad, especially off the northeast corner.

6.1.23 FhNe 99

FhNe 99 is an artifact find site located on the east valley crest of the West Ravine, approximately 1.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-087. Three quartzite shatter were collected from the surface; however, no shovel probes were excavated.

FhNe 99 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 7). A SRC flake was observed on an old, re-claimed trail on the edge of the ravine valley. To determine the presence of intact components, shovel probes were excavated in a narrow undisturbed area between the old trail and existing drill pads. One shovel probe produced a quartz flake from 10 cm to 20 cm below surface. Four subsequent probes were excavated at 5 m intervals from the positive probe in the four cardinal directions, and seven additional probes were excavated along the valley edge. All were negative for cultural materials.

6.1.24 FhNe 102

FhNe 102 is located on a narrow point of land on the east valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 1.1 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 06-103 as an artifact scatter located on the north end of Drill Pad 076. The site was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 where 13 SRC artifacts were noted in an 85 m by 30 m area consisting of debitage as well as a biface and point midsection. Five shovel probes were placed in intact areas adjacent to the scatter. Two were positive, producing eight pieces of debitage.

FhNe 102 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to conduct additional testing (Photo 8). In addition to debitage observed on the surface of the reclaimed drill pad, a broken SRC biface fragment was collected from the trail leading into the pad (Photo 9). Metric attributes are presented in Table 6.



Photo 7: View of FhNe 99



Photo 8: View of FhNe 102



Photo 9: Biface Fragment from FhNe 102

Table 6: Metric Attributes for FhNe 102 Biface

Cat. No.	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Max. Width (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
1384	11.1	N/A	28.47	12.16

A total of 35 shovel probes were placed in intact areas surrounding the drill pad in a 1 ha area. One positive shovel probe produced a single SRC secondary flake at the south end of the landform. However, subsequent probes surrounding this probe were sterile. Approximately 100 m north of this area, and adjacent to the original scatter, two positive shovel probes located west of the drill pad produced a total of three SRC debitage 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. Despite the almost complete disturbance of the narrow point of land where the site was located, there appears to be intact components still present.

6.1.25 FhNe 103

FhNe 103 is an artifact find originally identified under Permit No. 06-103. A single SRC flake was observed on an access road to a drill pad located approximately 85 m west of the East Ravine Road. The site is located approximately 1.4 km north of the Saskatchewan River and 100 m east of the East Ravine.

Despite an attempt to revisit the site under Permit No. 07-292, FhNe 103 could not be successfully relocated. No cultural materials were observed on the existing access road. To determine the presence of intact archaeological deposits, five shovel probes were placed at the site location. No buried soils or artifacts were observed in any of the probes. FhNe 103 appears to represent a single find with no associated buried components.

6.1.26 FhNe 105

FhNe 105 is an artifact find site located on the east valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 3 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The site was first recorded under Permit No. 06-103 and revisited under Permit No. 07-292. Two SRC debitage were noted on the East Ravine Road; however, only limited testing was conducted at the site.



FhNe 105 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to carry out further testing (Photo 10). A surface survey was conducted along the road and adjacent exposures. No artifacts were observed. A total of 18 shovel probes were then excavated in intact areas adjacent to the road in a 60 m by 60 m area. Two rows of five probes were placed on the east side of the road in approximately 10 m intervals, and eight were placed on the east side of the road. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 10: View of FhNe 105

6.1.27 FhNe 110

FhNe 110 is an artifact find site located 300 m east of the valley crest of the East Ravine, and 1 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was first recorded under Permit No. 06-103 where one SRC flake was observed on Drill Pad SPF 069. No shovel probes were excavated at this time.

FhNe 110 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to test for intact components (Photo 11). The drill pad was reclaimed; however, surface visibility was excellent. No additional artifacts were observed on the surface. A total of 56 shovel probes were excavated in intact areas adjacent to the drill pad in a 1 ha area. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 11: View of FhNe 110

6.1.28 FhNe 111

FhNe 111 is an artifact scatter located on a point of land between the East Ravine and an unnamed tributary, approximately 1.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally recorded under Permit No. 06-103. A concentration of SRC flakes and one potential Hanna projectile point were identified on the access road to Drill Pads SND 39 and SPF 73. The site was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 where an artifact mapping and shovel testing program was carried out in advance of drill pad expansion. A lithic scatter totalling 17 pieces of debitage were collected within a 90 m by 35 m area in Drill Pad SND 39. Thirty-four shovel probes were subsequently excavated to determine the presence of intact components. These were placed in undisturbed areas along the west and south boundary of the drill pad and in the undisturbed area along the coulee edge. All probes were negative.

FhNe 111 was again revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to carry out additional testing of the landform where the site was located. A total of 42 shovel probes were placed in a 2 ha area surrounding the drill pads and along the crest of the ravine; however, all probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.1.29 FhNe 112

FhNe 112 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 50 m east of the valley crest of the East Ravine and 2.7 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The site was first recorded under Permit No. 06-103, where a large lithic scatter was noted in an area 80 m by 30 m on the west half of Drill Pad 079. Two positive shovel probes and two excavation units were excavated in the disturbed drill pad. A total of 76 debitage were recovered.



FhNe 112 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to conduct further shovel testing (Photo 12). The drill pad had been reclaimed but surface visibility was excellent. No additional artifacts were observed on the surface. Intact areas adjacent to the drill pad were tested. A total of 32 shovel probes were excavated in a 2 ha area. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 12: View of FhNe 112

6.1.30 FhNe 113

FhNe 113 is an artifact scatter site located in the inter-ravine area. The site is situated approximately 1.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River on a narrow ridge of land near the confluence of the East Ravine and an unnamed tributary. FhNe 113 was first discovered under Permit No. 06-103. Two SRC flakes were observed and one SRC point midsection was collected from an access road to Drill Pad SPF 62. Two shovel probes were excavated adjacent to the point midsection in the road. Both were negative.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 13). Three SRC debitage and one quartz debitage were observed on the drill pad in an area approximately 40 m by 30 m. To determine the presence of intact deposits, 28 shovel probes were excavated in undisturbed areas surrounding the drill pad and along the narrow landform between the ravines. None contained cultural materials.



Photo 13: View of FhNe 113

6.1.31 FhNe 114

FhNe 114 is located on the east valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 1.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 06-103 as a surface scatter observed along the East Ravine Road. The site was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 as part of an HRIA for drill pad expansions. Over 100 debitage and one FCR were noted and mapped along the road and Drill Pads SPF 78 and SPF 120, and the basal portions of two Early Side-notched points were collected. A total of 24 shovel probes were excavated; however, all were negative for cultural materials.

FhNe 114 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094. Surface visibility was excellent and artifacts from the mapped scatter were relocated. A total of 38 shovel probes were excavated in intact areas surrounding the drill pad in a 1 ha area. One positive probe produced a SRC flake, the rest were negative for cultural materials. The site appears to have been completely disturbed by previous road construction.

6.1.32 FhNe 115

FhNe 115 is located on a knoll and side slope of a ridge feature located approximately 600 m west of the East Ravine and 2.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site is near the north end of a tributary flowing southeast into the ravine. The hummocky terrain is characterized by a regenerating jack pine forest. Shore Road is located immediately south of the site while a drill pad disturbance occurs to the east.

FhNe 115 was first identified by Golder (2006b) under Permit No. 06-064 during HRIA assessments for DeBeers. A McKean lanceolate projectile point was collected from the surface on top of the knoll, while a small but dense debitage concentration was observed along the side slope near the base of the ridge. Included in this



concentration were approximately 90 debitage in a 1.5 m area. Debitage was also observed on the adjacent disturbed drill pad. Subsequent testing of the ridge feature and areas adjacent to the drill pad were negative for cultural materials; however, the immediate area around the debitage concentration was not tested.

6.1.33 FhNe 116

FhNe 116 is an artifact scatter site located 250 m east of the East Ravine valley crest and 900 m northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 06-103 when an artifact scatter was observed on the surface of Drill Pad SPF 071. The site was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 where 12 SRC debitage were noted along the access road at the north entrance to the drill pad. Six shovel probes were excavated in intact areas adjacent to the road, one of which produced a single SRC shatter 0 cm to 20 cm below surface.

FhNe 116 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to carry out additional testing (Photo 14). The drill pad was reclaimed; however, surface visibility was excellent. The artifact scatter was relocated along the access road. A total of 44 shovel probes were excavated in intact areas adjacent to the drill pad and access road in a two ha area. Probes surrounding the original positive shovel test were sterile; however, an additional shovel probe located 25 m to the southwest was positive, producing two SRC shatter 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. Subsequent shovel probes surrounding this positive test were all negative for cultural materials.



Photo 14: View of FhNe 116



6.1.34 FhNe 117

FhNe 117 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation recorded under Permit No. 06-064. The site is located 2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River along the southern edge of a muskeg, in level terrain that is thickly vegetated with young aspen, alders, and occasional stands of jack pine.

A single, light grey SRC secondary flake was recovered from the top 20 cm of a shovel probe. Four shovel probes were excavated in each cardinal direction surrounding the positive probe; however, no buried soils or additional artifacts were encountered. FhNe 117 appears to have limited areal extent and artifact density. As such, the site is considered to offer limited opportunity for further interpretation.

6.1.35 FhNe 118

FhNe 118 is an artifact find located approximately 300 m east of the East Ravine valley crest and 1.9 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally recorded under Permit No. 06-103. A calcined bone fragment and SRC flake were observed on the surface of Drill Pad SPF 080, and one midsection of a projectile point was collected. No subsurface testing was conducted.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 to test for intact components (Photo 15). The topography is gently undulating with intact vegetation consisting of regenerating jack pine. The drill pad had been reclaimed, but exposure was excellent. Two SRC debitage were noted on the surface of the drill pad. Fifty-five shovel probes were excavated in intact areas surrounding the drill pad and access road in an area approximately 4 ha in size. All shovel probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 15: View of FhNe 118



6.1.36 FhNe 119

FhNe 119 is an artifact scatter site located 250 m west of the East Ravine valley crest and 1 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 06-103. A large lithic scatter was observed on an existing drill pad; however, no shovel probes were excavated.

FhNe 119 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 16). A lithic scatter of approximately 30 debitage was observed on the surface of Drill Pad SPF 021 in a 120 m by 50 m area. One SRC retouched flake, one SRC end scraper, and one large ovoid biface made from siliceous siltstone were collected from the surface (Photos 17 and 18; Table 7).

To determine the presence of intact components, shovel probes were excavated in undisturbed areas surrounding the drill pad. A total of 32 probes were excavated in a 200 m by 50 m area. Of these one shovel probe produced seven SRC debitage from 10 cm to 20 cm below surface, the rest were sterile.



Photo 16: View of FhNe 119



Photo 17: Retouched Flake (left) and End Scraper (right) from FhNe 119



Photo 18: Ovoid Biface from FhNe 119

**Table 7: Metric Attributes of Tools from FhNe 119**

Cat No.	Tool Type	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Max. Width (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
1	End scraper	6.2	30.12	29.85	5.7
2	Retouched flake	3.2	28.85	15.75	6.85
3	Biface	124.4	97.27	70.62	17.83

6.1.37 FhNe 120

FhNe 120 is an artifact scatter site located on the east valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 700 m northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 06-103 where a SRC debitage scatter was observed on Drill Pad SPF 66. The site was revisited under Permit No. 07-292. A scatter of 19 SRC debitage and one quartz core fragment were noted toward the north end of the pad and access road leading into the pad. Ten shovel probes were excavated in intact areas adjacent to the scatter. All were sterile.

FhNe 120 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 19). Debitage from the surface scatter were still evident on the reclaimed pad. A total of 89 probes were excavated in intact areas surrounding the drill pad and along the valley crest of the ravine in a 3 ha area. Four positive shovel probes were excavated along the valley crest at the south end of the drill pad within a 25 m by 15 m area. Three of the probes each produced one SRC debitage 0 cm to 15 cm below surface, and the fourth produced one quartzite core and one FCR 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. The potential for an intact feature is represented by the fragment of FCR recovered from the shovel probe.



Photo 19: View of FhNe 120



6.1.38 FhNe 124

FhNe 124 is an artifact scatter located approximately 200 m west of the East Ravine and 500 m northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 06-103. A lithic scatter was observed toward the southwest corner of a drill pad. Two subsequent shovel probes in intact areas adjacent to the scatter produced 60 SRC debitage.

The site was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 20). A lithic scatter of 10 SRC was noted towards the southwest corner of the drill pad in a 90 m by 30 m area. Sixteen shovel probes were excavated in intact areas adjacent to the drill pad and scatter in a stand of mature jack pine. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 20: View of FhNe 124

6.1.39 FhNe 132

FhNe 132 is an artifact scatter located approximately 2.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and immediately west of a tributary of the East Ravine. The site was identified under Permit No. 07-305 as part of an HRIA for a proposed drill pad expansion. Sixteen flakes were observed on the surface of an old drill pad in a 25 m by 25 m area near the edge of the East Ravine. Small jack pine and sparse surface vegetation cover the landform and surface visibility was excellent.

To determine the presence of intact cultural components, seven shovel tests were excavated within the artifact scatter area. The tests measured 50 cm by 50 cm and were excavated to a depth of approximately 80 cm. Sediments were passed through a 6 mm mesh screen. No cultural materials or buried soils were identified.



Five additional shovel probes were excavated within the proposed pad outside of the artifact scatter. They were also negative for cultural materials.

6.1.40 FhNe 135

FhNe 135 is an artifact scatter located on the west valley crest of the West Ravine, approximately 1.3 km north of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 21). The site was identified under Permit No. 08-094. The site is located approximately 100 m southeast of a reclaimed drill pad on a narrow ridge with a slight northwest-southeast orientation. Vegetation on the ridge consists of an open grassy area with burnt deadfall and regenerating jack pine and aspen. The surrounding upland consists of a mix of aspen and jack pine, while the low area below the ridge within the West Ravine is comprised of dense aspen and an understory of brush.



Photo 21: View of FhNe 135

Thirteen shovel probes were placed in a 60 m by 15 m area along the ridge. Seven shovel probes spaced at 5 m intervals along the length of the ridge were positive for cultural materials. Fifty-four pieces of debitage representing all stages of lithic reduction were recovered from these probes varying from 0 cm to 40 cm below surface.

6.1.41 FhNe 136

FhNe 136 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 300 m west of the West Ravine and 1.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 22). The site was identified under Permit No. 08-094 and consists of a SRC flake that was observed on Drill Pad STR 05-013C. After a pedestrian reconnaissance of the reclaimed drill pad, shovel probes were placed in intact areas around the periphery of the drill pad. Two shovel probes placed just south of the northeast corner produced a total of seven SRC debitage from 0 cm to 10 cm below surface. An



additional four shovel probes were placed in the four cardinal directions surrounding these probes in 5 m intervals. All were sterile for artifacts.



Photo 22: View of FhNe 136

6.1.42 FhNe 137

FhNe 137 is an artifact find site identified under Permit No. 08-094. The site is located on the east valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 1.8 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 23). While assessing a narrow ridge extending into the valley of the East Ravine, two shovel probes spaced 5 m apart each produced one SRC debitage 10 cm to 20 cm below surface. An additional six shovel probes were excavated at 5 m intervals in the four cardinal directions surrounding these positive probes. All were negative for cultural materials. No artifacts were observed on a disturbed drill pad and access road located immediately to the east.

6.1.43 FhNe 141

FhNe 141 is an artifact find site located approximately 1.1 km west of the East Ravine and 200 m northwest of the muskeg that feeds both the West Ravine and the West Perimeter Ravine (Photo 24). The site is located on the edge of a jack pine upland that slopes southward toward a lower aspen area that eventually leads to the muskeg. Two pieces of SRC debitage were noted in a 5 m area along a bladed access trail between Shore Road and 101 Road. This trail provides access to a number of drill pads immediately adjacent to the trail.

To determine if intact components were present, a total of 8 shovel probes were excavated. Five were placed north of the trail and three on the south side. All probes were negative for cultural materials. The site was located in a slight hollow and it appears the trail was built up with sand that was hauled in from elsewhere.



Photo 23: View of FhNe 137



Photo 24: View of FhNe 141



6.1.44 FhNe 142

FhNe 142 is an artifact find site located approximately 200 m east of FhNe 141 on the same access trail between Shore Road and 101 Road (Photo 25). The site is located on the edge of a jack pine upland that slopes southward toward a lower aspen area that eventually leads to the muskeg. One SRC debitage was noted along the trail, south of an old drill pad.



Photo 25: View of FhNe 142

To determine if buried components were present, a narrow piece of intact land between the access road and drill pad was tested. Four shovel probes placed at 5 m intervals were excavated adjacent to the find along the north side of the trail. All probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.1.45 FhNe 144

FhNe 144 is an artifact find site located approximately 50 m west of the valley crest of the West Ravine and 1.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 26). Three SRC debitage were noted toward the southwest corner of Drill Pad SPF 001 in a 40 m by 10 m area. Two positive shovel probes placed in the treed area adjacent to the drill pad produced one SRC shatter each from 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. Shovel probes placed in the four cardinal directions surrounding these probes were negative for cultural materials. After testing, the site it became apparent that the positive shovel probes were placed in a grown over trail and the artifacts came from a disturbed context. A series of 11 shovel probes spaced at 10 m intervals were then placed along the valley crest to the west of the drill pad and positive probes. All were sterile along this intact landform.



Photo 26: View of FhNe 144

6.1.46 FhNe 145

FhNe 145 is an artifact find site located approximately 300 m west of the West Ravine and 1.8 km north of the Saskatchewan River. An Avonlea projectile point was collected from the main access road to a series of drill pads (Photos 27 and 28; Table 8). The terrain was generally flat and featureless. No additional artifacts were observed on the surface. Five shovel probes were placed adjacent to the disturbed road within the intact regenerating jack pine. Two were placed on the west side of the access road and three on the east side in approximately 10 m intervals. All probes were sterile for cultural materials.



Photo 27: Avonlea Projectile Point from FhNe 145

*Photo 28: View of FhNe 145***Table 8: Metric Attributes for FhNe 145 Avonlea Point**

Cat. No.	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Shoulder Width (mm)	Base Width (mm)	Notch Width Left (mm)	Notch Width Right (mm)	Notch Depth Left (mm)	Notch Depth Right (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
1	1.4	21.98	14.52	11.44	3.67	3.35	3.45	1.38	1.84

6.1.47 FhNe 146

FhNe 146 is an artifact find site located on the west valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 2.6 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 29). During assessment of the East Ravine, a crude SRC biface was recovered from a shovel probe 10 cm to 20 cm below surface (Photo 30; Table 9). Subsequent probes were placed in 5 m intervals in the four cardinal directions around this positive test. One SRC flake was found in the shovel probe 5 m to the south. The remaining shovel probes were negative. A total of six shovel probes were excavated and two artifacts collected.

6.1.48 FhNe 147

FhNe 147 is an artifact find site located on the eastern valley crest of the West Ravine, approximately 1.1 km north of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 31). A single SRC shatter was collected from a positive shovel probe 10 cm to 20 cm below surface in an intact area of regenerating jack pine. Three additional shovel probes were placed at 5 m intervals to the north, east, and west. All were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 29: View of FhNe 146



Photo 30: Biface from FhNe 146

**Table 9: Metric Attributes for FhNe 146 Biface**

Cat. No.	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Max. Width (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
2	23.5	54.22	42.57	10.24

*Photo 31: View of FhNe 147*

6.1.49 FhNe 148

FhNe 148 is an artifact find site located approximately 500 m west of the East Ravine valley crest and 1.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 32). Two SRC flakes were observed on the surface of Drill Pad SPF 091. To determine the presence of intact components 10 shovel probes were excavated in undisturbed areas immediately adjacent to the drill pad. All were negative for cultural materials.

6.1.50 FhNe 149

FhNe 149 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 300 m west of the East Ravine valley crest and 1.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 33). Numerous SRC debitage were noted in a 30 m by 20 m area toward the east side of Drill Pad SPF 137. A SRC core fragment was also observed on the trail leading into the west side of the drill pad. To determine the presence of intact components, 16 shovel probes were excavated in undisturbed areas of regenerating jack pine surrounding the drill pad. All were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 32: View of FhNe 148



Photo 33: View of FhNe 149



6.1.51 FhNe 150

FhNe 150 is an artifact find located on the east valley crest of the East Ravine, approximately 1.3 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 34). While assessing the East Ravine, a shovel probe produced one SRC shatter 10 cm to 20 cm below surface. Four additional shovel probes were placed in the four cardinal directions surrounding this positive probe; however, all were sterile for cultural materials. An additional SRC flake was observed on a reclaimed trail to the north.



Photo 34: View of FhNe 150

6.1.52 FhNe 151

FhNe 151 is an artifact find site located on a lower terrace within the East Ravine, on the east side of the creek, approximately 2.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 35). While assessing the valley, two SRC debitage were recovered from a shovel probe 10 cm to 20 cm below surface. Four additional probes were excavated in 5 m intervals from the positive probe. The terrace was very narrow only allowing two probes to be excavated to the north and two to the south. All were negative for cultural materials.

6.1.53 FhNe 153

FhNe 153 is an artifact find site located on the eastern valley crest of the West Ravine, approximately 1.7 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 36). One SRC flake was observed on the surface of an old trail leading north from Drill Pad LDD 39. To determine the presence of intact components, shovel probes were excavated in a narrow undisturbed area between the valley crest and drill pads. One probe produced two quartz debitage from 10 cm to 20 cm below surface. Subsequent shovel probes placed at 5 m intervals in the four cardinal directions surrounding this probe were all negative. An additional nine probes were placed along the edge of the valley in a 70 m by 30 m area.



Photo 35: View of FhNe 151



Photo 36: View of FhNe 153



6.1.54 FhNe 154

FhNe 154 is an artifact find site located on the west valley crest of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine, approximately 2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Photo 37). Two SRC debitage and one core fragment were observed in an area 60 m long by 40 m wide on the surface of reclaimed Drill Pad LDD 051. The area surrounding the surface scatter was heavily disturbed by additional access roads and drill pads. To determine the presence of intact deposits, 12 shovel probes were excavated in the limited intact areas adjacent to the drill pad in an area approximately 0.5 ha in size. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 37: View of FhNe 154

6.1.55 FhNe 155

FhNe 155 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 1.3 km west of the East Ravine and 400 m northwest of the muskeg that feeds both the West Ravine and the West Perimeter Ravine. The site is located on the edge of a jack pine upland that slopes southward toward a lower aspen area that eventually leads to the muskeg. The site was observed along a bladed access trail between Shore Road and 101 Road (Photo 38). Approximately 50 debitage consisting of SRC and quartz, six fragments of granite that may represent FCR and one end scraper were noted in a 150 m by 10 m area along the trail (Photo 39; Table 10). Drill Pad 134-05 is located immediately to the north of the scatter; however, a surface reconnaissance of this exposure did not reveal additional artifacts.

To determine if intact components of the site were present, a total of 22 shovel probes were excavated. This included two rows of five probes on each side of the trail placed at 20 m intervals along the scatter. One shovel probe on the north side of the trail produced a SRC flake approximately 25 cm below surface. Two additional shovel probes placed at 5 m intervals on either side of this were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 38: View of FhNe 155



Photo 39: End Scraper from FhNe 155

Table 10: Metric Attributes for FhNe 155 End Scraper

Cat. No.	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Max. Width (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
4	6.37	28.2	21.88	7.99

Although shovel testing did not intercept a significant intact component, FhNe 155 is represented by an extensive artifact scatter including a tool, as well as the potential for a nearby feature as represented by FCR.



6.2 Orion South Pit

The Orion South Pit area was previously assessed over the course of multiple HRIAs conducted between 2004 and 2007 (Golder 2005, 2006a, 2006b, 2007a, and 2007c). As a result of these assessments, nine heritage resources were identified. Several of these sites were revisited under Permit No. 08-093 (Golder 2008b) and are discussed below.

6.2.1 FhNe 10

FhNe 10 was an artifact scatter site of unknown precontact affiliation recorded under Permit No. 04-102 (Golder 2005). The site was identified during assessment of a proposed mud pit associated with LDD operations. FhNe 10 was situated near the base of a small ridge, approximately 450 m southwest of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine. Cultural materials included one SRC core fragment, six SRC debitage, and four white chalcedony debitage in a 40 m by 25 m area. The scatter was located in an area previously disturbed by timber harvest and drill pad preparation activities (Photo 40). Eleven shovel probes were excavated in areas adjacent to the disturbance; however, no intact components were identified. As a result, regulatory approval was recommended for construction of the mud pits at this location (Golder 2005).



Photo 40: View looking across FhNe 10 (2004)

FhNe 10 was revisited under Permit No. 07-038 during assessment of the Orion South Shaft (Golder 2007a). By this time, the mud pits had been constructed and the site area was completely disturbed. However, during the assessment of the proposed shaft area, two SRC secondary flakes were noted on the surface of a ridge approximately 100 m northwest of the original FhNe 10 site location. Due to the proximity of these flakes to FhNe 10, they were considered part of the same site. Subsequent shovel testing of this landform and additional examination of a previously cleared area at the base of the landform to the south did not identify additional



cultural materials. Because of sparse artifact recoveries and lack of intact cultural deposits, FhNe 10 was considered to be of low heritage significance, and no further work was recommended. As this site was completely impacted during shaft construction, it was not revisited during the 2008 field season.

FhNe 10 was revisited under Permit No. 07-038 during assessment of the Orion South Shaft (Golder 2007a). By this time, the mud pits had been constructed and the site area was completely disturbed. However, during the assessment of the proposed shaft area, two SRC secondary flakes were noted on the surface of a ridge approximately 100 m northwest of the original FhNe 10 site location. Due to the proximity of these flakes to FhNe 10, they were considered part of the same site. Subsequent shovel testing of this landform and additional examination of a previously cleared area at the base of the landform to the south did not identify additional cultural materials. Because of sparse artifact recoveries and lack of intact cultural deposits, FhNe 10 was considered to be of low heritage significance, and no further work was recommended. As this site was completely impacted during shaft construction, it was not revisited during the 2008 field season.

6.2.2 FhNe 12

FhNe 12 is an historic artifact/feature combination site originally identified during assessment of Kimberlite Body 145 under Permit No. 04-102 (Golder 2005). The site is located toward the northwest boundary of the Orion South Pit, approximately 800 m northwest of the tributary of the East Ravine. Identified at FhNe 12, were the remains of a cabin foundation immediately north of an overgrown vehicle trail (Photo 41).



Photo 41: View across FhNe 12

Although no structural materials remained at the feature, a raised outline was clearly visible. Surrounding this feature were pits along three of the walls. A scatter of historic artifacts was also observed on the surface. These included seven ferrous cans, one clear glass jar, one ferrous chimney stove pipe fragment, and the pieces of a



“McClary’s Famous” cook stove (Photo 42). A sketch map of the site was made, but no shovel testing was carried out. The cabin was staked and flagged for avoidance.



Photo 42: View of cook stove with maker's mark

6.2.3 FhNe 22

FhNe 22 was first recorded during assessment of a proposed expansion of the DL Road in the Fort à la Corne Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). This artifact find was noted along the road where it crossed a small ridge approximately 50 m west of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine. This site of unknown precontact affiliation consisted of two SRC debitage located 10 m apart. Six shovel probes were excavated in the immediate area of the finds; however, all were negative for additional cultural materials or buried soils.

FhNe 22 was revisited during the Orion South Pit assessment under Permit No. 08-093. A pedestrian reconnaissance was conducted of the site area. Despite good surface visibility along the road and adjacent drill pad, no artifacts were observed (Photo 43). To determine if there were any buried components, nine shovel probes were excavated in intact areas within a 50 m by 40 m area. Probes were excavated to 70 cm below surface. No intact cultural materials or buried soils were identified in any of the probes.



Photo 43: View looking south across FhNe 22

6.2.4 FhNe 23

FhNe 23 was recorded during the same assessment of the proposed expansion of the DL Road under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). The site is located approximately 170 m north of FhNe 22 and 100 m west of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine. The site consisted of three SRC debitage (one primary flake, one tertiary flake, and one shatter) observed in the bladed road in an area approximately 20 m by 5 m. Five shovel probes were excavated adjacent to the road; however, all were negative for cultural materials and buried soils.

FhNe 23 was revisited during the Orion South Pit assessment under Permit No. 08-093. Pedestrian reconnaissance was conducted of the site area. Despite good surface visibility along the road and adjacent areas, no artifacts were observed (Photo 44). To determine if there were any intact components, 13 shovel probes were excavated in intact areas along the road within an 80 m by 80 m area. Probes were excavated to 70 cm below surface. No intact cultural materials or buried soils were identified in any of the probes.

6.2.5 FhNe 57

FhNe 57 was first recorded during general landscape assessments in the FALC Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). Two lithic scatters were noted within 50 m of each other, approximately 100 m west of an unnamed tributary of the East Ravine. One scatter was found on top of a prominent jack pine ridge, and the other was located at the base of the ridge within thick poplar. A total of 16 pieces of debitage were observed between the two scatters including seven SRC secondary flakes, seven SRC shatter, and two quartzite shatter. Five shovel probes were excavated at the base of the ridge and four were excavated along the ridge-top. However, no cultural materials or palaeosols were encountered, and the site was considered to have low heritage potential.



Photo 44: View looking north across FhNe 23

FhNe 57 was revisited during the Orion South Pit assessment under Permit No. 08-093. Since the original assessment, the ridge where part of the site was located has been quarried for sand (Photo 45). The east end of the landform is currently being removed and an overburden spoil pile has been deposited on top of the ridge as a result. Surface visibility was excellent with many exposures. Two SRC flakes were noted on the ridge, one on the spoil pile, and another on the edge of the hill cut. To determine if there were any intact components, four shovel probes were placed along the top of the ridge (Photo 46). No intact cultural materials or buried soils were identified in any of the probes.

The base of the ridge was also examined where the second artifact scatter was previously recorded. One SRC secondary flake was recovered from a shovel probe 0 cm to 10 cm below surface. Based on the UTM coordinates from the original SARR form, this appeared to be in the location of the original scatter. To determine if there were any intact components, eight shovel probes were placed in a 20 m by 20 m area surrounding the positive test (Photo 47). Probes were excavated to 70 cm below surface. No intact cultural materials or buried soils were identified in any of the probes.

6.2.6 FhNe 58

FhNe 58 is an artifact find site identified during a general landscape assessment in the FALC Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). The site is located approximately 300 m north of FhNe 57 and 100 m east of the tributary of the East Ravine. A single SRC primary flake was observed in a vehicle rut on the surface of an open, sandy ridge. Five shovel probes were excavated adjacent to the artifact find spot; however, no additional cultural materials were noted.



Photo 45: View looking west toward excavated ridge where part of FhNe 57 is located



Photo 46: Testing along FhNe 57 ridge



Photo 47: Testing FhNe 57 at the base of the ridge

6.2.7 FhNe 58

FhNe 58 is an artifact find site identified during a general landscape assessment in the FALC Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). The site is located approximately 300 m north of FhNe 57 and 100 m east of the tributary of the East Ravine. A single SRC primary flake was observed in a vehicle rut on the surface of an open, sandy ridge. Five shovel probes were excavated adjacent to the artifact find spot; however, no additional cultural materials were noted.

FhNe 58 was revisited during the Orion South Pit assessment under Permit No. 08-093. A pedestrian reconnaissance was conducted of the site area. Despite moderate to good surface visibility in the clearing, no artifacts were observed (Photo 48). To determine if there were any intact components, nine shovel probes were excavated in a 75 m by 55 m area. No intact cultural materials or buried soils were identified in any of the probes.

6.2.8 FhNe 59

FhNe 59 is an artifact find site identified during the general landscape assessment in the FALC Joint Venture Property under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). The site is located approximately 200 m south of FhNe 57 and 100 m west of the tributary of the East Ravine. Two SRC flakes were noted on the surface of an old exploration drill pad in a hollow, adjacent to a jack pine ridge. Four shovel probes were excavated on the ridge in the immediate vicinity of the debitage, while three probes were placed along the valley crest of the nearby drainage to the east. No additional cultural materials were observed.



Photo 48: View looking southwest across FhNe 58

This site was revisited during the Orion South Pit assessment under Permit No. 08-093. One piece of chert debitage was observed on a sandy exposure approximately 35 m northeast of an old drill hole. Fourteen shovel probes were excavated in intact areas surrounding the drill pad in an area 120 m long by 50 m wide. This included the surrounding ridge and hollow where the site was located. No intact cultural materials or buried soils were identified in any of the probes.

6.2.9 FhNe 92

FhNe 92 was originally identified in 2005 by Western Heritage as part of a heritage impact assessment for Shore Gold's Star Kimberlite underground exploration project. This site was described as an artifact and feature combination site that consisted of an abandoned cabin, two trash middens, an old stove, and associated refuse dating to the mid 20th Century (Photo 49).

FhNe 92 was revisited during assessment of the Orion South Pit under Permit No. 08-093. The site is found immediately west of the DL Road. The cabin appears to be a dilapidated, elongate shack on skids that was hauled to the location (Photo 50). A metal tow hook is located on the front of the shack and red plastic reflectors are on the back. The shack measures approximately 6 m long by 2 m wide. Wire nails and saw-cut planks were used in its construction. Remnant red paint was visible on the exterior, tar paper was on the interior walls, and metal flashing was used on the corners.



Photo 49: View looking south across FhNe 59



Photo 50: View of shack from FhNe 92



No depressions or pit features were observed near the shack; however, four can middens were noted in the vicinity. One can midden was noted approximately 20 m to the west, and two were located approximately 7 m and 22 m to the east. The latter midden also contained the remnants of an old tin stove (Photo 51). The fourth can midden was located approximately 50 m to the south. All middens contained generally the same items, including various oil cans and food tins, including many “Sun-Rype” juice cans, a “Roger’s Golden Syrup” can, a “Vogue” tobacco tin, and glass Pepsi bottles. Seven shovel probes were excavated in the site area, four surrounding the shack, and three placed near the larger trash midden west of the shack. All were sterile for cultural materials.



Photo 51: View of can midden from FhNe 92

The portable shack and refuse appear to post-date the Second World War and are relatively recent (although the lack of French and metric measurements on the labelling suggests that the legible containers predate 1974). It is likely these materials relate to forestry or hunting activities carried out in the FALC Provincial Forest during the mid part of the 20th Century.

6.2.10 FhNe 131

Heritage resource FhNe 131 was identified during the HRIA of the southern portion of the Orion South Kimberlite body under Permit No. 07-259 (Golder 2007a). The site was located approximately 700 m southwest of the tributary of the East Ravine, in gently undulating terrain with a forest cover consisting of regenerating jack pine (Photo 52).



Photo 52: View looking south across FhNe 131

One SRC projectile point tip was observed on an access road to Drill Hole 140-06-062C. A visual inspection was conducted of the road and drill pad, and four shovel probes were excavated adjacent to the find. All probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.3 Overburden Storage

The majority of the Overburden Storage area was assessed under Permit Nos. 08-094 and 10-208 (Golder 2010a and 2010c). However portions of the 101 Ravine located in this footprint were assessed under Permit No. 05-038. A total of 36 heritage resources were identified in this footprint. They are discussed below.

6.3.1 FhNe 24

FhNe 24 is an artifact scatter located on the west valley crest of the 101 Ravine, approximately 3.8 km west of the Saskatchewan River. The site was identified under Permit No. 05-038. Eight SRC debitage and one SRC biface were collected from two positive shovel probes in an approximately 20 m by 10 m area. The subsequent eight shovel probes excavated in the site area were all sterile.

FhNe 24 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094. No artifacts were observed on the surface; however, two of the original shovel probes and the flagging tape marking the site were relocated. To determine the extent of the intact component, the thickly vegetated valley crest was tested with two rows of shovel probes placed 5 m apart. One shovel probe produced 26 SRC debitage from 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. An additional 11 shovel probes were excavated around this positive test in 5 m intervals; however, all were negative for cultural materials. A total of 24 shovel probes were excavated in a 40 m by 20 m area. Despite the one positive shovel test, subsequent testing of the landform indicates there is not an extensive occupation at this site.



6.3.2 FhNe 25

FhNe 25 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located along an access road leading towards the 101 Ravine. The site occurs on a sand ridge landform in hummocky upland terrain approximately 3 km from the Saskatchewan River, and 500 m east of the 101 Ravine. One piece of SRC shatter and one SRC tertiary flake were identified in the road scar. Six shovel probes excavated in the immediate site area, one produced a single SRC debitage from the 20 cm to 40 cm B.S. No buried soils were identified in the stratigraphic profile. The site is of limited extent and artifact density. As such, its interpretive potential is considered limited.

6.3.3 FhNe 26

FhNe 26 is located on a slight ridge, approximately 1.5 km west and north of the West Perimeter Ravine and the 101 Ravine. The Saskatchewan River is located approximately 2.5 km southeast. The surrounding landscape consists of gently undulating terrain with scattered jack pine vegetation. The site is partially disturbed by a bladed trail.

FhNe 26 was first identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) during an HRIA for the access road to 101 Kimberlite. A surface scatter consisting of 33 debitage of SRC and quartzite was observed along the road cut in a 40 m area. Sixteen shovel probes were placed in intact areas adjacent to the road. Three produced a total of seven debitage from 0 cm to 15 cm depth below surface. Given the potential for an intact component, the site was revisited for additional testing and artifact mapping that same year in advance of trail improvements. An additional five shovel probes were excavated in 10 cm levels adjacent to the road. Two of these probes produced nine artifacts from 0 cm to 10 cm depth below surface. The detailed mapping and testing program was followed by monitoring of road blading; however, no artifacts or features were identified in the ROW.

The site is considered to have moderate interpretive value because of the large surface scatter and intact component as indicated by the five positive shovel probes.

6.3.4 FhNe 27

FhNe 27 is located on a relatively level area, approximately 800 m west of the West Perimeter Ravine and 600 m northeast of FhNe 26. To the south of the site, the terrain begins to slope to a seasonal drainage. The surrounding hummocky landscape is vegetated with a mixture of aspen and brush near the drainage and jack pine in open areas. The Saskatchewan River is located approximately 2.5 km southeast. The site is partially disturbed by a bladed trail.

FhNe 27 was first identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) during an HRIA of the 101 Kimberlite access. A surface scatter consisting of five debitage of SRC, Red River chert, and quartz was observed along the road cut. Nine shovel probes were placed in intact areas adjacent to the road. One probe was positive producing 23 debitage from 0 cm to 10 cm depth below surface. Given the potential for an intact component, the site was revisited for additional testing that same year in advance of trail improvements. An additional five shovel probes were excavated in 10 cm levels adjacent to the road. Two of these probes, excavated as a 1 m by 0.5 m unit, and placed immediately adjacent to the original positive probe, produced 39 artifacts. This included 28 debitage and nine highly fragmented bone pieces. Most significantly, however, was the recovery of fragments from two Late Side-notched projectile points. Material was observed from 0 cm to 40 cm below surface; however, it was observed that rodent disturbance was likely responsible for distributing



artifacts to lower depths from the upper 20 cm. Both projectile points and bone fragments came from the rodent disturbance at lower depths.

The detailed testing program was followed by monitoring of road blading; however, no additional artifacts or features were identified in the ROW. Given the variety of lithic material, and presence of projectile points and bone fragments, the site was considered to have high interpretive value.

6.3.5 FhNe 30

FhNe 30 is an artifact find site located on a small jack pine knoll located approximately 150 m west of the 101 Ravine and 400 m north of the confluence with an unnamed tributary. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-038 where two SRC debitage were observed on the surface of the knoll. Five subsequent shovel probes were excavated; all were negative for cultural materials.

FhNe 30 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 53). A SRC flake and old shovel probe were noted on the surface. An additional seven shovel probes were excavated in an approximately 25 m by 20 m area encompassing the site. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 53: View of FhNe 30

6.3.6 FhNe 31

FhNe 31 is located on a sand ridge that overlooks the 101 Ravine, which is located 200 m to the west. The Saskatchewan River valley is located 3 km to the southeast. The sandy upland ridge is vegetated with an open jack pine forest.



FhNe 31 was first identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). A lithic scatter was noted on the surface in an approximately 30 m by 20 m area. Eight shovel probes were subsequently excavated in the area of the scatter. Three probes were positive for lithics producing 107 quartz and SRC debitage from 0 cm to 25 cm below surface, indicating the presence of a buried component.

6.3.7 FhNe 32

FhNe 32 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 300 m east of the 101 Ravine and 3.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-038 when a scatter of SRC debitage was observed on the ground surface in an open jack pine forest. Six shovel probes were excavated; however, all were negative for cultural materials.

FhNe 32 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094 (Photo 54). Although no artifacts were observed on the surface, three of the original shovel probes were relocated. Eleven additional shovel probes were excavated in a 25 m by 25 m area encompassing the site; however, all were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 54: View of FhNe 32

6.3.8 FhNe 33

FhNe 33 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located 3.1 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River and 350 m east of the 101 Ravine. Two debitage consisting of SRC and quartz flakes were noted within an approximately 20 m by 10 m area along a bladed trail. A total of five shovel probes were excavated in the immediate vicinity of the scatter; however, all were negative for buried soils or additional cultural materials. It appears that FhNe 33 has limited artifact density and no buried archaeological deposits.



6.3.9 FhNe 34

FhNe 34 is located in a low-lying area characterized by a thick aspen forest. The site is approximately 800 m north of the 101 Ravine and 2.75 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site is partially disturbed by a bladed trail.

FhNe 34 was first identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) during landscape surveys along the 101 Ravine. A light lithic scatter, which included a Late Side-notched projectile point, was observed along a 60 m portion of a bladed trail. Nine shovel probes were excavated within and adjacent to the trail. Only one probe in the trail was positive, producing 12 debitage of SRC and generic chert. Given the potential for an intact component, the site was revisited for additional testing that same year in advance of trail improvements. An additional three shovel probes were excavated in 10 cm levels adjacent to the road. One probe was positive producing two SRC shatter.

The detailed testing program was followed by monitoring of road blading; however, no additional artifacts or features were identified in the ROW. Although FhNe 34 consisted of a light artifact density in a largely disturbed context, it was considered to have moderate interpretive value because of the diagnostic projectile point and the potential for additional intact deposits.

6.3.10 FhNe 36

FhNe 36 is located on a ridge and terrace feature overlooking the 101 Ravine, which lies approximately 200 m to the west. The Saskatchewan River valley is located approximately 3 km southeast. The surrounding hummocky landscape is vegetated by aspen and willow in low-lying areas, while jack pine is found on elevated ridges. The site is located in an undisturbed area on the east side of the ravine where there are no existing vehicular trails.

FhNe 36 was first identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) as part of surveys along the 101 Ravine. An artifact scatter consisting of 30 debitage was observed over a 130 m by 90 m area. Nineteen shovel probes were excavated along the various landforms within the area of the scatter. A cluster of three shovel probes at the base of the ridge were positive producing a total of 23 artifacts; a fourth probe was positive on a jack pine ridge located 50 m to the southwest producing one debitage; and a fifth positive probe located 80 m further south was positive producing 45 debitage. The five positive probes produced a total of 69 SRC, quartz, Red River chert, and silicified sandstone debitage. The site was considered to have high interpretive value based on the presence of intact cultural deposits, and the variety of lithic materials present.

6.3.11 FhNe 45

FhNe 45 is located on a sandy terrace on the eastern bank of the 101 Ravine. The Saskatchewan River valley is located 3.5 km to the southeast. The vegetation consists primarily of an open stand of jack pine.

The site was originally located by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) where one piece of SRC debitage was observed on the surface. Eleven shovel probes were subsequently excavated, with three probes in a 30 m by 20 m area producing 11 SRC debitage. The site was considered to have moderate interpretive value based on the presence of buried cultural deposits in three probes.



6.3.12 FhNe 44

FhNe 44 is an artifact scatter site of unknown precontact affiliation identified under Permit No. 05-038. The site is located 3.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River, along the east valley crest of the 101 Ravine. The site is located on a low ridge that slopes gently toward the creek.

Five SRC debitage were observed in an approximately 10 m area on the surface of this landform. Five shovel probes were excavated in the area of the scatter with one probe producing a single SRC flake from the upper 20 cm. FhNe 44 represents a lithic scatter with a light artifact density and sparse buried component. As such, it is considered to be of low heritage significance.

6.3.13 FhNe 46

FhNe 46 is located on the east bank of the 101 Ravine overlooking the creek to the west. The Saskatchewan River is located 3.5 km to the southeast. The area is characterized by level to rolling terrain surrounded by low stabilized sand dunes and a ravine to the east. The area is vegetated by an aspen forest.

FhNe 46 was first located by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a). A single SRC flake was observed on the surface, and eight subsequent shovel probes were excavated. Three probes were positive for cultural materials producing 27 SRC and chert debitage as well as one SRC end scraper.

6.3.14 FhNe 74

FhNe 74 is located in a clearing surrounded by a thick regenerating aspen forest on the east valley crest of the 101 Ravine. The Saskatchewan River is located 3.5 km southeast. The site was first located by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038 during landscape assessments. A single Red River Chert flake was identified in the small clearing. Eight shovel probes were excavated in the area, with two producing 125 lithic artifacts including SRC, silicified sandstone, chert, and siltstone debitage.

6.3.15 FhNe 75

FhNe 75 is an artifact find site located on a terrace within the 101 Ravine and 3.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was first identified by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038. A single SRC shatter was found during surface reconnaissance in a previously cleared area now vegetated with tall grass. Four shovel probes were excavated surrounding the surface artifact; however, all were negative for additional cultural materials or buried soils. As such, FhNe 75 is of limited heritage significance and no further work is recommended at this location.

6.3.16 FhNe 76

FhNe 76 is an artifact find site located on the west side of the 101 Ravine, approximately 3.7 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was first identified by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038. A single SRC flake was recovered from a shovel probe placed on a ridge extending into the ravine valley. Two additional shovel probes were placed in the immediate vicinity of the site but were negative for additional cultural materials.

6.3.17 FhNe 77

FhNe 76 is an artifact find site located on the west side of the 101 Ravine, approximately 3.7 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was first identified by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038. A single SRC flake was recovered on a ridge landform on the terrace of the 101 Ravine. Two additional shovel probes were placed in the immediate vicinity of the site but were negative for additional cultural materials.



6.3.18 FhNe 78

FhNe 78 is a precontact artifact scatter and historic artifact scatter site located approximately 300 m west of the 101 Ravine. The site is located along an old trail following a ridge that leads to a beaver dam crossing the 101 Ravine. FhNe 78 was originally recorded under Permit No. 05-038. Ten SRC debitage were observed on the surface; however, the five subsequent shovel probes indicated there was no intact component. Approximately 140 m to the east, a scatter of historic artifacts was observed on the surface. This included the body of a Chevrolet pick-up truck body (ca. 1940s), a Leroy cook stove (McClary Pat. 1930 No. B8214 Type 310631), tin cans, glass fragments, bed frame, and a rectangular depression.

FhNe 78 was revisited to obtain more information on the historic component of the site, and determine an approximate age of occupation (Photo 55). The site was readily relocated with the surface debris including the cook stove, and the Chevrolet pick-up truck readily observable. The rectangular depression that was originally noted appears to be a bladed cut along the edge of an old two-track trail, and is not the remains of a cabin or related feature.



Photo 55: View of FhNe 78

Additional surface scatter consisted of food tins, mason jars, ceramic plates, a Copenhagen tin top, glass Pepsi bottles, green soft drink bottle, plate glass, aspirin tin, Heinz ketchup bottle, oil drum, and a chainsaw blade. Several of the glass jars were manufactured by the Dominion Glass Company and have the progressive box date code before the trademark, which post dates 1953 (Miller and Jorgensen 1986)

Two smaller depressions assumed to be refuse pits measuring approximately 2 m by 2 m were located 20 m west of the pick-up truck. Both were tested with a shovel probe. One depression was completely sterile, while



the second one produced a considerable amount of recent garbage including a glass Pepsi bottle, food tins, and plastic bread bags (Photo 56).



Photo 56: Recent garbage from FhNe 78

Based on the artifacts identified at the site, the historic component of FhNe 78 appears to be more recent and dates to the latter half of the 1900s. The debris likely relates to forestry or hunting activities and may represent a camping location along an old trail that was repeatedly used.

6.3.19 FhNe 79

FhNe 79 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located on a long ridge structure on the west side of the 101 Ravine and 3.8 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was identified by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038. Two SRC secondary flakes were observed on the surface of the ridge. A total of 11 shovel probes were excavated on the landform, two of which produced single, SRC secondary flakes. The site area, based on the surface finds and positive shovel probes, measures approximately 200 m by 60 m.

6.3.20 FhNe 80

FhNe 80 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located on the east valley crest of the 101 Ravine, approximately 3.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. The site was identified by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038. A single SRC flake was identified on the surface in a clearing overlooking the creek. Five shovel probes were excavated at the find spot. Of these, one produced two SRC tertiary flakes and one produced one SRC shatter.



6.3.21 FhNe 81

FhNe 81 is an artifact find site found near the toe of a narrow ridge located 400 m east of the 101 Ravine and 3.5 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. A single SRC shatter was noted on the surface of the ridge. Six shovel probes were placed along the landform to determine if buried deposits were present. However, all were negative for cultural materials or palaeosols.

6.3.22 FhNe 82

FhNe 82 is located immediately east of the 101 Ravine, approximately 4 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. This site is situated along two interconnected, low ridges. The sandy ridges are fairly open with scattered jack pine and poplar located along them. Thicker poplar forests are located to the east and west.

FhNe 82 was first identified by Golder (2006a) under Permit No. 05-038. Thirty-one SRC debitage and one unidentifiable bone fragment were observed on the surface in two areas (A and B) within a 100 m by 60 m area. Eighteen shovel probes were originally excavated in the immediate vicinity of the flake clusters. Two probes associated with the northern flake cluster (Area B) produced 29 SRC debitage. None of the shovel probes in the southern cluster (Area A), which had a larger artifact scatter, produced artifacts.

6.3.23 FhNe 83

FhNe 83 is an artifact find site of unknown precontact affiliation located 600 m west of the 101 Ravine, and approximately 4.9 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. A single SRC secondary flake was observed at the base of a low sand hill in the scar of an overgrown vehicle trail leading southeast towards the 101 Ravine. Five shovel probes were excavated adjacent to the artifact find; however, all were negative for cultural materials.

6.3.24 FhNe 138

FhNe 138 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 280 m west of the 101 Ravine. The site is situated within a clearing of thick aspen in a low area bordering a muskeg (Photo 57). Vegetation consists of thick grass and willow with aspen and spruce saplings. Surface visibility was poor as result of the vegetation.

A total of seven shovel probes were excavated at the site and nine SRC debitage were collected. Three debitage were first identified 20 cm to 30 cm below surface in a probe while shovel testing the clearing. These artifacts corresponded with a dark soil layer that may represent a buried palaeosol. Four shovel probes were subsequently placed at 5 m intervals in the four cardinal directions surrounding this probe. Shovel probes to the east and west were also positive, producing two SRC debitage each. Additional shovel probes on either side of these probes were negative for cultural materials.

The soil stratigraphy of this site was more complex than elsewhere in the Overburden Disposal area. The site was identified after a heavy rain the previous day and the soils were quite saturated. Water seems to drain into this low area resulting in more episodes of deposition resulting in complex stratigraphy with organic sandy loams. The soil profile of the shovel probes were generally as follows:

- 0 cm to 7 cm black organic loam;
- 7 cm to 23 cm tan and grey mottled sand;
- 23 cm to 25 cm black loam; and
- 25 cm to 40+ cm tan water saturated sand with red iron stains.



Photo 57: View of FhNe 138

FhNe 138 is unique from other sites in the project area in that there is potential for buried, discernable palaeosols. Three positive shovel probes produced debitage that may have come from one of the buried palaeosols.

6.3.25 FhNe 139

FhNe 139 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 1.1 km west of the 101 Ravine. The site is situated on a prominent jack pine ridge overlooking a low aspen and muskeg area to the east (Photo 58). The site was observed in a bulldozer push coming off an old logging trail. Vegetation consisted of mature jack pine with little understory, resulting in good surface exposure.

Over 50 SRC debitage were observed in a spoil pile from a bulldozer push on the ridge. A shovel probe was placed immediately adjacent to the scatter, and three additional debitage were collected from approximately 25 cm below surface within yellow sand. There was no evidence of a buried palaeosol. A series of five shovel probes placed at 5 m intervals were subsequently excavated on either side of the positive probe, and adjacent to the old trail and disturbance. A testing program was also conducted along the entire ridge; however, it did not identify any intact components. Fifteen shovel probes in a 95 m by 75 m area were all negative for cultural materials.



Photo 58: View of FhNe 139

6.3.26 FhNe 143

FhNe 143 is an artifact scatter site located approximately 400 m east of the 101 Ravine (Photo 59). The site is situated on a gently undulating to flat jack pine upland in an old forest fire burn area. Vegetation consists of grass cover, willow, and sparse jack pine saplings. The site is near the interface with the aspen forest that marks the transition to the ravine. One SRC debitage was noted in an exposure on the surface.

To determine if intact components were present, a shovel probe was placed adjacent to the artifact find. A total of 88 pieces of debitage representing all stages of lithic reduction were found approximately 20 cm to 30 cm below surface. Eight additional shovel probes were placed at 5 m intervals in the four cardinal directions around the positive probe, two in each direction. All were negative for cultural materials.

6.3.27 FhNe 159

FhNe 159 is an artifact find site located on a jack pine ridge near the southeast corner of the Overburden Storage area. The ridge overlooks a mixed jack pine and aspen forest that eventually leads to the Saskatchewan River valley 2.5 km to the southeast (Figure 5; Photo 60). The site is located approximately 400 m south of the 101 Ravine road and 250 m north of a tributary of the 101 Ravine.

One SRC primary flake and one shatter were observed on the surface. Nine shovel probes were excavated in a 15 m by 25 m area surrounding the debitage. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 59: View of FhNe 143



Photo 60: View of FhNe 159



6.3.28 FhNe 160

FhNe 160 is an artifact scatter site that was observed on an overgrown forestry road and bulldozer push. The site is located along a narrow ridge covered with jack pine, approximately 200 m west of FhNe 159 and 280 m northwest of a tributary of the 101 Ravine (Figure 5; Photo 61).



Photo 61: View of FhNe 160

Over 30 pieces of debitage were observed along the disturbed trail. This included a concentration of 22 SRC debitage that was trowelled to approximately 5 cm depth below surface. Sixteen shovel probes were excavated in a 15 m by 40 m area surrounding the concentration and adjacent to the trail. Two of the probes were positive for cultural materials, producing debitage (n=9), and fragments of granite (n=2) possibly representing FCR. It was evident, however, that these probes were in disturbed overburden from previous road clearing. The remaining 14 shovel probes placed in intact areas were negative for cultural materials. It appears FhNe 160 was intersected by the forestry road and largely disturbed.

6.3.29 FhNe 161

FhNe 161 is an artifact find site located on the same ridge complex as FhNe 159 and 160. The site is located approximately 190 m south of an access road to the 101 Ravine road and 530 m northwest of a tributary of the 101 Ravine (Figure 5; Photo 62).

One siltstone core fragment was collected from a shovel probe approximately 18 cm depth below surface. The positive probe was on the very edge of the ridge crest, which sloped immediately to the south. Eight shovel probes were excavated in a 15 m by 20 m area surrounding the artifact find. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 62: View of FhNe 161

6.3.30 FhNe 164

FhNe 164 is an artifact find site located along an existing trail near the northeast boundary of the Overburden Storage area. The site is approximately 1 km south of Lars Road and 460 m west of the 101 Ravine (Figure 5; Photo 63). A single piece of debitage was observed along the bladed trail that traverses gently undulating to flat terrain in open jack pine. Eight shovel probes were excavated in a 10 m by 15 m area surrounding the artifact find in intact areas adjacent to the trail. All probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.3.31 FhNe 165

FhNe 165 is an artifact find site located along an overgrown trail in the south-central portion of the Overburden Storage area. The site is approximately 1.2 km south of Lars Road and approximately 50 m west of a tributary of the 101 Ravine (Figure 5; Photo 64). A single piece of SRC debitage was observed along the trail on the valley crest overlooking the ravine.

Four shovel probes were excavated in a 5 m by 10 m area surrounding the surface find. Exposures created by a bulldozer push were also examined. All probes were negative for cultural materials and no additional artifacts were observed along the exposed surface.



Photo 63: View of FhNe 164



Photo 64 View of FhNe 165



6.3.32 FhNf 50

FhNf 50 is an artifact find site located along the northern boundary of the Overburden Storage area, approximately 90 m south of an unnamed creek (Figure 5; Photo 65). The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-038 and consisted of three SRC shatter and one SRC primary flake recovered from a single positive shovel probe (Golder 2006a). Six additional shovel probes were placed around this find during this investigation, all of which were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 65: View of FhNf 50

FhNf 50 was revisited during the current HRIA. In order to confirm that no intact components were present, the original positive probe was relocated and five additional shovel probes were excavated in the immediate vicinity. One probe adjacent to the original positive probe produced a single SRC flake 0 cm to 10 cm below surface. All additional probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.3.33 FhNf 59

FhNf 59 is located on a terrace, approximately 150 m west of the 101 Ravine. The Saskatchewan River is located approximately 3.5 km south east. The surrounding hummocky landscape consists of an aspen forest in low-lying and ravine areas, and an open jack pine forest in various stages of regeneration in upland areas. The site is located in an undisturbed area on the west side of the ravine where there is no vehicular access.

FhNf 59 was first identified by Golder under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a) as part of surveys along the 101 Ravine. A lithic scatter consisting of 40 SRC, Red River chert, black pebble chert, and chalcedony debitage was observed in an approximately 100 m by 50 m area. One SRC end scraper was also collected from a tree throw.



Fifteen shovel probes were excavated in the area of the scatter, and three were positive producing nine pieces of debitage.

6.3.34 FhNf 62

FhNf 62 is an artifact find site located approximately 2 km west of the 101 Ravine along Lars Road. One SRC shatter was observed on the edge of the road within an old forestry cut block (Photo 66). The topography was generally flat with vegetation consisting of open grass with aspen and jack pine saplings. The grass cover was thin resulting in good surface exposure. Five shovel probes were placed in intact areas adjacent to the road; however, no additional artifacts were observed.

6.3.35 FhNf 63

FhNf 63 is an artifact scatter site located on the southern edge of a jack pine upland overlooking a broad valley lowland, approximately 350 m west of the 101 Ravine and 3.9 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River. While assessing this landform, four SRC debitage were collected from a shovel probe 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. To determine the extent of the site, an additional seven shovel probes were excavated at approximately 5 m intervals surrounding the positive probe in a 30 m by 17 m area. All were negative for cultural materials.

6.3.36 FhNf 64

FhNf 64 is an artifact scatter located on an upland area 500 m west of 101 Ravine and 1.4 km southeast of Lars Road. Four SRC debitage and one core were observed on the surface of an open grass and shrub area between two hills (Photo 67). To determine the presence of intact components, nine shovel probes were excavated in 5 m intervals along a north-south and east-west axis in a 30 m by 40 m area. All were negative for cultural materials.

6.3.37 Recent Cabins

Two recent cabin sites were also recorded during the survey of the Overburden Disposal area. The first consisted of two collapsed log cabins (NAD 83 13U 510240E 5898978N) located approximately 450 m north of Lars Road, and 500 m south of the north boundary of the Overburden Disposal. The cabins (spaced 20 m apart) were situated on a slight jack pine upland adjacent to a low aspen area. The cabins are 100 m southwest of an overgrown two-track trail. The cabins were built using saddle-notch construction with a chain saw. Finished 2x6 boards were used for the doors and window frames of Cabin 1, and wire nails and spikes were used in construction (Photo 68). Two depressions were located northwest of Cabin 1. A total of 17 shovel probes were excavated within the cabin and pit features as well as areas in between the cabins; however, all were sterile for cultural materials. Given the modern construction methods, it appears these cabins post-date the Second World War. As a result, they were not assigned a Borden Number.

A second cabin site (NAD 83 13U 511674E 5896001N) was located approximately 100 m northeast of FhNe 32 and east of the East Ravine. Two cabin outlines were observed north of an overgrown trail, each approximately 5 m by 5 m in size. Recent artifacts were observed on the surface including a scatter of tin cans, a fragment of a ceramic plate, a steel bed frame, the bottom of a wash tub, truck parts (clutch and door handle), a metal chair frame, fragments of window glass, plywood and 2x4 scraps, and three kerosene cans (Photo 69). Two shovel probes were placed inside both cabin features; however, no additional artifacts were recovered. The surface artifacts suggest a recent occupation that post-dates the Second World War. As a result, the site was not assigned a Borden Number.



Photo 66: View of FhNf 62



Photo 67: View of FhNf 64



Photo 68: Cabin 1



Photo 69: Cabin 2



6.4 Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility

The PKCF area was not subject to HRIAs prior to 2008. During the 2008 assessment 1,080 ha were examined and 1,545 shovel probes were excavated. Three new heritage resources were identified. The footprint for the PKFC was reduced in 2010 to its current size (494 ha) and two of these heritage resources now occur immediately east of the eastern boundary (FhNe 152 and 156). These sites are discussed below.

6.4.1 FhNe 152

FhNe 152 is an artifact find site approximately 80 m west of an unnamed tributary of English Creek. The site is located near the headwaters of this drainage, approximately 4 km north of the Saskatchewan River. One SRC primary flake was observed on an old, bladed logging trail along the east facing valley crest (Photo 70). Surface visibility was good with vegetation consisting of a sparse grass cover, deadfall, and regenerating jack pine.



Photo 70: View of FhNe 152

To determine if there were any intact components, a total of seven shovel probes were placed in 5 m intervals extending in the four cardinal directions from the artifact find. All probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.4.2 FhNe 156

FhNe 156 is an artifact find site located on the east facing valley crest of an unnamed tributary of English Creek (Photo 71). One SRC core was collected from the top 20 cm below surface during shovel testing of the valley feature. The environment was similar to FhNe 152; however, the ravine valley was more deeply incised at this location.



Photo 71: View of FhNe 156

To determine if there were additional intact components, seven shovel probes were subsequently placed at 5 m intervals in the four cardinal directions from the positive probe. All probes were negative for cultural materials.

6.5 Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage

The CPKS area was not subject to previous HRIAs prior to 2008. During the 2008 assessment 61 ha were examined (Golder 2010b). The footprint was subsequently expanded to 240 ha and additional assessment was carried out in 2010 (Golder 2010c). A total of 237 shovel probes were excavated and two new heritage resources were identified (FhNe 157 and 162).

6.5.1 FhNe 157

FhNe 157 is an artifact find site located approximately 3.3 km north of the Saskatchewan River on a south facing upland edge, overlooking a large muskeg that serves as the headwaters for both the Wapiti Ravine and the FALC Ravine (Photo 72). One SRC flake was noted on the ground surface while assessing the landform. To determine the presence of an intact component, a total of seven shovel probes were excavated along an east-west and north-south axis surrounding the artifact find. All probes were negative for cultural materials.



Photo 72: View of FhNe 157

6.5.2 FhNe 162

FhNe 162 is an artifact find site located along an existing vehicle trail near the southeast corner of the CPKS area. The topography is characterized by gently undulating terrain in a mature jack pine forest. The site is approximately 1.2 km east of the former Melfort Ferry Road and 800 m northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Figure 5; Photo 73). Two SRC flakes were observed along the exposed trail. Eight shovel probes were excavated in a 10 m by 15 m area adjacent to the finds in intact areas beside the trail. All probes were negative for cultural materials and no additional artifacts were observed in exposures along the trail.

6.6 Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond

The Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond were additions to the project footprint in 2010. Portions of the Duke Ravine were previously assessed as part of general landscape surveys under Permit No. 05-038 (Golder 2006a), and as part of the PKCF surveys under Permit No. 08-094 (Golder 2010a). The 2010 survey under Permit No. 10-208 (Golder 2010c) focused on remaining previously unassessed areas. As a result of the 2008 and 2010 surveys, two heritage resources were revisited (FhNe 64 and 65) in the Duke Ravine Reservoir, and one new site (FhNe 163) was identified within the Polishing Pond.



Photo 73: FhNe 162

6.6.1 FhNe 64

FhNe 64 is located on the east valley crest of the Duke Ravine, approximately 2.3 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-038. Two SRC debitage were observed on the surface and one was collected from a positive shovel probe. The remaining six shovel probes were negative.

FhNe 64 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094. Although no artifacts were observed on the surface, the original shovel probes were evident. An additional eight shovel probes were excavated in a 40 m by 20 m area encompassing the site and adjacent to an old truck trail. All probes were sterile for cultural materials.

6.6.2 FhNe 65

FhNe 65 is an artifact find site located 40 m east of Duke Ravine valley crest and approximately 2 km north of the Saskatchewan River. The site was originally identified under Permit No. 05-038. Two SRC debitage were observed on the surface in a small clearing within the jack pine forest. Five shovel probes were excavated in the area; however, all were negative for cultural materials.

FhNe 65 was revisited under Permit No. 08-094. No artifacts were observed on the surface. An additional six shovel probes were excavated in a 20 m by 20 m area encompassing the site. All probes were sterile for cultural materials.

6.6.3 FhNe 163

FhNe 163 is an artifact find site. Two SRC flakes were observed on the surface along the eastern crest of Duke Ravine Reservoir, approximately 3.2 km northwest of the Saskatchewan River (Figure 5; Photo 74). Nine shovel



probes were excavated in a 15 m by 20 m area surrounding the find. All probes were negative for cultural materials and no additional artifacts were observed along the crest.



Photo 74: View of FhNe 163

6.7 Sewage Lagoon

The Sewage Lagoon footprint was added in 2010; however, it falls within the former footprint area for the Unprocessed Kimberlite Stockpile that was assessed under Permit No. 08-094. Thirteen shovel probes were excavated in the 3 ha area. No heritage resources were identified in conflict with the lagoon.

6.8 Plant Site

Portions of the Plant Site were previously assessed under Permit Nos. 06-103 and 07-292 as part of the East Ravine surveys. During the 2008 assessment, the remaining unassessed areas of the 46 ha Plant Site were examined and 284 shovel probes were excavated. No new heritage resources were identified, but one previously recorded site, FhNe 126, was revisited. In 2010 the Plant Site footprint was reduced to a 37 ha area. As a result, no heritage resources are presently in conflict.

6.8.1 FhNe 126

FhNe 126 is an artifact scatter originally recorded under Permit No. 06-103 along the East Ravine Road (Photo 75). It was revisited under Permit No. 07-292 (Golder 2007e). The lithic scatter extends for approximately 100 m along the road where over 50 debitage were observed and two biface tools collected.



Photo 75: View of FhNe 126

The site was revisited a third time under Permit No. 08-094. A SRC biface (Photo 56; Table 11) was collected from the surface, and additional shovel testing was carried out. Three positive shovel probes suggest that intact portions of this site may remain in two areas. Area A is found toward the south end of the recorded surface scatter, and approximately 20 m east of the road in thick regenerating jack pine. Area B is found approximately 80 m east of Area A in more mature jack pine, and was first identified by a positive shovel probe during assessments under Permit No. 07-292.

One shovel probe in Area A produced a quartz end scraper (Photo 56; Table 11) and one SRC debitage 0 cm to 20 cm below surface. Eight shovel probes were subsequently excavated around this probe in 5 m intervals, two each in the four cardinal directions. All were negative for cultural materials.

The original positive shovel probe from Area B was relocated during the current assessment. A total of 16 shovel probes were subsequently placed in a 30 m by 17 m area surrounding this probe. Two of these were positive, each producing one SRC debitage from the top 20 cm.

When the artifact scatter and positive shovel probes are considered together, FhNe 126 represents a large site extending over an approximately 100m by 140 m area and has produced at least five lithic tools. Shovel testing adjacent to the road suggests there may be sparse, but intact portions of the site remaining in two areas.



Photo 76: End Scraper (left) and Biface (right) from FhNe 126

Table 11: Metric Attributes of Tools From FhNe 126

Cat No.	Tool Type	Weight (g)	Max. Length (mm)	Max. Width (mm)	Max. Thickness (mm)
1	End scraper	5	29.83	25.5	4.45
2	Biface	10.5	45.04	27.31	8.7

6.9 Runoff Pond

The Runoff Pond footprint was also added in 2010; however, it falls within an area that was assessed under Permit No. 05-038. As a result of this previous assessment, no heritage resources were identified in conflict with the Runoff Pond.

7.0 SUMMARY OF HERITAGE RESOURCES

As a result of archaeological assessments carried out between 2004 and 2010, 108 heritage resources have been identified in the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project footprint (Table 12). As a general comment, the vast majority of sites are located along drainage and ravine features. There also appears to be a greater density of sites along ravines as they approach their confluence with the Saskatchewan River.

Approximately half of the sites (n=55) are located in the Star Open Pit area. This pit centers on two creek features, the East Ravine and West Ravine. The majority of the sites are associated with these drainage valleys. The Star Open Pit is the project footprint nearest the Saskatchewan River, which may explain the greater number of sites. It should also be noted, however, that there was greater disturbance and resulting ground exposure from advanced kimberlite exploration in the Star Open Pit area, which may also be a factor in visibility and the increased number of identified sites.

**Table 12: Summary of Heritage Resources Found in Star-Orion South Project Footprint**

Project Area	Total
Star Open Pit	55
Orion South Pit	9
Overburden Storage	36
Processed Kimberlite Containment Facility	2
Coarse Processed Kimberlite Storage	2
Plant	1
Duke Ravine Reservoir	3
Sewage Lagoon	0
Runoff Pond	0
Total	108

In contrast, only nine sites were identified in the Orion South Pit. The Orion South Pit was also subject to intense kimberlite exploration that resulted in increased exposure and visibility; however, it is located 4.5 km north of the Saskatchewan River. This greater distance from the Saskatchewan River may explain the reduced number of recorded sites. The majority of heritage resources (n=5) were associated with a tributary of the East Ravine.

Thirty-six sites were identified in the Overburden Storage area, most (n=24) occurring within or along the valley crest and associated tributaries of the 101 Ravine. The sites significantly diminish the further one gets from these drainages. The remaining eight sites are found inland either on prominent hills (FhNe 159 to 160), or on generally flat, featureless terrain (FhNe 26, 27, and 164 and FhNf 62).

Only two sites were identified in the PKCF area. This was a little unexpected, as the headwaters of the Duke Ravine are found near the western boundary, and a tributary of English Creek is present near the east boundary. However, most of this footprint encompasses the generally featureless terrain in between the two drainage features. The two sites (FhNe 152 and 156) were associated with a tributary of the English Creek immediately outside the eastern boundary.

Two sites (FhNe 157 and 162) were recorded in the CPKS area. Although portions of the CPKS are located within 1 km of the Saskatchewan River, the reduced number of sites can be partially attributed to the local environment. Much of the central and east half of the footprint encompasses a muskeg that serves as the headwaters for the FALC Ravine and Wapiti Ravine. FhNe 157 is located on an upland overlooking the muskeg near the north boundary, while FhNe 162 is located in mature jack pine 800m north of the Saskatchewan River and in between FALC Ravine and Wapiti Ravine.

The Plant Site area is located in rugged upland terrain in between the East Ravine and Duke Ravine. One site was identified within the original plant footprint along the East Ravine; however no sites are found in the current footprint boundaries. Three sites were identified along the valley crest of the Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond. This further reinforces the association of heritage resources with drainage features in the project area.

Heritage resources in the project footprint are summarized by site type in Table 13. A more detailed summary of known sites and their characteristics can be found in Appendix B. Almost all of the heritage resources are Precontact, with only two historic sites identified. The historic feature/artifact scatter sites consist of cabins and



refuse dating to the 20th Century. They appear to relate to more recent hunting or forestry activities carried out by locals who frequented the FALC Provincial Forest. The remaining 106 sites represent Precontact sites that can be divided into three general types based on the Heritage Resources Branch criteria: Artifact Find, Artifact Scatter, and Artifact Feature/Combination.

Table 13: Summary of Heritage Resources by Site Type in Project Area

Site Type	Definition	Frequency	% of Sample
Artifact find	Archaeological sites consisting of 5 or fewer artifacts. An artifact is any object used or modified by people (e.g. stone tools, pottery sherds, lithic flakes).	47	43
Artifact scatter	Archaeological sites consisting of 6 or more artifacts.	57	53
Artifact/Feature combination	Archaeological sites consisting of both artifacts and features. A feature is the remains of any non-portable human activity that can not be removed from a site without disturbing it (e.g., hearth, boiling pit, stone circle,).	2	2
Historic Feature/Scatter	Archaeological sites consisting of both historic features and artifacts (e.g., cabin, cellar depression with artifacts of European or Euro-Canadian manufacture).	2	2
Total		108	100

Artifact Find Sites consist of one to five artifacts that are confined to small, well-defined areas. Artifacts can include such things as stone flakes, formed tools, or modified bone. Artifact finds are commonly interpreted as areas of limited use, in which activities were engaged in over a short period of time and that left behind minor cultural residue. Forty-seven sites or 43% of the sites found in the project footprint are artifact find sites.

Artifact Scatter Sites consist of six or more artifacts and can represent behaviours indicative of more intensive use of an area than artifact find sites. The behaviours may be associated with activities such as lithic reduction for tool production, or game butchering/processing. In such instances, a person or group of people often required multiple resources or a diverse tool kit to complete their activities and, as such, can leave behind a greater density and variety of artifacts. Fifty-seven sites or 53% of recorded sites in the project footprint are artifact scatters.

Artifact/Feature Combination Sites consist of artifacts associated with at least one feature. The presence of a feature is suggestive of increasingly complex cultural behaviours of longer duration, such as encampments. Such sites can include various defined activity areas as represented by loci with variable artifact densities and features such as boiling pits, hearths, or dwellings. Two sites or 2% of the sites recorded in the project footprint are artifact/feature combination sites. This includes FhNe 88, where debitage and FCR concentrations may indicate an activity area and hearth; and FhNe 91 where debitage and soil staining may also represent a lithic reduction area and hearth.

The Precontact heritage resources are dominated by small artifact finds and scatters comprised almost exclusively of SRC debitage representing lithic reduction areas. Eleven of the sites produced diagnostic projectile points indicating occupation of the region from approximately 7,500 to 200 rcybp (Table 14). The Middle Precontact Period is best represented, with Early Side-notched, McKean, Hanna, and Pelican Lake points found at eight sites. The Late Precontact Period is represented by Avonlea and Late Side-notched varieties found at three sites.

**Table 14: Summary of Precontact Heritage Resources in Project Area with Culturally Diagnostic Projectile Points**

Borden No.	Site Type	Diagnostic Projectile Points	Age (rcybp)
FhNe 27	Artifact Scatter	Late Side-notched (n=2)	1,200 to 200
FhNe 34	Artifact Scatter	Late Side-notched	1,200 to 200
FhNe 86	Artifact/Feature Combination	Hanna	4,100 to 3,100
FhNe 87	Artifact Find	Pelican Lake	3,100 to 2,000
FhNe 88	Artifact Scatter	Besant	2,000 to 1,150
		Pelican Lake	3,100 to 2,000
		Hanna	4,100 to 3,100
FhNe 90	Artifact Scatter	Hanna	4,100 to 3,100
FhNe 98	Artifact Scatter	Early Side-notched	7,500 to 5,000
FhNe 111	Artifact Scatter	Hanna	4,100 to 3,100
FhNe 114	Artifact Scatter	Early Side-notched	7,500 to 5,000
FhNe 115	Artifact Scatter	McKean lanceolate	4,100 to 3,100
FhNe 145	Artifact Find	Avonlea	1,800 to 1,150

8.0 HERITAGE RESOURCE EVALUATION

When considering the significance or interpretational value of the heritage resources located in the Star-Orion South Diamond Project area, it is useful to examine what archaeological questions or research goals could be addressed if additional archaeological work was carried out at these sites. With this in mind, it should be noted that previous research in central Saskatchewan near the FALC Provincial Forest, including the Nipawin Reservoir Study (Finnigan et al. 1983) and the Saskatchewan Forks Survey (Wilson 1982), focused almost exclusively on the Saskatchewan River valley. A mitigation program in the Star-Orion South Diamond Project area would provide an opportunity to explore Precontact activities and landscape utilization outside of this river valley complex. The results of a mitigation program could then be compared and contrasted with these previous studies.

Five general research questions of interest include:

- When was the area being occupied?
- Who was occupying the Study Area? What archaeological cultures are represented?
- What activities were they undertaking?
- What areas within the Study Area were people exploiting or occupying?
- How might the history of occupation and landscape use be related to changing environments?

With regard to the latter question, it is interesting to note that during the Altithermal, a period of increased temperature and aridity in North America, the southern edge of the boreal forest was approximately 100 km further north than it is today (Bobrowsky et al. 1990; Vance et al. 1995). The study area would have been a parkland/grassland environment during this period. Thus far, there is evidence for greater occupation in the FALC Provincial Forest during the Middle Precontact period, which corresponds with the Altithermal, than any other Period. It is also interesting to note that in contrast to the Saskatchewan River valley proper, where large



Late Woodland pottery-bearing sites occur, none have been recorded to date in the project area (D. Meyer, pers. comm. 2008). This may suggest that a different pattern of occupation was occurring outside the Saskatchewan River valley during this later period.

Significance Rating

In determining which archaeological sites might best address these research questions, all heritage resources in the project footprint were given a heritage potential rating based on their potential interpretive value. A summary of all sites located in the project area, their characteristics and rating is included in Appendix A. Criteria considered in the evaluation process included:

- presence of cultural diagnostics;
- presence of features or activity areas;
- site size and artifact density;
- variety of artifact classes present (i.e., tools, debitage, and FCR);
- quality of artifact preservation (i.e., presence of bone);
- uniqueness of site (i.e., rare site type, age, or location); and
- condition of the site (degree of previous disturbance; presence of intact/buried component indicated by positive shovel tests).

Sites were considered to have high potential if they contained intact cultural components with temporally diagnostic tools or known features. The presence of these criteria will specifically aid in addressing research questions regarding culture history, as well as resource and landscape utilization in the project area.

Sites considered to have moderate potential were those exhibiting a combination of criteria including a high artifact density, the presence of a variety of artifact classes (i.e., a combination of lithic tools, debitage, FCR, or bone), site size, or uniqueness in terms of topographic location (i.e., inland hill feature, valley crest). These criteria may be indicative of more complex site structure, and further investigation may reveal features, activity areas, or culturally diagnostic tools that will enhance interpretations.

Sites were considered to have a low potential based on sparse artifact density, small site size, or high degree of site disturbance. This includes artifact finds (≤ 5 artifacts) and sites demonstrated to have no or limited intact cultural components. The interpretive value of these sites is considered low.

Table 15 summarizes the number of sites in each of the project areas and their associated significance rating. The majority of sites (N=80 or 73%) are considered to have low potential and limited knowledge would be gained from additional excavation. These sites are considered adequately mitigated through previous assessment programs, collection of formed tools, site mapping, and submission of SARR forms to the Heritage Resources Branch.



Table 15: Summary of Heritage Resources Potential in Project Area

Heritage Potential	High	Moderate	Low	Total
Star Open Pit	6	7	42	55
Orion South Open Pit	0	1	8	9
Overburden Storage	3	10	23	36
PKCF	0	0	2	2
CPKS	0	0	2	2
Plant	0	1	0	1
Duke Ravine Reservoir and Polishing Pond	0	0	3	3
Sewage Lagoon	0	0	0	0
Runoff Pond	0	0	0	0
Total	9	19	80	108
% of Sample	8.3	17.6	74.1	100

The remaining 28 heritage resources consist of high (N=9) and moderate (N=19) potential sites that are identified in Table 16. The sites were selected based on the presence of a significant surface scatter with the potential for, or evidence of, intact deposits; the presence of a variety of artifact classes or diagnostic artifacts; or evidence for potential features such as hearths or boiling pits. The potential of these 28 sites to increase our understanding of past life ways in the project area is considered greater. As a result, additional excavation at these sites would be warranted before potential impacts occur.

Table 16: Summary of High and Moderate Potential Heritage Resources Located in Project Area

Borden No.	Project Area	Type	Landscape Feature	Diagnostic Artifacts	Heritage Potential
FhNe 11	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	Upland/Hilltop	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 12	Orion South Pit	Historic Cabin	Upland	20 th Century refuse	Moderate
FhNe 14	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	Muskeg Edge	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 26	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	Upland	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 27	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	Upland	Late Side-notched (n=2)	High
FhNe 31	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 34	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	Upland	Late Side-notched	Moderate
FhNe 36	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	High
FhNe 45	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 46	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 49/104	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 74	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 77	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 82	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 87	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine	Pelican Lake	High
FhNe 88	Star Open Pit	Artifact/Feature	East Ravine	Besant	High
				Pelican Lake	
				Hanna	



FhNe 90	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine	Hanna	High
FhNe 91	Star Open Pit	Artifact/Feature	East Ravine	N/A	High
FhNe 98	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	West Ravine	Early Side-notched	High
FhNe 102	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 115	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine Tributary	McKean	High
FhNe 120	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 126	Plant Site	Artifact Scatter	East Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 135	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	West Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 138	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 143	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	Moderate
FhNe 155	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	Upland	N/A	Moderate
FhNf 59	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	101 Ravine	N/A	High



9.0 CLOSURE

Between 2004 and 2010, HRIAs were carried out under 19 Archaeological Investigation Permits relating to diamond exploration and development in the FALC Provincial Forest. This resulted in the recording of 190 heritage resources, 108 of which are located in the proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project footprint. A significance evaluation of these known sites suggest that 80 have low heritage interpretive potential, while the remaining 28 have moderate to high interpretive potential.

We trust the above meets your present requirements. If you have any questions or require additional details, please contact the undersigned.

GOLDER ASSOCIATES LTD.

Patrick Young, M.A.
Archaeologist

Grant Clarke, M.A.
Associate, Senior Archaeologist

Brad Novecosky, M.A.
BioScience Division Manager, Archaeologist

PY/BN/GC/ldmg

n:\active\2010\1361\10-1361-0045 shore gold heritage falc\eis summary\10-1361-0045 appendix ii heritage baseline summary\10-1361-0045 appendix ii heritage baseline summary.docx



10.0 REFERENCES

- Acton, D.F., G.A. Padbury, and C.T. Stushnoff
1998 *The Ecoregions of Saskatchewan*. Canadian Plains Research Centre, Regina.
- Adams, Gary
1977 *The Estuary Bison Pound site in Southwestern Saskatchewan*. Archaeological Survey of Canada Mercury Series Paper 66. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Hull, Quebec.
- Agenbroad, L.D.
1984 New World Mammoth Distribution. In *Quaternary Extinctions a Prehistoric Revolution*, edited by P.S. Martin and R.G. Klein, pp. 90-108. University of Arizona, Tucson.
- Amundson, L.J., N.P. Friesen, and K.M. Enns-Kavanagh
2005 *Archaeological Investigations at the St. Louis Site FfNk-7: An Early to Mid-Holocene Occupation of the Lower South Saskatchewan River Valley. Permit No. 02-114*. Prepared for Saskatchewan Highways and Transportation.
- Archer, John H.
1980 *Saskatchewan: A History*. Western Producer Prairie Books. Saskatoon, Saskatchewan.
- Balcom, Rebecca J. and Thomas H.F. Hoffert
1990 *Poplar River Mine Heritage Resources Impact Assessment and Mitigation*. Draft report on file with the Community Support Services Branch (Heritage), Regina.
- Bobrowsky, P.T., N.R. Catto, J.W. Brink, B.E. Spurling, T.H. Gibson, and N.W. Rutter
1990 Archaeological Geology of Sites in Western and Northwestern Canada. In *Archaeological Geology of North America: Centennial special volume No. 4*, edited by N.P. Lasca and J. Donahue, pp. 123-135. Geological Society of America, Boulder.
- Brink, J. and B. Dawe
1989 *Final Report of the 1985 and 1986 Field Seasons at Head-Smashed-In Buffalo Jump, Alberta*. Archaeological Survey of Alberta Manuscript Series No. 16. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Brumley, John H.
1990 *Medicine Wheels on the Northern Plains: A Summary and Appraisal*. Archaeological Survey of Alberta Manuscript Series No. 12. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Brumley, J.H. and B.J. Dau
1988 Historical Resource Investigations within the Forty Mile Coulee Reservoir. Archaeological Survey of Alberta Manuscript Series No. 13. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Burley, David, David Meyer, Olga Klimko, Dale Russell, James Finnigan, Jean Prentice, and Malcolm Wilson
1982 Regional Overview and Research Considerations. *Nipawin Reservoir Heritage Study Volume 3*, edited by David Burley and David Meyer. Saskatchewan Research Council Publication No. C-805-25-E-82.



Calder, J.M.

- 1977 The Majorville Cairn and Medicine Wheel Site, Alberta. *National Museum of Man Mercury Series* No. 562. Ottawa, Ontario.

Canadian Forts

- 2005 *Canadian Forts - Saskatchewan*. Website: <http://www.geocities.com/naforts/sk.html>. Accessed December 7, 2005.

Clarke, G.

- 1995 *The Hartley Site (FaNp 19): Interpreting a Transitional Avonlea/Old Women's Faunal Assemblage*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Clarke, G., B. Hjermsstad, R. Balcom, and J. Light

- 1997 *The Pigeon Mountain Site Heritage Resources Impact Mitigation*. Unpublished consultants report on file with the Alberta Community Development, Edmonton.

Corbeil, Marcel Ronald

- 1995 *The Archaeology and Taphonomy of the Heron Eden Site, Southwestern Saskatchewan*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Davis, C.M. and J.D. Keyser

- 1999 McKean Complex Projectile Point Typology and Function in the Pine Parklands. *Plains Anthropologist* 44(169):251-270.

Dyck, Ian

- 1983 Prehistory of Southern Saskatchewan. In *Tracking Ancient Hunters*, edited by H.T. Epp and I. Dyck pp. 63-140. Saskatchewan Archaeological Society, Saskatoon.

Dyke, A.S., A. Moore, and L. Robertson

- 2003 *Deglaciation of North America*. Geological Survey of Canada. Open File 1574, 32 maps, CD-ROM, and 2 paper sheets.

Dyke, A.S., D. Giroux, and L. Robertson

- 2004 *Vegetation history, glaciated North America*. Geological Survey of Canada. Open File 4682.

Finnigan, Jim, David Meyer, and Jean Prentice

- 1983 *Resource Inventory, Assessment and Evaluation*. Nipawin Reservoir Heritage Study, Volume 5, edited by David Meyer. Saskatchewan Research Council Publication No. E-903-E-83.

Forbis, R.

- 1962 The Old Women's Buffalo Jump, Alberta. In *Contributions to Anthropology, 1960, Part I*, pp. 56-123, Bulletin 180. National Museum of Canada, Ottawa.



Forsman, M.

- 1972 *Prince Albert National Park Survey: 1971*. Parks Canada Manuscript Report No. 92.
- 1976 *The Prehistory of Montreal Lake, Central Saskatchewan*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Frison, George

- 1978 *Prehistoric Hunters of the High Plains*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Golder Associates Ltd.

- 1996 *A Heritage Resources Impact Mitigation Project at the Stuart Lake Site (Gbnf 6)*. Completed on behalf of Weyerhaeuser Canada and on file with the Community Support Services Branch (Heritage), Regina.
- 2005 *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: DeBeers Canada Inc. Fort à la Corne Diamond Exploration Program. Permit No. 04-042*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2006a *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: DeBeers Canada Inc. Fort à la Corne 2005 Diamond Exploration Program. Permit No. 05-038*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2006b *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Fort à la Corne Joint Venture Advanced Exploration Program (2006). Permit No. 06-064*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2006c *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: 2005 Weyerhaeuser Saskatchewan Prince Albert Forest Management Agreement Area. Permit No. 05-066*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2007a *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Kensington Resources Ltd. Orion South Bulk Sampling Shaft Project. Permit No. 07-053*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2007b *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Shore Gold Inc. Geotechnical Drilling Project. Permit No. 07-245*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2007c *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Shore Gold Inc. 2007 Drilling Program. Permit No. 07-259*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2007d *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Shore Gold Inc. Proposed Drill Pad Project. Permit No. 07-305*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2007e *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: East Ravine Survey and Large Diameter Drill Pad Assessment. Permit No. 07-292*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2007f *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Shore Gold Inc. Proposed SPF-085 LDD Pad. Permit No. 07-341*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2008a *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Kensington Resources Ltd. 2008 LDD Pad Expansions. Permit No. 08-092*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2008b *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Kensington Resources Ltd. Orion South Pit. Permit No. 08-093*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.



Golder Associates Ltd. (continued)

- 2008c *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Kensington Resources Ltd. Orion South to Star Water Pipeline. Permit No. 08-139.* Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2008d *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Shore Gold Inc. Star Body 2008 LDD Pad Expansions. Permit No. 08-175.* Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2009 *Kensington Resources Ltd. Orion South Project. Heritage Resources Impact Assessment. Permit No. 08-093.* Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2010a *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Shore Gold Inc. Star Diamond Project. Permit No. 08-094.* Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2010b *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment/Mitigation: Shore Gold Inc. Star-Orion South Diamond Project 2010 Facilities Footprint. Permit No. 10-208.* Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2010c *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment/Mitigation: Shore Gold Inc. Star-Orion South Diamond Project 2010 Facilities Footprint. Permits No. 10-208 and No. 10-237.* Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.

Grinnell, George Bird

- 1922 *The Medicine Wheel. American Anthropologist* 24:299-310.

Gryba, Eugene

- 1974 *Final Report of the 1973 Archaeological Survey of Prince Albert National Park: Findings and Recommendations.* Parks Canada Manuscript Report Number 319.

Hjermstad, Benjamin

- 1998 *A Heritage Resources Impact Mitigation Project at the Stuart Lake Site (GbNf 6).* Ms. completed on the behalf of Weyerhaeuser Canada and on file with the Community Support Services Branch (Heritage), Regina.

Johnston, Jenna S.

- 2005 *The St. Louis Site (FfNk 7) and the Below Forks Site (FhNg 25): The Faunal Analysis of Two Mummy Cave Series and Oxbow Complex Sites in Central Saskatchewan.* Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Kasstan, Steven C.

- 2004 *Lithic Technology at the Below Forks Site, FhNg 25: Strategies of Stone Tool Manufacture.* Unpublished Masters Thesis. University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Kehoe, Thomas

- 1960 *Stone tipi rings in north central Montana and the adjacent portion of Alberta, Canada: their historical, ethnological, and archaeological aspects.* Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 173. Washington, D.C.
- 1973 *The Gull Lake Site.* Milwaukee Public Museum, Publications in Anthropology and History No. 1. Milwaukee, Wisconsin.



Kintigh, K.W.

- 1988 The Effectiveness of Subsurface Testing: A Simulation Approach. *American Antiquity* 53:686-707.

Kraker, J.J., M.J. Shott, and P.D. Welch

- 1983 Design and Evaluation of Shovel-Test Sampling in Regional Archaeological Survey. *Journal of Field Archaeology* 10:469-480.

Lenius, Brian J. and Dave M. Oliniyk

- 1990 The Rainy River Composite: Revisions to Late Woodland Taxonomy. In *The Woodland Tradition in the Western Great Lakes: Papers Presented to Elden Johnson*, edited by Guy E. Gibbon, pp. 77-112. University of Minnesota Publications in Anthropology, No. 4, Minneapolis.

Linnamae, Urve

- 1988 The Tschetter Site: A Prehistoric Bison Pound in the Parklands. In *Out of the Past: Sites, Digs and Artifacts in the Saskatoon Area*, edited by Urve Linnamae and Tim E.H. Jones, pp. 91-116. Saskatchewan Archaeological Society, Saskatoon.

Malainey, Mary

- 1991 *Internal and External Relationships of Saskatchewan Plains Pottery Assemblages: Circa A.D. 1300 to Contact*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Malainey, Mary and Barbara Sherriff

- 1996 Adjusting Our Perceptions: Historical and Archaeological Evidence of Wintering on the Plains of Western Canada. *Plains Anthropologist* 41: 333-358.

Martin, Paul S.

- 1984 Prehistoric Overkill: The Global Model. In *Quaternary Extinctions: A Prehistoric Revolution*, edited by P.S. Martin and R.G. Klein, pp. 354-403. University of Arizona Press, Tucson.

McKeand, Peggy

- 1995 *A Comprehensive Faunal Analysis of Bushfield West (FhNa-10) Nipawin, Saskatchewan*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Meyer, David

- 1970 Plano Points in the Carrot River valley. *Saskatchewan Archaeology Newsletter* 29:8-21.
- 1977 *Proposed Nipawin Hydroelectric Project: Archaeology*. Saskatchewan Research Council Publication No. C 77-6.
- 1978 Prehistoric Pottery from Northern Saskatchewan. *Napao* 8(1&2):5-30.
- 1981 Late Prehistoric Assemblages from Nipawin: the Pehonan Complex. *Saskatchewan Archaeology* 2(1&2):4-37.
- 1983 Prehistory of Northern Saskatchewan. In *Tracking Ancient Hunters*, edited by H.T. Epp and I. Dyck, pp. 141-168. Saskatchewan Archaeological Society, Saskatoon.



Meyer, David (continued)

- 1987 Time Depth of the Western Woods Cree occupation of Northern Ontario, Manitoba, and Saskatchewan. In *Papers of the Eighteenth Algonquian Conference*, edited by W. Cohen, pp. 187-200. Carleton University, Ottawa.
- 1988 The Old Women's Phase on the Saskatchewan Plains: Some Ideas. In *Archaeology in Alberta 1987*, edited by Martin Magne, pp. 55-64. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occasional Paper No. 32.
- 1993 People Before Kelsey: An Overview of Cultural Developments. In *Three Hundred Prairie Years: Henry Kelsey's Inland Country of Good Report*, edited by Henry Epp, pp. 54-73. Canadian Plains Research Centre, Regina.
- 1998 Late Woodland Pottery from the Goldworthy Site: A Rainy River Assemblage in East Central Saskatchewan. *Canadian Journal of Archaeology* 22(1):43-80.
- 1999 Precontact Archaeology of Northern Saskatchewan. In *Atlas of Saskatchewan*, edited by Ka-iu Fung, pp. 23-24. University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.
- 2008 Professor of Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan. Saskatoon, Saskatchewan. Personal communication March 11, 2008.

Meyer, David and Henry Epp

- 1990 North-South Interaction in the Late Prehistory of Central Saskatchewan. *Plains Anthropologist* 35(132):321-342.

Meyer, David and S. Hamilton

- 1994 Neighbors to the North: Peoples of the Boreal Forest. In *Plains Indians, A.D. 500-1500: The Archaeological Past of Historic Groups*, edited by K.H. Schlesier, pp. 97-127. University of Oklahoma Press, Norman.

Meyer, David, Peggy McKeand, J.M. Quigg, and Garry Wowchuk

- 2008 The River House Complex: Middle Woodland on the Northwestern Periphery. *Canadian Journal of Archaeology* 32:43-76.

Meyer, David and Olga Klimko

- 1986 *James Smith Reserve Heritage Reconnaissance*. On file with the Community Support Services Branch (Heritage), Regina.

Meyer, David and Maureen Rollans

- 1990 *The Case for (Canadian) Besant Pottery*. Paper presented at the 31st Annual Meeting, Western Association of Sociology and Anthropology in Morley, Alberta.

Meyer, David and Dale Russell

- 1987 The Selkirk Composite of Central Canada: A Reconsideration. *Arctic Anthropology* 24(2):1-31.
- 2004 So Fine and Pleasant, Beyond Description: The Lands and Lives of the Pegogamaw Crees. *Plains Anthropologist* 49(191):217-252.



Meyer, David and Paul Thistle

- 1995 Saskatchewan River Rendezvous Centres and Trading Posts: Continuity in a Cree Social Geography. *Ethnohistory* 42(3):403-444.

Meyer, David and Dale Walde

- 2009 Rethinking Avonlea: Pottery Wares and Cultural Phases. *Plains Anthropologist* 54(209):49-73.

Morlan, R.E.

- 1993 Compilation of Radiocarbon Dates in Saskatchewan. *Saskatchewan Archaeology* 13:3-84.

Miller, George L. and Elizabeth A. Jorgensen

- 1986 *Some Notes on Bottle Mould Numbers from the Dominion Glass Company and its Predecessors*. National Historic Parks and Sites Branch, Parks Canada. Ottawa.

Nance, J.D. and B.F. Ball

- 1986 No Surprises? The Reliability and Validity of Test Pit Sampling. *American Antiquity* 51:457-483.

Paquin, Todd A.

- 1995 *Pottery Styles as Cultural Patterns: The Kisis Complex*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

- 1999 The Kisis Complex: Implications of Historic Marriage Practices for Selkirk Ware in Northwestern Saskatchewan. *Canadian Journal of Archaeology* 22(2):99-114.

Prentice, Jean, J. Michael Quigg, and David Meyer

- 1983 1982 Final Excavations at the Permanent Camp, Minnie and Lloyd Sites. *Nipawin Reservoir Heritage Study* Volume 6, edited by David Meyer. Saskatchewan Research Council Publication No. E-903-6-E-83.

Ray, R.J.

- 1974 *Indians in the Fur Trade: Their Role as Hunters, Trappers and Middlemen in the Lands Southwest of the Hudson Bay 1660-1870*. University of Toronto Press, Toronto.

Reeves, B.O.K.

- 1983 *Culture Change in the Northern Plains: 1000 B.C. - A.D. 1000*. Occasional Paper No. 20. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.

- 1990 Communal Bison Hunters of the Northern Plains. In *Hunters of the Recent Past*, edited by L.B. Davis and B. Reeves, pp. 168-195. Unwyn Hyman, Ltd., London.

Rollans, Maureen and Peggy McKeand

- 1992 *The Ice House Site (G1Oc-2) Archaeological Project, Buffalo Narrows, Saskatchewan*. Permit No. 91-27. Completed on the behalf of SaskPower and on file with the Community Support Services Branch (Heritage), Regina.

Ruppé, R.J.

- 1966 The Archaeological Survey: A Defense. *American Antiquity* 31:13-333.



Russell, Dale R.

- 1991 *Eighteenth Century Western Cree and Their Neighbors*. Archaeological Survey of Canada Mercury Series Paper 143. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Ottawa.
- 1999 Fur Trade Journeys 1691 - 1808. In *Atlas of Saskatchewan*, edited by Ka-iu Fung, pp. 31-32. University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Russell, Dale and David Meyer

- 1999 The History of the Fur Trade ca. 1682 - post 1821. In *Atlas of Saskatchewan*, edited by Ka-iu Fung, pp. 33-35. University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Saskatchewan Environment

- 1999 *Fort à la Corne Integrated Land Use Plan Background Document*. Website: <http://www.se.gov.sk.ca/forests/landuse/fort/chapter4.htm>. Accessed January 24, 2005.

Saskatchewan Research Council

- 1987 *Surficial Geology of the Prince Albert Area (73H)*. Scale 1:250 000. Saskatchewan Research Council, Sedimentary Resources Sector, Saskatoon.

Schiffer, M.B., A.P. Sullivan, and T.C. Klinger

- 1978 The Design of Archaeological Surveys. *World Archaeology* 10:1-28.

Scott, W.B. and E.J. Crossman

- 1973 *Freshwater Fishes of Canada*. Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 184, Ottawa.

Scribe, Brian

- 1997 *Mistam Ka-ke Askihkokechik Puskwaw-askihk: An Assessment of Besant - Sonota Pottery on the Canadian Plains*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Sentar Consultants Ltd.

- 1994 *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment of the Rhonda Mining Corp. Diamond Exploration Program in Central Saskatchewan. Volume 1: Background and 1993 Results. HRIA Permit No. 93-49*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 1995 *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment of the Rhonda Mining Corp. Diamond Exploration Program in Central Saskatchewan. Volume 2: 1994 Results. HRIA Permit No. 93-49*. Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.

Smith, B.J. and E.G. Walker

- 1988 Evidence for Diverse Subsistence Strategies in an Avonlea Component. In *Avonlea Yesterday and Today: Archaeology and Prehistory*, edited by L.B. Davis, pp. 81-88. Saskatchewan Archaeological Society, Saskatoon.

Syms, E. Leigh

- 1977 Cultural Ecology and Ecological Dynamics of the Ceramic Period in Southwestern Manitoba. *Plains Anthropologist* 22, Memoir 12.



Vance, Robert

- 1991 *A Paleobotanical Study of Holocene Drought Frequency in Southern Alberta*. Unpublished Ph.D. Dissertation. Department of Biological Sciences, Simon Fraser University.

Vance, R.E., A.B. Beaudoin, and B.H. Luckman

- 1995 The paleoecological record of 6 ka rcybp climate in the Canadian prairie provinces. *Géographie physique et Quaternaire*, 49, 81-98.

Walde, D.

- 1995 *The Mortlach Phase*. Unpublished Ph.D. Dissertation. University of Calgary, Calgary.

Walde, Dale and David Meyer

- 2003 Precontact Pottery in Alberta: an overview. In *Archaeology in Alberta: A View from the New Millennium*, edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Archaeological Society of Alberta, Medicine Hat.

Walker, Ernest G.

- 1980 *The Gowen Site: An Early Archaic Site on the Northern Plains*. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, University of Texas, Austin.
- 1992 *The Gowen Sites: Cultural Responses to Climatic Warming on the Northern Plains (7, 500-5,000 rcybp)*. Archaeological Survey of Canada, Mercury Series Paper 145. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Hull, Quebec.
- 1999 Precontact Archaeology of Southern Saskatchewan. In *Atlas of Saskatchewan*, edited by Ka-iu Fung. University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Western Heritage Services Inc.

- 2005 *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment: Star Kimberlite Project 2005-2006 Surface Exploration. Permit No. 05-087*. Report on file with the Heritage Resources Branch, Regina.
- 2006 *Heritage Resources Impact Assessment of Shore Gold Inc., Star Kimberlite Project 2006 Surface Exploration Program Permit No. 06-103*. Report prepared for Shore Gold Inc.

Wettlaufer, B.

- 1960 *The Long Creek Site*, edited by W.J. Mayer-Oakes. Anthropological Series No. 2. Saskatchewan Museum of Natural History, Regina.

Wilson, James S.

- 1982 Archaeology and History. In *Environmental Baseline Study of the Saskatchewan River, Saskatchewan, in the Vicinity of Choiceland and the 'Forks'*, edited by A.E. Pipe. Saskatchewan Research Council Publication No. C-805-25-E-80.
- 1984 The Lucky Strike Site: a Late Precontact Campsite in the Aspen Parkland. *Saskatchewan Archaeology* 5:5-26.



Wilson, J.S. and James Light

- 1980 *Archaeological Resource Survey of Lac La Ronge Provincial Park Northern Saskatchewan*. On file with Resources Branch, Department of Northern Saskatchewan. Saskatchewan Research Council Technical Report No. 104.

Wolfe Stephen A., Jeffrey Ollerhead, David J. Huntley, and Olav B. Lian

- 2005 *Holocene dune activity and environmental change in the prairie parkland and boreal forest, central Saskatchewan, Canada*. Website: <http://www.sfu.ca/physics/research/workarea/huntley/109paper.pdf>. Accessed December 6, 2005.

Wright, James V.

- 1995a *A History of the Native People of Canada: Volume 1 (10,000 - 1,000 B.C.)*. Archaeological Survey of Canada Mercury Series Paper 152. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Hull, Quebec.
- 1995b *A History of the Native People of Canada: Volume 1 (1,000 B.C. - 500 A.D.)*. Archaeological Survey of Canada Mercury Series Paper 152. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Hull, Quebec.

Young, Patrick

- 2006 *An Analysis of Late Woodland Ceramics from Peter Pond Lake, Saskatchewan*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Department of Anthropology and Archaeology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.



APPENDIX A

Summary of Known Heritage Resources in Conflict with the Star-Orion South Diamond Project



Borden No.	Project Area	Type	No. of Tests	Positive Test	Artifacts from Tests	Diagnostics	Site Condition	Heritage Potential Rating
FhNe 010	Orion South	Artifact Scatter	16	0	0	0	Disturbed	Low
FhNe 011	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	4	3	170+ debitage, FCR, core	0	Partially disturbed by trail	Moderate
FhNe 012	Orion South	Historic	3	0	0	20 th Century refuse	Undisturbed	Moderate
FhNe 013	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	24	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 014	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	28	5	12 debitage	0	Disturbed by trail	Moderate
FhNe 017	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	5	0	0	0	Disturbed by trail	Low
FhNe 021	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	5	0	0	0	Disturbed	Low
FhNe 022	Orion South	Artifact Find	15	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 023	Orion South	Artifact Find	18	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 024	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	33	3	35	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 025	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	6	1	1	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 026	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	21	5	16	0	Partially disturbed by trail	Moderate
FhNe 027	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	11	1	62	2 Late Side-notched points	Partially disturbed by trail	High
FhNe 030	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	7	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 031	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	8	3	>100 debitage	0	Undisturbed	Moderate
FhNe 032	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	11	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 033	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	5	0	0	0	Disturbed by trail	Low
FhNe 034	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	9	1	12	1 Late Side-notched point	Disturbed by road	Moderate
FhNe 036	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	19	5	69	0	Undisturbed	High
FhNe 044	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	5	1	1 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 045	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	10	3	12 debitage	0	Undisturbed	Moderate
FhNe 046	Overburden	Artifact Scatter	10	3	1 scraper, 26 debitage	0	Undisturbed	Moderate



	Storage							
FhNe 047	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	0	0	0	0		Disturbed by drill pad Low
FhNe 049/104	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	11	1	32 debitage	0		Disturbed by trail Moderate
FhNe 050	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	13	0	0	0		Disturbed by road Low
FhNe 053	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	9	0	0	0		Disturbed by road Low
FhNe 057	Orion South	Artifact Scatter	21	0	0	0		Disturbed by sand quarry Low
FhNe 058	Orion South	Artifact Find	14	0	0	0		Disturbed by trail Low
FhNe 059	Orion South	Artifact Find	18	0	0	0		Disturbed by drill pad Low
FhNe 064	Duke Ravine Reservoir	Artifact Find	15	1	1	0		Undisturbed Low
FhNe 065	Duke Ravine Reservoir	Artifact Find	11	0	0	0		Undisturbed Low
Fhne 073	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	4	0	0	0		Disturbed by road Low
FhNe 074	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	8	2	126 debitage	0		Undisturbed Moderate
FhNe 075	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	4	0	0	0		Undisturbed Low
FhNe 076	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	4	1	1 debitage	0		Undisturbed Low
FhNe 077	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	5	2	9 debitage	0		Undisturbed Moderate
FhNe 078	Overburden Storage	Precontact/Historic Scatter	2	1	modern scatter	20 th Century refuse		Disturbed by trail Low
FhNe 079	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	11	2	2 SRC debitage	0		Undisturbed Low
FhNe 080	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	6	1	3 SRC debitage	0		Undisturbed Low
FhNe 081	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	7	0	0	0		Undisturbed Low
FhNe 082	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	18	2	62 debitage, 1940s Dodge truck	0		Undisturbed Moderate
FhNe 083	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	5	0	0	0		Disturbed by trail Low
FhNe 086	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	23 m ²		1 point, 6 scrapers, 5 misc. tools, >12,000 debitage	Hanna Point		Disturbed by drill pad Low
FhNe 087	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	6	0	1 end scraper, 11 debitage, 1 FCR	Pelican Lake		Disturbed by trail/drill pad High
FhNe 088	Star Open Pit	Artifact/Feature	23 tests;		2,200 artifacts - 2 points,	Besant, Pelican Lake,		Partially disturbed by trail High



			4 m ²		end scraper, 1,559 FCR, >600 debitage	Hanna		
FhNe 089	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	7	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 090	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	14 tests	7	1 point, 1 preform, 1 biface, 1 end scraper, 512 debitage, 8 FCR, 1 core	Hanna	Disturbed by trail/drill pad	High
FhNe 091	Star Open Pit	Artifact/Feature	12 m ² excavated; also tests		932 artifacts - debitage, cores, FCR, hammer stones, calc bone, 340 BP from charcoal	0	Disturbed by drill pad	High
FhNe 092	Orion South	Historic	7	0	0	Modern Refuse	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 093	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	40	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 094	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	0	0		0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 095	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	22	2	3 SRC debitage; 1 retouch flake	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 096	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	0	0		0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 097	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	0	0		0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 098	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	32	4	63 SRC debitage	Early Side-notched	Partially disturbed by drill pad	High
FhNe 099	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	12	1	1 quartz debitage	0	Disturbed by forestry trail	Low
FhNe 102	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	35	3	4 SRC debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Moderate
FhNe 103	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	0	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 105	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	18	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 110	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	56	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 111	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	42	0	0	Hanna	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 112	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	32 tests; 2 m ²	0	76 debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 113	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	28	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 114	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	38	0	0	Early Side-notched	Disturbed	Low
FhNe 115	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	18		1 point, 92 debitage	McKean	Partially impacted by drill pad	High
FhNe 116	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	44	1	2 SRC debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 117	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	5	1	1 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 118	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	55	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 119	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	32	1	7 SRC debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 120	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	89	4	3 SRC, 1 quartzite core,	0	Partially disturbed by	Moderate



					1 FCR		drill pad	
FhNe 124	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	16	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 126	Plant	Artifact Scatter	16	2	2 end scraper; 2 SRC debitage	0	Partially disturbed by road	Moderate
FhNe 131	Orion South	Artifact Find	4	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 132	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	12	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 135	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	13	7	54 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Moderate
FhNe 136	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	6	2	7 SRC debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 137	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	8	2	2 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 138	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	7	3	9 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Moderate
FhNe 139	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	20	1	3 SRC debitage	0	Disturbed by trail	Low
FhNe 141	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	8	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 142	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	4	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 143	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	9	1	88 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Moderate
FhNe 144	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	17	2	2 SRC debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 145	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	5	0	0	Avonlea Point	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 146	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	6	2	1 SRC biface	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 147	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	4	1	1 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 148	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	10	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 149	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	16	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 150	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	5	1	1 SRC debitage		Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 151	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	5	1	1 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 152	PKCF	Artifact Find	7	0	0	0	Disturbed by forestry trail	Low
FhNe 153	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	14	1	2 quartz debitage	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 154	Star Open Pit	Artifact Find	12	0	0	0	Disturbed by drill pad	Low
FhNe 155	Star Open Pit	Artifact Scatter	22	1	1 SRC debitage	0	Partially disturbed by road	Moderate
FhNe 156	PKCF	Artifact Find	8	1	1 SRC core	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 157	CPKS	Artifact Find	7	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 159	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	9	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 160	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	16	2 (in overburden)	11	0	Undisturbed	Low



				from trail)				
FhNe 161	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	8	1	1	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 162	CPKS	Artifact Find	8	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNe 163	Duke Ravine Reservoir	Artifact Find	8	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 164	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	8	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNe 165	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	8	0	0	0	Disturbed by road	Low
FhNf 050	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	13	1	4	0	Disturbed by forestry trail	Low
FhNf 059	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	15	3	9	0	Undisturbed	High
FhNf 062	Overburden Storage	Artifact Find	5	0	0	0	Disturbed by trail	Low
FhNf 063	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	8	1	4 SRC debitage	0	Undisturbed	Low
FhNf 064	Overburden Storage	Artifact Scatter	9	0	0	0	Undisturbed	Low

At Golder Associates we strive to be the most respected global group of companies specializing in ground engineering and environmental services. Employee owned since our formation in 1960, we have created a unique culture with pride in ownership, resulting in long-term organizational stability. Golder professionals take the time to build an understanding of client needs and of the specific environments in which they operate. We continue to expand our technical capabilities and have experienced steady growth with employees now operating from offices located throughout Africa, Asia, Australasia, Europe, North America and South America.

Africa	+ 27 11 254 4800
Asia	+ 852 2562 3658
Australasia	+ 61 3 8862 3500
Europe	+ 356 21 42 30 20
North America	+ 1 800 275 3281
South America	+ 55 21 3095 9500

solutions@golder.com
www.golder.com

Golder Associates Ltd.
1721 8th Street East
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada S7H 0T4
Canada
T: +1 (306) 665 7989



***REVIEW OF PUBLICALLY AVAILABLE
TRADITIONAL LAND USE AND OCCUPANCY
INFORMATION PERTAINING TO
THE FORT A LA CORNE PROVINCIAL FOREST***

Prepared For:

Shore Gold Inc.
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan

Prepared By:

EcoDynamics Consulting, Inc.
Prince Albert, Saskatchewan

June 16th, 2010



– TABLE OF CONTENTS –

1.0	INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND	2
1.1	Study Purpose	2
1.2	Defining Traditional Land Use and Occupancy	2
1.3	Study Area Location and Ecological Setting	3
2.0	SCOPE AND METHODOLOGY	4
3.0	RESULTS AND DISCUSSION	5
3.1	Archaeological and Historical Studies	5
3.2	Academic Sources	7
3.3	Fort-a-la-Corne Integrated Land Use Plan	8
4.0	SUMMARY AND RECOMMENDATIONS.....	10
	REFERENCES CITED	11

1.0 INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND

1.1 Study Purpose

The following report presents the results of an investigation to identify publically available traditional land use and occupancy data pertaining to the Fort-a-la-Corne (FALC) Provincial Forest (P-85 Fur Block) of central Saskatchewan. This forest is the location of Shore Gold's proposed Star-Orion South Diamond Project, currently undergoing environmental assessment. Project-specific guidelines established by the Saskatchewan Ministry of Environment (2009), indicated the need to *"identify the current and historical use of lands and resources within the study area for traditional purposes by First Nations and Métis peoples (i.e. non-commercial uses including hunting, trapping, fishing and other traditional use activities)."* The following study was commissioned by Shore Gold as one of the first steps towards meeting the above regulatory guidelines and gaining a better understanding of Aboriginal traditional use and occupancy within the vicinity of their proposed project. Shore Gold also plans to share this report with Aboriginal stakeholders who may be conducting traditional land use and occupancy studies in the area.

1.2 Defining Traditional Land Use and Occupancy

Land use and occupancy mapping has been defined succinctly by Tobias (2000) as the "geography of oral tradition", which is used to "help record a nation's oral history". Tobias (2000), echoing Dr. Peter Usher, a pioneer in traditional mapping, also makes an important distinction between 'use' and 'occupancy'. 'Use' refers to "the harvesting of traditional resources" through activities such as hunting, trapping, fishing, berry picking, gathering of medicinal plants, as well as traveling to the location of these activities. Traditional land use mapping records the locations where these activities occur. 'Occupancy' refers to an area claimed by a particular group as their own through continued use, occupation, specific knowledge and control, often supported by evidence of habitation and burial sites. The mapping of occupancy is focused on evidence of sustained occupation such as cabins and burial grounds. Traditional use may extend beyond the area of occupation, which may lead to overlapping areas of use by adjacent Aboriginal groups (Tobias, 2000).

Types of land use and occupancy information that are typically collected and mapped include:

- Traditional hunting, fishing and trapping areas;
- Traditional camps, trails and cabins;
- Locations of graveyards, burial sites, ceremonial sites, and sacred sites;
- Aboriginal place names, plant names and animal names;
- Gathering sites of plant foods (e.g., berry picking) and medicinal plants;
- Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK), including local knowledge of wildlife populations and important habitat features including ungulate calving areas, feeding areas, mineral licks and springs; and
- Sacred plant and animal species.

1.3 Study Area Location and Ecological Setting

The FALC Provincial Forest is located approximately 45 km east of Prince Albert, Saskatchewan (Figure 1). This forest occurs as an isolated pocket or ‘island’ of boreal forest within a ‘sea’ of agricultural land, due to settlement in the last century. Ecologically, the FALC Provincial Forest lies within the Boreal Transition Ecoregion, which is characterized by a regional transition from a prairie-parkland to boreal forest biome (Acton *et al.*, 1998). This ecoregion is slightly warmer and drier than the Mid-Boreal Upland Ecoregion to the north, but is cooler and moister than the Aspen Parkland Ecoregion to the south. As a result, the vegetation consists of a diverse mixture of prairie and boreal forest plant species.

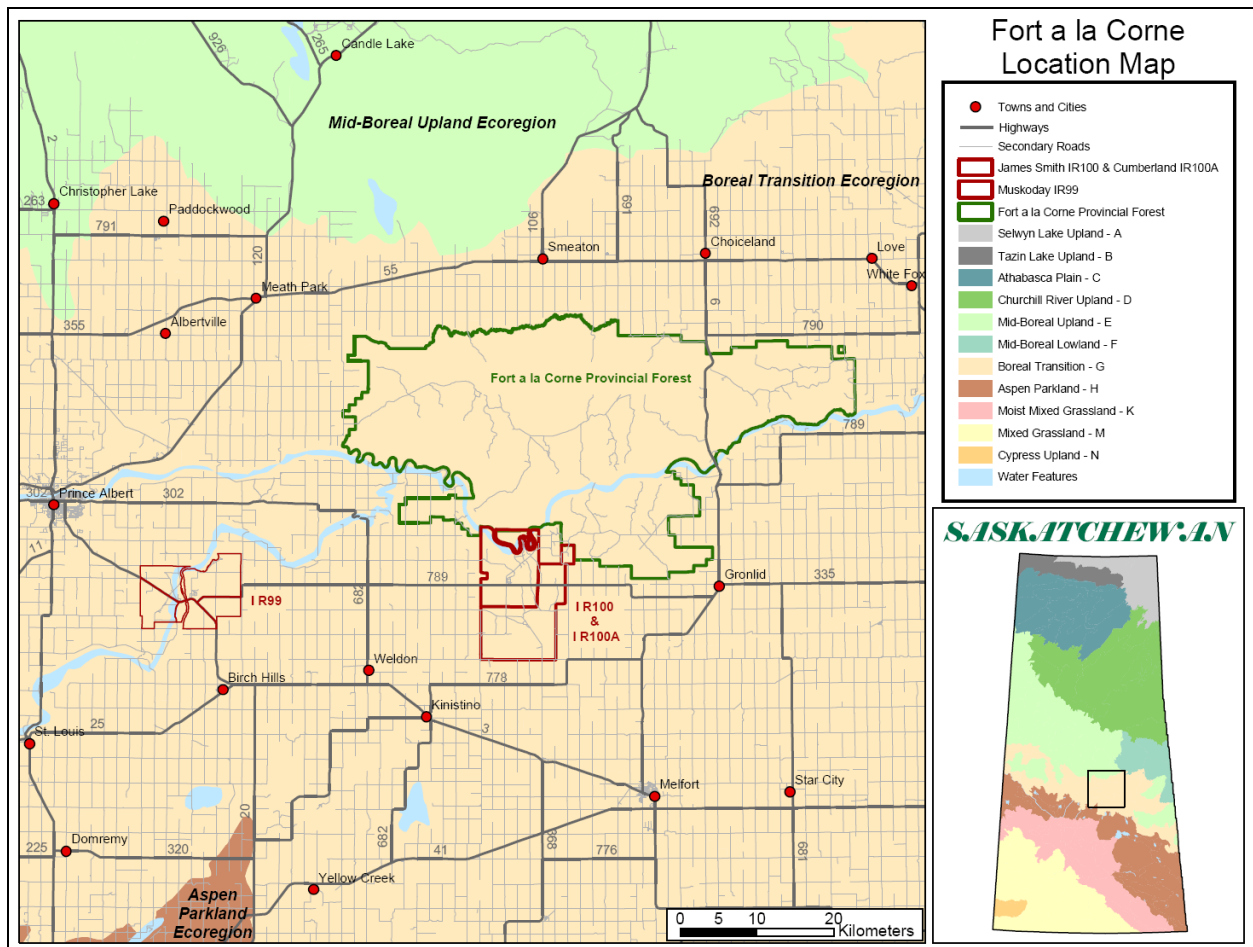


Figure 1. Location of the Fort-a-la-Corne Provincial Forest.

Dry, sandy upland areas are dominated by a mixture of open and closed jack pine (*Pinus banksiana*) forests, with lesser amounts of trembling aspen (*Populus tremuloides*), white birch (*Betula papyrifera*) and white spruce (*Picea glauca*). Mixedwood forests consisting of trembling aspen, balsam poplar, white birch and white spruce, are most common in the Saskatchewan River valley, but may be found along tributary streams and other moister locations within upland areas outside the valley. Pure stands of aspen or white spruce occur locally. Shrub- and

graminoid-rich meadows occupy some dry, steep, south-facing slopes along the Saskatchewan River valley (Acton *et al.*, 1998). Wetlands are less extensive than in the Mid-Boreal Upland and Lowland Ecoregions, with fens and marshes being more common than bogs.

The area provides habitat for an assortment of wildlife (Pipe, 1982; Acton *et al.*, 1998). Common large game include: elk (*Cervus elaphus*), moose (*Alces alces*), and white-tailed deer (*Odocoileus virginianus*). Carnivores include: black bear (*Ursus americanus*), lynx (*Lynx lynx*), cougar (*Puma concolor*), gray wolf (*Canis lupus*), coyote (*Canis latrans*), marten (*Mustela americana*), fisher (*Martes pennanti*), mink (*Mustela vison*), river otter (*Lontra canadensis*), and short-tailed weasel (*Mustela erminea*). Other common mammals include: raccoon (*Procyon lotor*), porcupine (*Erethizon doreatum*), muskrat (*Ondatra zibethicus*), beaver (*Castor canadensis*), snowshoe hare (*Lepus americanus*), red squirrel (*Tamiasciurus hudsonicus*), northern flying squirrel (*Glaucomys sabrinus*), and least chipmunk (*Eutamias minimus*). Common birds in the area include the gray jay (*Perisoreus Canadensis*), common raven (*Corvus corax*), great gray owl (*Strix nebulosa*), bald eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*), red-tailed hawk (*Buteo jamaicensis*), mallard (*Anas platyrhynchos*), Canada goose (*Branta Canadensis*), ruffed grouse (*Bonasa umbellus*), spruce grouse (*Canachites canadensis*), and numerous species of songbirds including red-eyed vireo (*Vireo olivaceus*), chipping sparrow (*Spizella passerina*) and white-throated sparrow (*Zonotrichia albicollis*) (Pipe, 1982; Acton *et al.*, 1998).

2.0 SCOPE AND METHODOLOGY

The primary objective of the current study was to identify, compile, review and summarize the existing traditional land use and occupancy information within the FALC Provincial Forest and vicinity.

Specific objectives of the project were to:

- compile, review and summarize available, existing information regarding traditional use of the FALC Provincial Forest and vicinity;
- compile and organize existing (if publically available) traditional use information residing in Geographic Information Systems (GIS) or other electronic databases of government agencies or other third parties;
- conduct a ‘gap analysis’ to determine the general completeness of the existing traditional information (e.g., is the source of the information identified and verified?); and
- present the findings in a written report, and if necessary, make recommendations for a second phase to fill in any apparent information gaps.

Publically available information sources were investigated to identify traditional information applicable to the FALC area. This investigation focused on three main potential sources of information:

- archaeological and historical studies provided by Shore Gold;
- academic documents such as books, journal articles, and research dissertations;

- the *FALC Integrated Land Use Plan* and related documents (Saskatchewan Environment and Resource Management, 2000 and 2005).

Heritage and historical reports commissioned for the Star-Orion South Diamond Project (Western Heritage Services Inc, 2006 and 2009; Golder Associates Ltd. 2009 and 2010), as well as earlier studies contained in Pipe (1982), were reviewed for potential information related to traditional land use and occupancy, as well as providing basic archaeological and historical background information for the current report.

The principal researcher, Dr. Lesley McBain, conducted intensive searches of the academic literature potentially referencing Aboriginal traditional information and land use in the FALC region. Both published and unpublished sources were explored using libraries and databases available through the library systems at the First Nations University (FNUC) (University of Regina), the University of Saskatchewan, and the University of Manitoba Natural Resources Centre. Dr. McBain also held discussions with various colleagues at the Indigenous Studies Department at FNUC about possible traditional knowledge and use research. Extensive internet-based searches were also conducted, including websites of federal agencies such as Indian and Northern Affairs Canada (INAC) and the Canadian Forestry Service. These database and internet searches were not limited to any specific First Nation or Metis group, but were based on combinations of geographic search words and phrases such as ‘Fort a la Corne’, along with ‘traditional land use’, and ‘traditional knowledge’.

The *FALC Integrated Land Use Plan* and related documents (Saskatchewan Environment and Resource Management, 2000 and 2005) were known to make reference to traditional land use and occupancy, including a map of some traditional use areas. Therefore, these reports were the focus of an intensive investigation into this reported traditional use information, including discussions with the former land use planner leading these studies - Del Phillips.

It is important to note that this project did not include interviews of Aboriginal Elders or other individuals who might be holders of personal traditional use or knowledge information, as this was outside the scope of the current study.

3.0 RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

3.1 Archaeological and Historical Studies

While formal traditional land use and occupancy investigations were outside the scope of archaeological (Western Heritage Services Inc, 2006; Golder Associates Ltd., 2009; Golder Associates Ltd., 2010) and historical (Western Heritage Services Inc, 2007) studies commissioned by Shore Gold, these reports contain valuable background information regarding pre- and post-contact social and environmental conditions, and highlight the importance of the area to Aboriginal peoples of the region. However, in the historical study by Western Heritage, researcher David Meyer provided a map showing traditional Cree place names. This map is based on his interview of the late Thomas Whitehead, a Cree Elder at James Smith and is reproduced in Figure 2.

Based on archaeological assessments in the FALC Provincial Forest, Aboriginal peoples have continually occupied the area since shortly after glacial retreat approximately 9,000 years ago, through to present times (Golder Associates Ltd., 2010; Western Heritage Services Inc, 2007). This continued occupation throughout pre-contact and post-contact periods indicates the importance of the area to Aboriginal peoples of the region. The continued significance of the area has been attributed to the diversity of natural resources in the area, including abundant water, game animals, and plants used for food, materials and medicine, as well as its geographic location along the Saskatchewan River system, a key regional travel and trade route. Additionally the area has held special social and spiritual significance to Aboriginal people through to present times. Of particular significance is the *Pehonan* site, on the James Smith Indian Reserve (IR100), which is located approximately 15 km east of the confluences (or ‘forks’) of the North and South Saskatchewan Rivers. Pehonan or “the waiting place” has been a traditional gathering site from pre-contact through historical times (Meyer and Thistle 1995; Meyer and Russell 2004; referenced in Golder Associates Ltd., 2010). Such gathering sites typically have networks of trails leading to surrounding resource areas and spiritual places, and were of such importance, that many of the trading posts were established near them (Meyer and Thistle 1995; Meyer and Russell 2004; referenced in Golder Associates Ltd., 2010). Golder Associates Ltd. (2010) conclude that the sites recorded within the Star-Orion South Diamond Project area may be associated with groups travelling to and from the resource rich Saskatchewan River valley and the *Pehonan* gathering site.

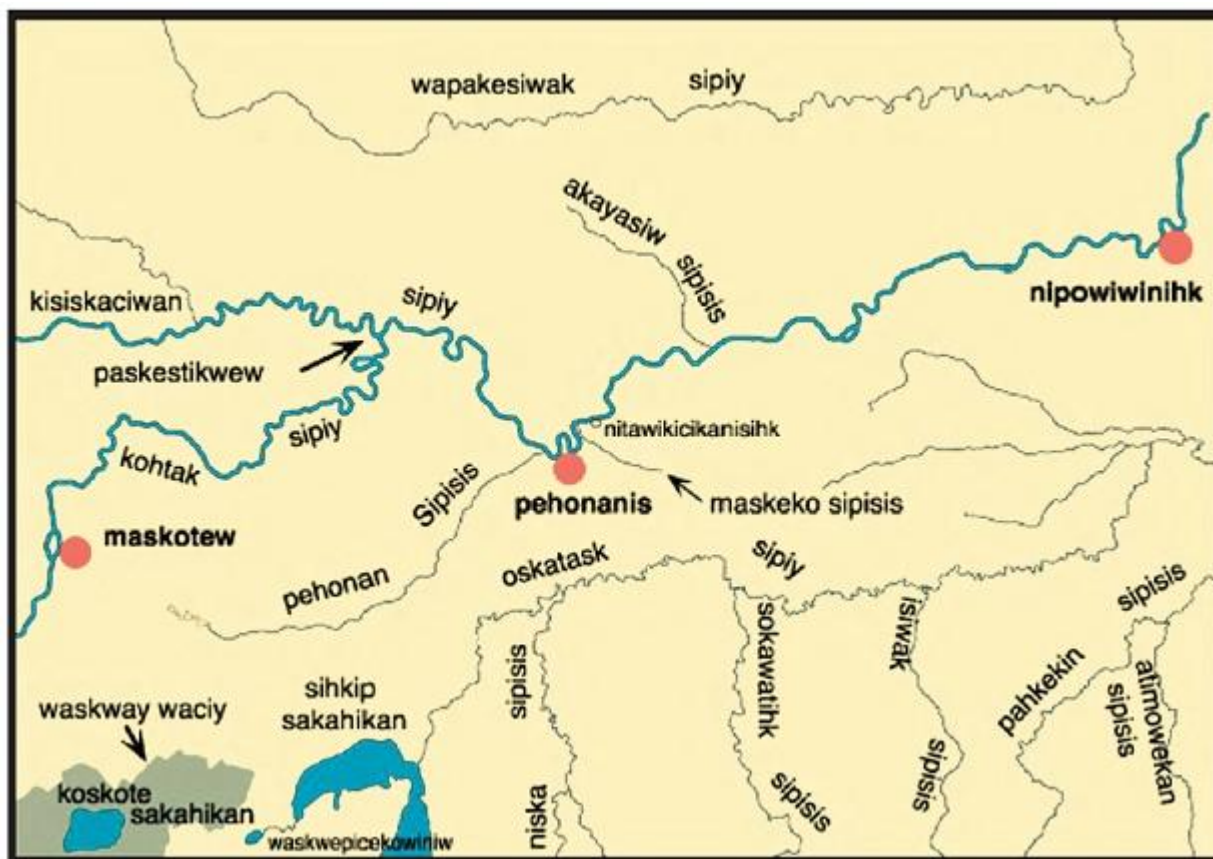


Figure 2. A map provided by David Meyer showing information from an interview of Thomas Whitehead, an Elder from the James Smith Cree Nation (Western Heritage Services Inc., 2009).

This forest area was first established as a forest reserve by the federal government in 1913, and later came under provincial jurisdiction subsequent to the federal *Natural Resources Transfer Act* of 1930 (Western Heritage Services Inc, 2007). Golder Associates Ltd. (2010) reported the remains of a number of log cabins during their archaeological surveys, which based on associated artifacts and a review of historical records (Western Heritage Services Inc, 2007) appear to be related to seasonal activities by locals in the 20th century, such as hunting and trapping, rather than forest management activities by federal or provincial agencies.

For in-depth analysis of the archaeological (pre-contact) record in the area, readers are referred to the heritage reports commissioned for the Star-Orion South Diamond Project (Western Heritage Services Inc, 2006; Golder Associates Ltd., 2009 and 2010), as well as earlier studies contained in Pipe (1982). For additional discussion of historical (post-contact) records of Aboriginal land use of the FALC area readers are referred to the historical summary by Western Heritage Services Inc (2009).

3.2 Academic Sources

An intensive search of the published and unpublished academic literature identified two academic dissertations (Masters theses) containing traditional land use and traditional knowledge information specific to the FALC Provincial Forest.

The most recent of these dissertations was a Master of Science (Geography) thesis completed by Jeremy Pittman of the University of Regina in 2009. His thesis titled: *The Vulnerability of the James Smith and Shoal Lake First Nations to Climate Change and Variability*, was based on interviews of Band members from the James Smith and Shoal Lake First Nations. This research included “*documentation and description of sites and routes of traditional importance and how these have changed over time*” based on information collected through interviews and workshops. If allowed, sites were subsequently located and mapped in the field, guided by participating respondents. Additional onsite interviews were also conducted regarding the significance of the site and any observed changes over time. These interviews were recorded digitally and videotaped, and site photographs were also taken. This traditional information was compiled into a GIS system providing linkages between mapped site locations and accompanying photographs, recordings and video footage. This information was then delivered to the community on DVDs readable in most home DVD players and computers, to facilitate communication of this information to the community.

There are also two published reports of related research by Pittman’s supervisor, advisors and colleagues, which he refers to in this thesis (Ermine et al., 2007 and 2008). These reports are based on the same Elder interviews referred to by Pittman. This body of research may contain important information relevant to a traditional land use and occupancy study. Pittman (2009) indicates that for ethical reasons, his thesis only summarizes key findings from interviews needed for his analysis of climate change vulnerability. The underlying interview data and GIS database containing spatial and land-use information remains the confidential property of the James Smith and Shoal Lake Elders who were interviewed. Explicit written permission would have to be obtained from these First Nations for access to this traditional information.

A 1997 Master of Arts thesis by Christina Clavelle, entitled: Ethnobotany of Two Cree Communities in the Southern Boreal Forest of Saskatchewan, documents traditional plant use by the James Smith and Shoal Lake Cree Nations. Using a combination of interviews and field surveys, Ms. Clavelle explored the use of plants for food, non-medicinal beverages, diapering material, smoking mixtures, hide preparation, and food preservation, as well as for spiritual and medicinal use. The research was conducted to contribute to the preservation of traditional knowledge, to expand existing ethnobotanical knowledge and to assist with the interpretations of the archaeological record in the boreal forest. She also noted that the location of the area along the transition between different ecoregions provided Aboriginal peoples of the area with access to a wide variety of plants and animals. This study contains a wealth of traditional knowledge information. However, use of this information will require the express written permission of the author and the First Nations who provided her with this culturally sensitive and sacred information.

3.3 Fort-a-la-Corne Integrated Land Use Plan

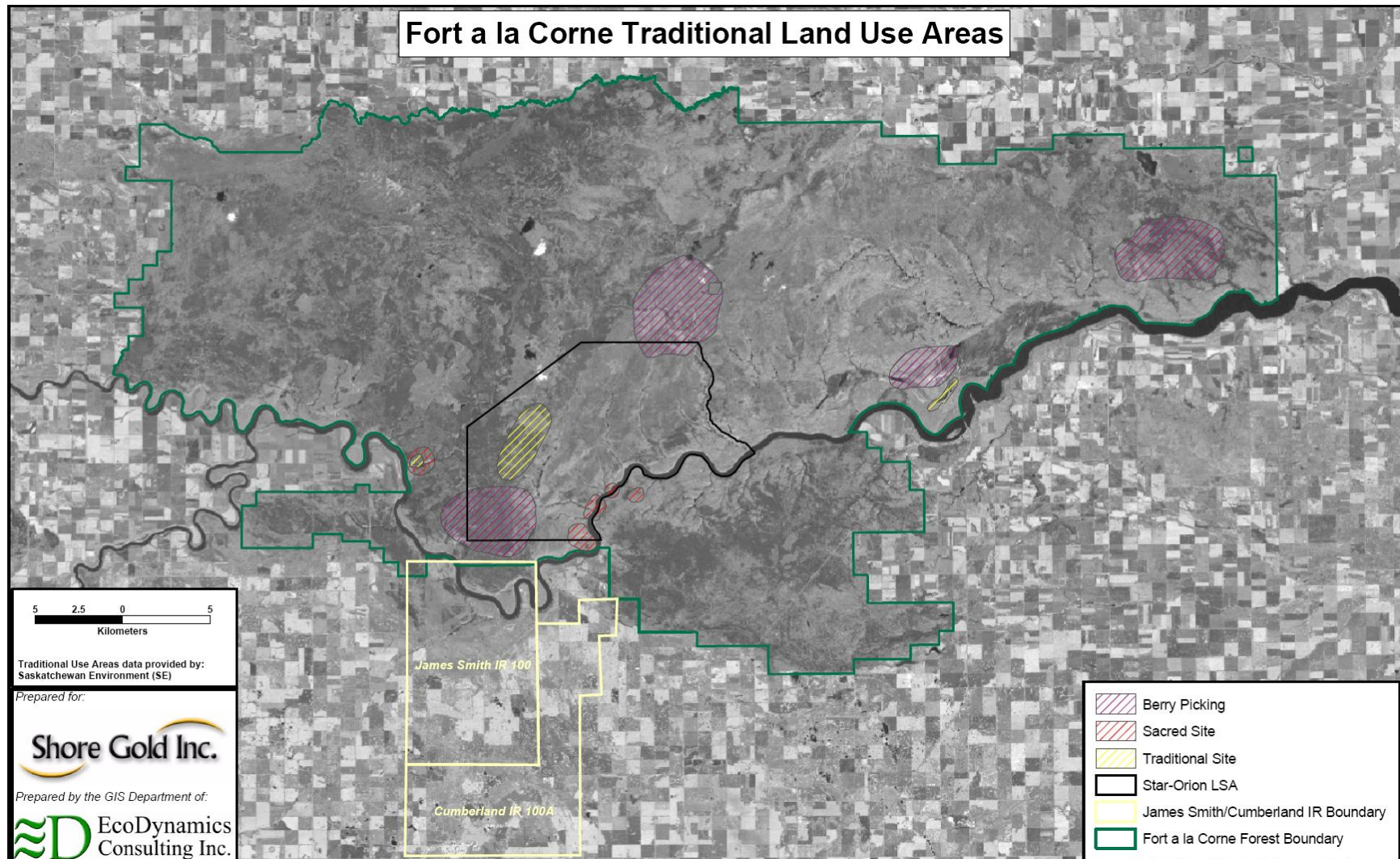
Some traditional use information was documented during the integrated land use planning process for the FALC Provincial Forest (Saskatchewan Environment, 1999; Saskatchewan Environment, 2005). Both the background document (Saskatchewan Environment, 1999) and the draft land use plan document (Saskatchewan Environment, 2005) make reference to the James Smith Cree Nation (JSCN) identifying sites having traditional and cultural importance, including burial sites, ceremonial grounds, sacred sites and traditional areas of harvest of plant foods and medicinal plants.

Traditional features identified by the people of the James Smith Reserve and reported in the background document (Saskatchewan Environment, 1999) include:

- Wapiti cabin, on the south side of Wapiti trail, mile 30 of the Division Road;
- Kirkham's cabin on the south side of the Saskatchewan River;
- Main hunting and trapping areas along creeks, most importantly Poplar and English Creeks; and
- Traditional fishing stations at Okema and Kenookema.

According to Del Phillips, the land use planner responsible for FALC at the time, Saskatchewan Environment made funding available to all Aboriginal groups with an interest in the area, to conduct independent land use and occupancy studies (Del Phillips, per comm.). Mr. Phillips recollected that only the James Smith Cree Nation applied for funding and carried out a formal study. Selected information from this study was then incorporated into the land use plan process and it remains in the departmental GIS system to this day. A copy of these GIS files was obtained from Saskatchewan Ministry of Environment. A map illustrating this data is provided as Figure 3. For the purpose of the land use plan and for ethical reasons, habitat-based buffers were applied to each mapped traditional use feature. The report underlying these mapped features likely provided additional detail and documented the process of information gathering, including who was consulted and interviewed. Unfortunately, Mr. Phillips indicated that the only known copy was apparently destroyed in a fire at the James Smith Cree Nation Band office.

Figure 3. James Smith Cree Nation traditional use information from the Fort a la Corne Integrated Land Use Plan.
(Source: Forest Service, Saskatchewan Ministry of Environment)



Additional inquiries by personnel with the Forest Service (Deb Weedon) and Land Branch (Kerry McIntyre) of the Ministry of Environment failed to locate the land use planning files which may have held the identify of the study author.

Without this report, verification of the mapped information is problematic and may be incomplete. Initiation of dialogue with the community may determine exactly what happened to the report, and perhaps verify the information mapped in the land use plan. Additionally, ethical considerations necessitate communication with the ‘owner’ of this mapped information – the James Smith Cree Nation- before it is used by outside parties.

4.0 SUMMARY

Perhaps the most significant publically available traditional information discovered for this study is that deriving from the FALC integrated land use planning process. During this planning process Saskatchewan Environment offered funding to Aboriginal groups who might have traditional use concerns in the forest. Using this funding, the James Smith First Nation conducted an independent traditional land use and occupancy study. Selected and generalized traditional use information was then provided to Saskatchewan Environment for inclusion in the draft land use plan. Unfortunately, while GIS map files illustrating this generalized traditional use information are available, the underlying report on which this mapped (GIS) information is based, appears to have been lost during a fire at the Band office on the James Smith Reserve. Government files, which might contain clues as to the author of the study, remain unavailable and may have been lost during the departmental reorganizations of the last decade. Therefore, this mapped traditional information is unverified.

Two key academic dissertations were found to contain potentially important traditional information from the James Smith and Shoal Lake First Nations. These theses were based on Elder interviews and provide documented evidence of traditional use in the region. Some of this information was documented on DVD and mapped in a GIS environment. This information is confidential and will require the express written permission of the First Nations and the thesis authors.

Existing archeological and historical studies provide important contextual and background information related to Aboriginal use of the FALC area, but generally contain only occasional references to first-person traditional information.

REFERENCES CITED

- Acton, D.F., G. A. Padbury and C. T. Stushnoff. 1998. The Ecoregions of Saskatchewan. Saskatchewan Environment and Resource Management and Canadian Plains Research Center, University of Regina, Regina, Sask.
- Clavelle, Christina M. 1997. Ethnobotany of Two Cree Communities in the Southern Boreal Forest of Saskatchewan. Unpublished Master of Arts Thesis. University of Saskatchewan
- Ermine, W., D. Sauchyn, and J. Pittman. 2008. Report Nikan Oti: The Future – Understanding adaptation and capacity in two First Nations, Climate Change Impacts and Adaptation Program, Ottawa, ON.
- Ermine, W., D. Sauchyn, M. Vetter, and C. Hart. 2007. Report Isi Wipan – Climate: Identifying the impacts of climate change and capacity for adaptation in two Saskatchewan First Nation communities, Climate Change Impacts and Adaptation Program, Ottawa, ON.
- Golder Associates Ltd. 2009. Orion South Project Heritage Resources Impact Assessment. Permit No. 08-093. Unpublished report prepared for Kensington Resources Ltd. [Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina].
- Golder Associates Ltd. Shore Gold Inc. 2010. Star-Orion South Diamond Project Heritage Resources Impact Mitigation. Permit No. 08-145. Unpublished report prepared for Shore Gold Inc. [Report on file with Heritage Resources Branch, Regina].
- Meyer, David and Olga Klimko. 1986. The James Smith Archaeological Survey. Saskatchewan Research Council. E-903-5-E-86.
- Meyer, David and Paul Thistle. 1995. Saskatchewan River Rendezvous Centres and Trading Posts: Continuity in a Cree Social Geography. *Ethnohistory* 42(3):403-444.
- Meyer, David and Dale Russell. 2004. So Fine and Pleasant, Beyond Description: The Lands and Lives of the Pegogamaw Crees. *Plains Anthropologist* 49(191):217-252.
- Pipe, A.E. (editor). 1982. Environmental Baseline Study of the Saskatchewan River, Saskatchewan, in the Vicinity of Choiceland and the 'Forks'. Prepared for Saskatchewan Power Corporation. SRC Publication No. C-805-25-E-80.
- Pittman, Jeremy B. 2009. The Vulnerability of the James Smith and Shoal Lake First Nations to Climate Change and Variability. Unpublished Master of Science Thesis. University of Regina.
- Saskatchewan Environment and Resource Management. 1999. Fort a la Corne Integrated Forest Land Use Plan Background Information.

Publically Available Traditional Land Use and Occupancy Information Fort-a-la-Corne

Saskatchewan Environment and Resource Management. 2005. Fort à la Corne Integrated Land Use Plan. Draft Version 6 (2).

Saskatchewan Ministry of Environment. 2009. Final Project-Specific Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement, Star-Orion South Diamond Project, Fort-a-la-Corne Provincial Forest, Saskatchewan. Saskatchewan Ministry of Environment, November 2009.

Tobias, T. 2000. Chief Kerry's Moose: A guide to land-use and occupancy mapping, research design and data collection. Union of B.C. Indian Chiefs and Ecotrust Canada, Vancouver.

Western Heritage Services Inc. 2007. The Fort à la Corne Forest Area: A survey of Historical Documents. Unpublished report prepared for Shore Gold Inc.